

## **REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS (BA)**

*These regulations apply to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic year 2010-2011 and thereafter.*

*(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)*

### **Definitions**

**A 1<sup>1</sup>** For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BA degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

An 'academic year' comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence normally in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence normally in January and end in June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. A 'summer semester' may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters.

'Programme' means a major or a minor.

'Major' means the study requirements for a single major area of disciplinary, interdisciplinary or multidisciplinary study, accumulating not fewer than 60 credits nor more than 96 credits, as prescribed in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

'Minor' means the study requirements for a single minor area of disciplinary, interdisciplinary or multidisciplinary study, accumulating not fewer than 36 credits nor more than 48 credits, as prescribed in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

'School' means Teaching Department in the Faculty of Arts, i.e. the School of Chinese, School of English, School of Humanities and the School of Modern Languages and Cultures; and units offering courses or programmes outside the Faculty.

### **Admission to the BA degree**

**A 2** To be eligible for admission to the BA degree, candidates shall:

- (a) comply with the General Regulations;
- (b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
- (c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.

### **Period of study**

**A 3** The curriculum for the BA degree shall normally require six semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than three academic years, and shall include any assessment to be held during and/or at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to extend their studies beyond the maximum period of registration of five academic years.

<sup>1</sup> This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

## **Selection of courses**

**A 4** Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Changes to the selection of courses may be made only during the add/drop period of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the designated add/drop period of the semester shall not normally be considered.

**A 5** Candidates in any semester shall select courses only after obtaining approval from the Heads of the Schools concerned, and the selection shall be subject to compliance with these regulations. Withdrawal from courses beyond the designated add/drop period will not be permitted, except for medical reasons approved by the Board of the Faculty.

## **Curriculum requirements**

**A 6** To complete the curriculum, candidates shall

- (a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG5 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula, and
- (b) take not fewer than 180 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

**A 7** Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere in accordance with UG2 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula but advanced credits will not be included in the calculation of GPA.

**A 8**

- (a) Candidates shall normally be required to take not fewer than 24 credits nor more than 30 credits in any one semester (except the summer semester) unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty, or except in the last semester of study when the number of outstanding credits required to complete the curriculum requirements may be fewer than 24 credits.
- (b) Candidates may, of their own volition, take additional credits not exceeding 6 credits in each semester, and/or further credits during the summer semester, accumulating up to a maximum of 72 credits in one academic year. With the special permission of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may exceed the annual study load of 72 credits in a given academic year provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load of 216 credits for the normative period of study specified in A 3, save as provided for under A 8 (c).
- (c) Where candidates are required to make up for failed credits, the Board of the Faculty may give permission for candidates to exceed the annual study load of 72 credits provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load of 360 credits for the maximum period of registration specified in the curriculum regulations.

**A 9** To complete the first and second semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall follow instruction and satisfy the examiners in 60 credits designated as first-year courses, including:

- (a) Academic English for Arts Students (3 credits);
- (b) two 6-credit Common Core courses from two different Areas of Inquiry (AoI);
- (c) a total of 18 credits to be taken from at least two different Arts programmes (either 6 credits each from three different programmes or 12 from one programme and 6 from another); and

- (d) if necessary, additional courses to make up a total of 60 credits in the first and second semesters from courses within or outside the Faculty provided that candidates shall not, within their normal study load of 60 credits in the first and second semesters, select more than 30 credits from any one programme within the Faculty, nor shall candidates select more than 12 credits outside the Faculty.

**A 10** To complete the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall normally follow instruction in a selection of courses which must include one major in the Faculty and which may include a second major or up to two minors, as prescribed in the syllabuses, and shall satisfy the examiners in coursework and in any examinations for at least 120 credits as selected in accordance with Regulation A11.

An Arts major normally requires 6-18 credits in the first year, and 54 credits in the second and third years. An Arts minor normally requires 6-12 credits in the first year, and 24-30 credits in the second and third years.

**A 11** Candidates shall select courses designated as Second-year courses in the third and fourth semesters of the curriculum and courses designated as Third-year courses in the fifth and sixth semesters. Courses designated as Second/Third Year may be taken in the third to the sixth semesters. Candidates shall take:

- (a) Professional English for Arts Students (3 credits) in the fourth semester;
- (b) Chinese Language Enhancement course (3 credits); some candidates, e.g. those who are non-Cantonese-speaking or have no knowledge of the Chinese language, may be exempted from attending the Chinese language enhancement course and permitted to take an elective course in lieu; and
- (c) the remaining credits in the Faculty, or no more than 54 credits offered outside the Faculty.

A candidate's selection of major(s) and minor(s) shall be made only with the approval of the Heads of the Schools concerned, and a candidate's choice shall normally be confined to those combinations which are possible under the published timetable.

## **Assessment**

**A 12** Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of coursework and/or written examinations. Only satisfactorily completed courses will earn credits. Grades shall be awarded in accordance with UG8 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

**A 13** Candidates who fail a course may retake the course or take another course to make up the failed credits. Courses in which a candidate is given an F grade shall be recorded on the transcript, together with the new grade obtained if the candidate chooses to repeat the failed course. All fail grades shall be included in calculating the Semester GPA and shall be taken into account for the purposes of determining eligibility for award of the BA degree, honours classification and whether a candidate be discontinued from studies in the Faculty.

**A 14** Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for upgrading purposes.

**A 15** Candidates shall be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty if they have:

- (a) failed to complete successfully 36 or more credits in two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), except where they are not required to take such a number of credits in the two given semesters, or;
- (b) failed to achieve an average Semester GPA of 1.0 or higher for two consecutive semesters, or;
- (c) exceeded the maximum period of registration as specified in A3.

**A 16** Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a supplementary examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate's absence from any examination. Any supplementary examination shall be part of that academic year's examinations, and the provisions made in these regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

### **Credit transfer**

**A 17** Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, credits may be transferred in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere. Transferred credits may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but shall not be included in the calculation of the Semester GPA, Cumulative GPA or Honours Classification.

### **Degree classification**

**A 18** To be eligible for the award of the BA degree, candidates shall have:

- (a) satisfied the requirements in UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;
- (b) passed not fewer than 180 credits, comprising 60 credits of First-year Courses, and 120 credits of Second Year/ Third Year courses; and
- (c) achieved an overall GPA of 1.00 or above.

**A 19** The BA degree shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its absolute discretion, taking into account the standard attained by candidates in the written examinations and coursework, as well as other relevant factors. Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate's Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA. A list of candidates who have successfully completed all the degree requirements shall be posted on Faculty noticeboards.

## **REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS (BA)**

*These regulations apply to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic year 2007-2008 and thereafter.*

*(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)*

## Definitions

**A 1<sup>1</sup>** For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BA degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

An ‘academic year’ comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence normally in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence normally in January and end in June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. A ‘summer semester’ may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters.

‘Major’ means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 48 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, in the same disciplinary field, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

‘Minor’ means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 24 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

‘School’ means Teaching Department in the Faculty of Arts, i.e. the School of Chinese, School of English, School of Humanities and the School of Modern Languages and Cultures; and units offering courses or programmes outside the Faculty.

## Admission to the BA degree

**A 2** To be eligible for admission to the BA degree, candidates shall:

- (a) comply with the General Regulations;
- (b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
- (c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.

## Length of study

**A 3** The curriculum for the BA degree shall normally require six semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than three academic years, and shall include any assessment to be held during and/or at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to extend the normal period of study by more than two additional semesters.

## Selection of courses

**A 4** Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Changes to the selection of courses may be made only during the add/drop period of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the designated add/drop period of the semester shall not normally be considered.

**A 5** Candidates in any semester shall select courses only after obtaining approval from the Heads of the Schools concerned, and the selection shall be subject to compliance with these regulations. Withdrawal from courses beyond the designated add/drop period will not be permitted, except for medical reasons approved by the Board of the Faculty.

<sup>1</sup> This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

## Curriculum requirements

**A 6** To complete the curriculum, candidates shall

- (a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG3 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula, and
- (b) take not fewer than 180 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

**A 7** Candidates shall not normally take fewer than 30, nor more than 36 credits in each semester, except for the last semester of study or studies continuing beyond the sixth semester, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

**A 8** To complete the first and second semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall follow instruction and satisfy the examiners in 60 credits designated as First-year Courses, including:

- (a) four 3-credit courses: Academic English for Arts Students; Chinese Language Enhancement; Information Technology; and one 3-credit course in Science and Technology studies for non-science students;

[Some candidates, e.g. those who are non-Cantonese-speaking or have no knowledge of the language, may be exempted from attending the Chinese language enhancement course and permitted to substitute another 3-credit course for it. Candidates may be exempted from attending the Information Technology course on the basis of the results obtained from an aptitude test in IT, or by satisfying the examiners in an approved course which incorporates an IT element as specified in the syllabuses.]

- (b) at least 6 credits each in three out of the following four groupings:  
 Group 1 - Schools of Chinese and English  
 Group 2 - School of Humanities I (African Studies, History, Linguistics, Philosophy)  
 Group 3 - School of Humanities II (Comparative Literature, Fine Arts, Music)  
 Group 4 - School of Modern Languages and Cultures; and
- (c) if necessary, additional courses to make up a total of 60 credits in the first and second semesters from courses within or outside the Faculty provided that candidates shall not, within their normal study load of 60 credits in the first and second semesters, select more than 30 credits from any one programme within the Faculty, nor shall candidates select more than 12 credits outside the Faculty.

**A 9** To complete the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall normally follow instruction in a selection of courses which must include one major in the Faculty and which may include a second major or up to two minors, as prescribed in the syllabuses, and shall satisfy the examiners in coursework and in any examinations for at least 120 credits as selected in accordance with Regulation A10.

**A 10** Candidates shall select courses designated as Second-year Courses in the third and fourth semesters of the curriculum and courses designated as Third-year Courses in the fifth and sixth semesters. Courses designated as Second/Third Year may be taken in the third to the sixth semesters. Candidates who have failed to attain 60 First Year credits by the end of their second semester of study or 60 Second Year credits by the end of their fourth semester shall be allowed to make up the missing credits/courses in the two subsequent semesters of study, subject to the provisions of Regulation A14. Candidates shall take:

- (a) Professional English for Arts Students (3 credits) in either the third or the fourth semester;

- (b) for the purpose of inter-Faculty broadening, at least 12 but not more than 48 credits offered outside the Faculty; and
- (c) the remaining credits in the Faculty.

A candidate's selection of major(s) and minor(s) shall be made only with the approval of the Heads of the Schools concerned, and a candidate's choice shall normally be confined to those combinations which are possible under the published timetable. Candidates who wish to exceed the normal load of 30 credits in any of the third to the sixth semesters shall be allowed to take up to 6 additional credits in a course or courses in the Faculty.

### **Assessment and grades**

**A 11** Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of coursework and/or written examinations. Only satisfactorily completed courses will earn credits. Grades shall be awarded in accordance with UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

**A 12** Courses in which a candidate is given an F grade shall be recorded on the transcript, together with the new grade obtained if the candidate chooses to repeat the failed course. Any failed grade(s) shall be included in calculating the Semester GPA and shall be taken into account for the purposes of determining eligibility for award of the BA degree, honours classification and whether a candidate be discontinued from studies in the Faculty.

**A 13** Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for upgrading purposes.

**A 14** Candidates shall be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty if they have:

- (a) failed to pass at least 36 credits over the first and second semesters or achieved a Semester or Year GPA of less than 1.00 for the first semester or the two semesters combined; or
- (b) failed to pass at least 45 credits over the third and fourth semesters or achieved a Semester or Year GPA of less than 1.00 for the third semester or the two semesters combined; or
- (c) failed to pass at least 45 credits over the fifth and sixth semesters or achieved a Semester or Year GPA of less than 1.00 for the fifth semester or the two semesters combined, except when all the requirements stipulated in these regulations for the award of the BA degree are satisfied; or
- (d) achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of each of the subsequent semesters of study; or
- (e) exceeded the maximum period of registration as specified in A3.

**A 15** Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a re-examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate's absence from any examination. Any re-examination shall be part of that academic year's examinations, and the provisions made in these regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

### **Credit transfer**

**A 16** Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, credits may be transferred in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere. Transferred credits may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but shall not be included in the calculation of the Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

## Degree classification

**A 17** To be eligible for the award of the BA degree, candidates shall have:

- (a) satisfied the requirements in UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;
- (b) passed not fewer than 180 credits, comprising 60 credits of First-year Courses, 60 credits of Second-year Courses and 60 credits of Third-year Courses; and
- (c) achieved an overall GPA of 1.00 or above.

**A 18** The BA degree shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its absolute discretion, taking into account the standard attained by candidates in the written examinations and coursework, as well as other relevant factors. Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate's Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

## REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS (BA)

*These regulations apply to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic years 2002-2003 up to 2006-2007.*

*(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)*

## Definitions

**A 1<sup>1</sup>** For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BA degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

‘Major’ means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 48 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, in the same disciplinary field, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

‘Double major’ means two majors, with each such major as defined above, where the two majors concerned may be offered by the same department or by two different departments.

‘Minor’ means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 24 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

An ‘academic year’ comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence normally in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence normally in January and end in June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. A ‘summer semester’ may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters.

<sup>1</sup> This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.



## **Admission to the BA degree**

**A 2** To be eligible for admission to the BA degree, candidates shall:

- (a) comply with the General Regulations;
  - (b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
  - (c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.
- 

## **Length of Study**

**A 3** The curriculum for the BA degree shall require six semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than three academic years, and shall include examinations to be held at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to complete the curriculum in more than **four** academic years, which is the maximum period of registration.

**A 4** The number and length of written examinations shall be as laid down in the syllabuses. Dissertations, field work, class tests, oral, aural and practical tests may also be prescribed. Coursework assessment shall be taken into account as prescribed in the syllabuses.

---

## **Selection of courses**

**A 5** Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Changes to the selection of courses may be made only during the first two weeks of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the first two weeks of the semester shall not normally be considered.

**A 6** Candidates in any semester shall select courses only after obtaining approval from the Heads of the Departments concerned, and the selection shall be subject to confirmation by the Board of the Faculty. Withdrawal beyond the two-week deadline will not be permitted, except for medical reasons approved by the Board of the Faculty, and the course concerned will be given a failed grade.

---

## **Curriculum requirements**

**A 7** To complete the curriculum, candidates shall

- (a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG3 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula, and
- (b) take not fewer than 180 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

**A 8** Candidates shall not normally take fewer than 30, nor more than 36 credits in each semester, except for the last semester of study or studies continuing beyond the sixth semester, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

**A 9** To complete the first and second semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall follow instruction and satisfy the examiners in 60 credits designated as First Year or Level 100 courses, including:

- (a) four 3-credit courses: Academic English for Arts Students; Chinese Language Enhancement; Information Technology; and one 3-credit course in Science and Technology studies for non-science students;

[Some candidates, e.g. those who are non-Cantonese-speaking or have no knowledge of the language, may be exempted from attending the Chinese language enhancement course and permitted to substitute another 3-credit course for it. Candidates may be exempted from attending the Information Technology course on the basis of the results obtained from an aptitude test in IT, or by satisfying the examiners in an approved course which incorporates an IT element as specified in the syllabuses.]

- (b) at least 6 credits from a single department/programme/centre in each of any three out of the following four groupings:

Group 1 - American Studies, Chinese, English, European Studies, Japanese Studies, Language and Communication, Language Centre

Group 2 - Geography, History

Group 3 - African Studies, Comparative Literature, Linguistics, Philosophy

Group 4 - Fine Arts, Music; and

- (c) if necessary, additional courses to make up a total of 60 credits in the first and second semesters from:

- (i) any departments/programmes/centre listed in (b) above; and/or

- (ii) departments/schools/centres/programmes outside the Faculty;

provided that candidates shall not, within their normal study load of 60 credits in the first and second semesters, select more than 30 credits from any one department/programme/centre listed in (b) above, nor shall candidates select more than 12 credits from those offered by departments/schools/centres/programmes outside the Faculty.

Candidates who are willing to take an additional study load shall be allowed to take up to 6 credits over and above the normal load of 30 credits in each of the first and second semesters.

**A 10** To complete the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall normally follow instruction in a selection of courses which must include one major and which may include a second major or up to two minors, with the combination of courses for each major and minor being as prescribed in the syllabuses, and shall satisfy the examiners in coursework and in any examinations for 120 credits as selected in accordance with Regulation A11.

**A 11** Candidates shall select courses designated as Second Year or Level 200 courses in the third and fourth semesters of the curriculum and shall select courses designated as Third Year or Level 300 courses in the fifth and sixth semesters, except that candidates who have failed to attain 60 First Year or Level 100 credits by the end of their second semester of study or failed to attain 60 Second Year or Level 200 credits by the end of their fourth semester of study shall be allowed to make up the missing credits by including the outstanding credits in the two subsequent semesters of study, subject to the provisions of Regulation A16. Courses designated as Second/Third Year or Level 200/300 may be taken in the third to the sixth semesters. Each semester shall normally consist of 30 credits and shall include:

- (a) Professional English for Arts Students (3 credits) to be taken in either the third or the fourth semester; and 12 credits offered outside the Faculty of Arts for the purpose of inter-Faculty broadening; and

either

- (b) other credits, of which at least 48 shall be in a major, together with any oral examination required by the examiners, in any one of the following departments/centre/programmes:

- American Studies
- Chinese
- Comparative Literature
- English
- European Studies
- Fine Arts
- Geography
- History
- Japanese Studies
- Language and Communication
- Language Centre
- Linguistics
- Music
- Philosophy;

or

- (c) other credits, of which at least 48 shall be in a major taken in one of the departments/programmes listed in (b) above, together with any oral examination required by the examiners, in combinations of courses offered by the following departments/centres/schools/programmes:

- American Studies
- Buddhist Studies
- Chinese
- Comparative Literature
- Computer Science
- Earth Sciences
- Economics and Finance
- English
- European Studies
- Fine Arts
- Geography
- History
- Japanese Studies
- Journalism and Media Studies Centre
- Language and Communication
- Language Centre
- Linguistics
- Mathematics
- Music
- Philosophy
- Physics
- Politics and Public Administration
- Psychology
- Social Work and Social Administration
- Sociology
- Statistics and Actuarial Science

A candidate's selection of major(s), minor(s) and of cross-departmental course combinations shall be made only with the approval of the Heads of the Departments/Centres/Schools concerned, and a candidate's choice shall normally be confined to those combinations which are possible under the published timetable. Candidates shall not be permitted to take, within their normal study load of 120 credits, more than 48 credits outside the Faculty. Candidates who wish to exceed the normal load of 30 credits in any of the third to the sixth semesters shall be allowed to take up to 6 additional credits in a course or courses from the departments/programmes listed in Regulation A9(b) in the major.

---

### **Assessment and grades**

**A 12** Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of: coursework, written examinations or tests, continuous assessment of class performance, field work, research or project reports, or in any other manner as specified in the syllabuses. Only those satisfactorily completed courses will earn credits. Grades shall be awarded in accordance with UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

**A 13** Written examinations or tests shall normally be held at the end of the semester in which it is taught unless otherwise provided for in the syllabuses. Candidates may be required to sit written examinations or tests for more than one course on any particular date.

**A 14** Courses in which a candidate is given an F grade shall be recorded on the transcript, together with the new grade obtained if the candidate chooses to repeat the failed course. Any failed grade(s) shall be included in calculating the Semester GPA and shall be taken into account for the purposes of determining eligibility for award of the BA degree, honours classification and whether a candidate be discontinued from studies in the Faculty.

**A 15** Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for upgrading purposes.

**A 16** Candidates shall be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty if they have:

- (a) failed to pass at least 36 credits over the first and second semesters or achieved a Semester or Year GPA of less than 1.00 for the first semester or the two semesters combined; or
- (b) failed to pass at least 45 credits over the third and fourth semesters or achieved a Semester or Year GPA of less than 1.00 for the third semester or the two semesters combined; or
- (c) failed to pass at least 45 credits over the fifth and sixth semesters or achieved a Semester or Year GPA of less than 1.00 for the fifth semester or the two semesters combined, except when all the requirements stipulated in these regulations for the award of the BA degree are satisfied; or
- (d) achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of each of the subsequent semesters of study; or
- (e) exceeded the maximum period of registration.

**A 17** Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present for any paper of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a re-examination in the paper to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate's absence from any examination. Any re-examination shall be part of that academic year's examinations, and the provisions made in these regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

### Advanced standing

**A 18** Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere in accordance with UG2 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. Advanced credits granted may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but shall not be included in the calculation of the Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

---

### Degree classification

**A 19** To be eligible for the award of the BA degree, candidates shall have:

- (a) satisfied the requirements in UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;
- (b) passed not fewer than 180 credits, comprising 60 credits of First Year or Level 100 courses, 60 credits of Second Year or Level 200 courses and 60 credits of Third Year or Level 300 courses; and
- (c) achieved a GPA of 1.00 or above.

**A 20** The BA degree shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its absolute discretion, taking into account the standard attained by candidates in the written examinations and in coursework, as well as other relevant factors. Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate's Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

---

## SYLLABUSES FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS

- (N.B. 1. These syllabuses should be read in conjunction with the BA degree regulations.  
2. On application to the various departments, undergraduates may obtain further details of courses and lists of books recommended for further study.)
- 

### CHINESE LANGUAGE ENHANCEMENT

#### **CART1001. Practical Chinese language course for Arts students (3 credits)**

1. Practical Chinese Writing Skills 實用中文寫作技巧 (3 lectures)
  - a. *Pai-hua* or literary Chinese
  - b. some characteristics of the Chinese language and communication skills in Chinese  
漢語特性和語文運用
  - c. special characteristics of the language of practical Chinese  
實用中文的寫作特點
2. Chinese Characters 漢字 (3 lectures)
  - a. standardized form 規範漢字
  - b. simplified Chinese characters 簡化字
  - c. different scripts 異體字

3. Letter-writing 書信 (3 lectures)
  - a. characteristics of personal, business and official letters  
私人、事務、公務信件的特點
  - b. business letters for Arts students: objectives and techniques  
事務信件的撰寫技巧 (2 lectures)
4. Office Documents 辦公室文書 (3 lectures)
  - a. notices and announcements 啟事與通告
  - b. proposals 建議書
  - c. minutes and reports 會議文書
5. Chinese for Special Purposes (Arts) 專業中文 (6 lectures)
  - a. Chinese culture: an introduction for Arts students 中國文化簡介
  - b. an introduction of contemporary Chinese fiction  
當代中國小說導讀 (2 lectures)
  - c. target-oriented writing: objectives and strategies 目標為本寫作 (2 lectures)
  - d. the art of persuasion 說服性文章的撰寫技巧
  - e. the art of rhetoric 修辭技巧
6. Public Speaking 演說 (2 lectures)

This course will be offered in the second semester.  
Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE ENHANCEMENT

### CAES1201. Academic English for Arts students (3 credits)

The purpose of this course is to prepare Arts students to pursue their university studies successfully through the medium of English. The primary focus of the course is on writing well-organized and well-written academic essays with appropriate citation and referencing. Students will also learn how to participate fluently and confidently in small group discussions and take greater responsibility for improving their English language skills both in and beyond the classroom.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### CAES2202. Professional English for Arts students (3 credits)

This course aims to prepare students to present themselves in a professional manner in English in the workplace environment in Hong Kong. Students will develop oral skills essential to business communication, as used in telephoning, interviews and oral presentations. They will also learn and practice principles of effective written communication by writing, for example, a resume and letters. Throughout the course students will explore and experience the use of English in the workplace through direct contact with employers.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

# MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF ARTS

School/Department	Major	Minor
<b>School of Chinese –</b>		
Chinese History and Culture	√	√
Chinese Language and Literature	√	√
Chinese Studies	√	√
Translation	√	√
<b>School of English –</b>		
English Studies	√	√
Cross-Cultural Studies in English	√	√
Language and Communication	√	√
<b>School of Humanities –</b>		
African Studies		√
Comparative Literature	√	√
Fine Arts	√	√
History	√	√
Human Language Technology	√	
General Linguistics <sup>2</sup>	√	√
Linguistics <sup>1</sup>	√	√
Linguistics and Philosophy <sup>3</sup>	√	
Music	√	√
Philosophy	√	√
<b>School of Modern Languages and Cultures –</b>		
American Studies	√	√
Arabic		√
European Studies	√	√
French	√	√
German	√	√
Greek		√
Italian		√
Japanese Culture		√
Japanese Language		√
Japanese Studies	√	
Korean		√
Modern China Studies	√	√
Portuguese		√
Spanish	√	√
Swedish		√
Thai		√
<b>Department of Geography -</b>		
Geography <sup>4</sup>	√	√

- Note:
- <sup>1</sup> offered to students admitted in 2009-2010 or before
  - <sup>2</sup> offered to students admitted in 2010-2011 or thereafter
  - <sup>3</sup> offered to students who were admitted on or before September 2009 and who have declared this major in the academic year 2009-2010.
  - <sup>4</sup> offered as Arts major/minor to students admitted to the BA curriculum in 2006-07 or before

## SCHOOL OF CHINESE

The mission of the School of Chinese is to promote the understanding of Chinese language, literature and history; to improve the ability of students in the use of the Chinese language; to enhance students' competence in translation between Chinese and English; and to advance the study of the Chinese culture and its relevance to the modern world.

Courses in the School of Chinese, if not otherwise specified, are normally taught in Chinese. Course design is based on the assumption that the students have attained facility in the use of the Chinese language before entering the University, and that they have also acquired sufficient mastery of the English language to enable them to use freely references and relevant works published in English.

Four majors and minors are offered in the following programmes in which students are required to complete a first-year prerequisite course and to take a total of 54 credits for majors and 30 credits for minors of second and third-year courses in the specified group(s). For the major in Chinese History and Culture, students may also take HIST2003, HIST2004 and HIST2018 to fulfil the credit requirements.

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature:** Group A.  
CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language is the first-year prerequisite in Group A.
- (ii) **Chinese History and Culture:** Group B.  
Any first-year course in Group B can serve as prerequisite for majors and minors.
- (iii) **Translation:** Group C (please refer to Group C for other requirements).  
CHIN1311. Introduction to translation as prerequisite for majors and any first-year course in Group C as prerequisite for minors.
- (iv) **Chinese Studies:** Groups A and B.  
CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language or any first-year course in Group B can serve as prerequisite for majors and minors.

Third year students taking a major or minor in the School who fulfill the course enrollment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' component, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years.

Chinese as a Foreign Language courses in Group E will not be counted towards any of the majors or minors. They are:

CHIN1501. Chinese as a Foreign Language (Part I)  
 CHIN1502. Chinese as a Foreign Language (Part II)  
 CHIN2501. Chinese as a Foreign Language II (Part I)  
 CHIN2502. Chinese as a Foreign Language II (Part II)  
 CHIN3501. Chinese as a Foreign Language III (Part I)  
 CHIN3502. Chinese as a Foreign Language III (Part II)

Not all the courses listed below will be offered every year. Students should refer to the School undergraduate handbook, published yearly and usually in the summer, for the courses on offer in the next academic year.

### GROUP A: CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

#### First-year Courses

#### **CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the various aspects of the Chinese language: etymology, phonology, lexicology and grammar, with special reference to the cultural context and its developments in the twentieth century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.



**CHIN1102. An introduction to standard works in classical Chinese literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A fundamental study of standard works and selected writings in the classical Chinese literature.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN1103. An introduction to standard works in modern Chinese literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A fundamental study of standard works and selected writings in the modern and contemporary Chinese literature.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN1105. History of Chinese literature: a general survey (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a study of the general characteristics and the development of Chinese literature from the pre-Qin period to the nineteenth century. This course is suitable for students with or without an A-level in Chinese literature.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1106. Poetry and the couplet: composition and appreciation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The purpose of this course is to explore classical Chinese poetry and poetic culture, from early times to the present, through the study of three different but interrelated genres: regulated verse (shi), lyric poetry (ci), and antithetical couplet (duilian). Besides reading and discussing the literary merits of some of the most renowned poems and poets, students will also be given training in the rhyming schemes of classical Chinese poetry, and will be encouraged to compose their own original works.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1109. An Introduction to Chinese women's literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores the historical development of Chinese women's literature from the Qin-Han period to contemporary China. The impact of political, social, intellectual factors as well as the western trends and thoughts on women's literature is also investigated. The course provides students with an opportunity to study and appreciate women's literature in its various forms and styles through an examination of texts written by the most representative and best known women writers.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1110. Creative writing I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to foster interest in the great works of modern Chinese literature and to help students develop and sharpen their writing skills. It examines how writers and readers interact with literary works in general and considers how meanings and effects are generated in prose and fiction in particular.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN1111. Creative writing II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA Students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A continuation of CHIN1110, this course aims to foster interest in the great works of modern Chinese literature and to help students develop and sharpen their writing skills. It examines how writers and readers interact with literary works in general and considers how meanings and effects are generated in modern poems and free verse in particular.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second and Third-year Courses****CHIN2121. Prose up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese prose in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese prose from the pre-Qin period to the end of the Qing period.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2122. Prose: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the prose of one or two of the following: Han Yu, Liu Zongyuan, Ouyang Xiu, Wang Anshi and Su Shi. Students taking this course are expected to demonstrate a sound knowledge of the prose works covered and a general ability to describe and analyze prose styles.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2123. Shi poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese *shi* poetry in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese *shi* poetry from earliest times to the nineteenth century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2124. Shi poetry: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides a detailed study of the *shi* poetry of one or two of the following: Cao Zhi, Tao Qian, Xie Lingyun, Wang Wei, Li Bai, Du Fu, Han Yu, Li Shangyin, Su Shi, and Huang Tingjian. Students taking this course are expected to demonstrate a sound knowledge of the *shi* poetry covered and a general ability to describe and analyze poetic styles in the examination.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**CHIN2125. Ci poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A general survey of the *ci* poetry from its beginning in the Tang period to the Qing period, with special emphasis on the Song period, which is considered the golden age in the history of this literary genre. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development of the *ci* poetry from the eighth century to the nineteenth century. Its various forms and styles are examined through specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2126. Ci poetry: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the *ci* poetry of one or two of the following: Su Shi, Zhou Bangyan, Xin Qiji and Jiang Kui - the Four Great Masters of the *ci* poetry of the Song period. The course will consider the individual achievements and influences of the poets; their contemporaries will also be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2127. Classical Chinese fiction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of classical Chinese fiction through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative compositions. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of classical Chinese fiction from the Tang to the Qing period.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2128. Xiqu of the Yuan and Ming periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of *xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative compositions. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of *xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2129. Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the trends of literary thought in China from 1917 to 1949 and how they affected modern Chinese poetry, essays and novels.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2130. Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of modern Chinese fiction from 1917 to 1949. Attention will be centered on selected works of representative authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**CHIN2131. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the trends of literary thought in the Mainland since 1949 and how they have affected poetry, essays and novels.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2132. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese fiction in the Mainland since 1949. Attention will be centered on selected works of representative authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2133. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese literature in Taiwan since 1949.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2134. Prescribed texts for detailed study I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or more of the following, engaging various techniques of scholarship and criticism:

- (i) Shijing
- (ii) Chuci
- (iii) Zhaoming wenxuan

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2135. Prescribed texts for detailed study II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or both of the following, engaging various techniques of scholarship and criticism:

- (i) Zuozhuan
- (ii) Zhuangzi

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2136. Classical Chinese literary criticism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides a general survey of classical Chinese literary criticism.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2138. Chinese etymology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the essential features of the Chinese characters, principles underlying their construction, and the process of evolution behind them.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**CHIN2139. Chinese phonology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course includes an introduction to general phonetics, a survey of the history of Chinese phonology, and an introduction to 'rhyme books' and 'rhyme tables'.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the structure, the general characteristics and the development of the modern Chinese language; two or more of the following topics will be covered:

- (i) Phonology
- (ii) Lexicology and semantics
- (iii) Philology

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the structure, the general characteristics and the development of the modern Chinese language; two or more of the following topics will be covered:

- (i) Grammar
- (ii) Rhetoric
- (iii) Logic

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the general characteristics and the development of Functional Chinese with special reference to the use of language in Hong Kong. Students taking this course are expected to acquire sufficient language skills for general communication purposes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GROUP B: CHINESE HISTORY AND CULTURE****First-year Courses****CHIN1201. Topical studies of Chinese history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course introduces several important subjects on politics, religion, and thought in Chinese history. Through lectures on these interconnected topics, it allows students to understand and reflect on the continuities and transformations of Chinese history, as well as the essential features of Chinese culture. In addition, the course attempts to go beyond the limits of regional interests in traditional historiography, encouraging students to look at the dynamic interactions between native Chinese culture and foreign civilizations in different periods, and to examine by means of a global approach the diversity of Chinese culture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN1202. An introduction to the study of Chinese history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A foundation course in the development of Chinese history and historiography.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1203. Chinese history and culture in the twentieth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course gives a brief survey of the transformation and reformation of Chinese history and examines the major cultural changes since 1900.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1205. Chinese history: a general survey (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces Chinese political, social and economic history from early times to the present century. Its purpose is to enlighten students about the development of autarchy by the imperial dynasties ruling China and to explore the methods of rule and the development of the education system that were to produce despotism in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1206. An introduction to Chinese thought (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides a broad overview of traditional Chinese thought. The emphasis will be on the teachings of Confucianism, Daoism and Buddhism, but other schools of thought such as Mohism and Legalism will also be taught. Students will be introduced to the foundations of Chinese thought and will critically analyze its essential features. The relevance of traditional Chinese thought to the modern world will also be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1207. Traditional Chinese culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces the general characteristics of traditional Chinese culture giving special emphasis to the theory that man, being an integral part of nature, is in harmony with nature. It also explores some important aspects of traditional Chinese culture including science and technology in ancient China, the leisure activities of Chinese intellectuals, and the influence of Buddhism and Christianity on Chinese culture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second and Third-year Courses****CHIN2221. History of the Qin and Han Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the third century B.C. to the third century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2222. History of the Wei, Jin and the Northern-and-Southern Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the third century to the sixth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2223. History of the Sui and Tang Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the sixth century to the tenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2224. History of the Song and Yuan Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the tenth century to the fourteenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2225. History of the Ming Period (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the fourteenth century to the seventeenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2226. History of the Qing Period (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the seventeenth century to the twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2231. Religious Daoism and popular religions in China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course gives an overview of the historical development of religious Daoism and Chinese popular religions and examines the religious practice of Taoist worship and its cultural significance in China from the early medieval times to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2233. History of the Chinese legal system (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main features and development of the Chinese legal system from the early times to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2234. History of Chinese political institutions (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main features and the development of Chinese political institutions from the early times to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2235. Sources and methodology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course intends to provide a thorough training in research methodology related to the study of Chinese history. The ideas of noted ancient and contemporary Chinese historians will be drawn on. Particular emphasis is placed on the use of reference works and information search through internet.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2241. History of Chinese civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with Chinese civilization in general including ethnic cultures and problems in pre-twentieth century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2243. History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to give an in-depth investigation of Chinese scientific thought and culture from the pre-Qin period to the early twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2245. Examination systems in Chinese history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the theories and means of selecting men of talent, as well as the development of the examination systems in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2246. Historical writings: texts and styles (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or more of the following:

- (i) *Shiji*.
- (ii) *Hanshu*.
- (iii) *Hou Hanshu*.
- (iv) *Sanguozhi*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2247. Local histories (*fangzhi*) and genealogical records (*zupu*) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the general characteristics and the compilation problems of local histories (*fangzhi*) and genealogical records (*zupu*) in pre-twentieth century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**CHIN2251. Chinese philosophy I: Confucianism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the major philosophical texts of the Confucian tradition, particularly those of the pre-Qin period like the *Analects*, the *Mengzi* and the *Xunzi*. The key questions and ideas of Confucianism will be discussed and analyzed so that students can appreciate not only the common concerns and shared ideas of Confucianism but also different responses to similar questions. Students will also be encouraged to reflect critically on the validity and significance of Confucian thought.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2252. Chinese philosophy II: Daoism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies the major philosophical texts of the Daoist tradition, with a focus on the *Dao De Jing* and the *Zhuangzi*. Through a detailed exploration of the original texts, students will be led to appreciate and evaluate the metaphysical, ethical, social and political ideas of Laozi and Zhuangzi. Students will also be encouraged to reflect critically on the contemporary relevance of the Daoist thought.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2253. Chinese philosophy III: Buddhism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main streams of Indian Buddhist thought and their development in China. Students will be introduced to the basic tenets of Buddhism, especially those of the original Buddhism. The major schools of Mahayana Buddhism and their influence on Chinese Buddhism will be examined. The three major schools of Chinese Buddhism, Tiantai, Huayan and Chan, will be studied in more details to help students gain a firm understanding of Chinese Buddhist philosophy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course presents a historical survey of introduction and evolution of Christianity in China from the 7th century to the present day. The survey is to be viewed through a many-sided prism of religious, intellectual, institutional, ethical, and political aspects of Christianity and its integration into Chinese culture. By discussing Christianity in both global and Chinese contexts, this course will reveal the dynamics and transformations of Chinese religious life over history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2255. Chinese intellectual history (Part I) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the main intellectual trends in China from the Qin-Han to the Sui-Tang period.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2256. Chinese intellectual history (Part II) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the main intellectual trends in China from the Song period to the Qing period.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2259. Historical writing and historiography in traditional China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores some important issues of historical writing and historiography in traditional China with reference to the development of historical writing, the organization of historiography institutes, and the influence of emperors on historiography.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2263. Workshop in Chinese biographical studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the characteristic traits of key historical figures in all classes and professions in Chinese society from the pre-Qin period to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2264. Chinese eroticism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the rise of eroticism in traditional China. It aims to account for the rapid growth of eroticism in China. Through an analysis of classic texts and drawings, arts and culture in different periods, students can gain insights into the development of sexual inequality and the change of female status in traditional China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2268. History of China-West cultural exchanges (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores China's encounters with the West from the 13th century to the early 20th century. It presents a series of case studies on Sino-Western exchanges in the cultural domain. Major topics will be discussed through an interdisciplinary approach to bring together several fields in religion, philosophy, ethics, arts, and sciences. The course also offers a cross-cultural perspective that goes beyond the limitations of traditional Euro-centric and/or China-centered views.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2269. History of the Ming-Qing transition (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will give an in-depth discussion on the historical arena relating to the development of traditional Chinese culture during the period of the Ming-Qing transition. It deals with the history of the Ming-Qing dynastic change in seventeenth-century China, focusing on the political, socio-economic, and cultural changes as well as the impact these had on the mentality of the Ming-Qing literati and on Chinese thought more generally.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GROUP C: TRANSLATION****First-year Courses****CHIN1311. Introduction to translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an introduction to the theoretical and technical issues of translation, with guided practice in translating material of common occurrence.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**CHIN1312. Language studies for translation I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to familiarize students with the basic concepts of and various approaches to translation with special emphasis on the differences between the Chinese and English languages. Lectures are designed to introduce and explain to students the basic concepts of translation, whereas tutorials are largely discussion classes providing the main vehicle for the analysis of translation problems encountered in students' assignments. In-depth discussion and practice expose students to a great variety of texts for translation to enable them to learn and develop their practical skills of translation, and to heighten their perception of the nature of translation.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**Second and Third-year Courses**

All courses listed below, if not otherwise specified, may be taken in either the second or the third year. Students opting for the Major are however required to take all the courses in List 1 in the years indicated, unless the Head of School approves otherwise,

Second Year: CHIN2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316 (totalling 21 credits)

Third Year: CHIN2317, 2318, 2319, 2320 (totalling 18 credits),

and their remaining courses from List 2 in either the Second or the Third Year to make up at least 54 credits in two years.

---

**List 1**

Courses in List 1 are offered to Translation majors only. Non-majors who wish to take any of the courses should first apply for permission from the Head of School.

---

**CHIN2311. Translation criticism I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

In this course, texts in different literary genres (poetry, the essay, the novel, drama) will be selected from English and American literature and discussed alongside their Chinese translations. Students will be trained to develop a critical approach in evaluating the translator's competence and the merits of the selected translations.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2312. Translation criticism II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

Selected literary translations in English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different translations of the same original text will be examined concurrently.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2313. Language studies for translation II (6 credits)**

This course considers the differences in grammar, semantics and pragmatics between Chinese and English, paying special attention to problems of translating in these areas.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**CHIN2314. Translation in practice I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

This course provides practical training in English-Chinese translation. Materials selected include both the literary and the non-literary. The weekly lectures will be accompanied by written exercises and tutorials.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2315. Translation in practice II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

This course contains a critical element as well as a number of exercises in translation from Chinese into English. Texts of different stylistic types will be analyzed, and the use of translation strategies for rendering such texts will be explored.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2316. Translation theory (3 credits)**

This course introduces leading theories in translation studies. Through studying on-going debates in the field, students will acquire a theoretical and methodological knowledge indispensable to the procedure and evaluation of translation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2317. Translation criticism III (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

This is a sequel to Translation Criticism I. In this course, texts in different literary genres (poetry, the essay, the novel, drama) will be selected from English and American literature and discussed alongside their Chinese translations. Students will be trained to develop a critical approach in evaluating the translator's competence and the merits of the selected translations.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2318. Translation criticism IV (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

This is a sequel to Translation Criticism II. Selected literary translations in English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different translations of the same original text will be examined concurrently.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2319. Language studies for translation III: comparative stylistics (6 credits)**

This course includes a contrastive study of the Chinese and English languages, and examines their language styles for special purposes, the emphasis being on the study of rhetoric both as a problem of translation and as a part of the language skills essential to translators.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2320. Long translation (6 credits)**

The Long Translation project is an important part of the Translation degree. Its commencement is as early as the summer vacation between Years Two and Three when students are expected to find and decide on the texts for their translation. Close study of the chosen texts on the part of the students should occur in the vacation. From the beginning of the Third Year to about the end of March of the graduation year, the actual translation will be done by the student under the supervision of a teacher, in each case assigned by the teachers of Translation. The length of the translation should be about twenty pages; the nature of the writing, as literary or practical as the individual student prefers.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**List 2****CHIN2331. Choice of words in translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course takes a new semantic approach to the analysis of different types of word meaning in a text. It addresses some key issues of a functional grammar pertaining to translation studies in Hong Kong and it is specially planned for students who aspire to carve out for themselves a career in administration, publishing, advertising and journalism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2332. Translation in Hong Kong society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Translators' work demands specialised knowledge of the ways translation functions in specific social contexts. The principal concern of this course is the practical information about the various circumstances in which translation serves its purpose as a communicative activity, either in the Government or in the private sector. This course will be assessed on the basis of a written seminar paper presented orally and participation in discussion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the cross-cultural dimension of translation. It examines the most complex cultural barriers faced by the translator – such as differences in the expression of emotions (for instance - love, anger, fear), codes of behaviour (for instance intimacy, privacy, politeness), values and world views, notions of gender, aesthetic taste, humour and forms of symbolism and metaphor. These issues arising from translation practice will be discussed in light of current theories on culture and translation from multiple disciplines.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2334. Power of speech in written translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a course designed to teach Translation students specific communication skills required for social interactions in a cosmopolitan city such as Hong Kong. 'Good communicative behaviour' exhibited in bilingual texts is studied within the general framework of an Interpersonal Rhetoric model.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2336. Interpretation workshop I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to introduce to students the different modes of interpreting, i.e. sight translation, consecutive interpreting and simultaneous interpreting, and to familiarise them with the basic skills and techniques essential for interpreting. In addition to note-taking skills, students will also be

introduced to a brief history of interpreting, different environments where interpretation service is required and the professional ethics of the interpreter. Training will focus on sight translation and consecutive interpretation between English and Chinese. This course consists of both lectures and workshops.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the role of translation in Hong Kong's public administration procedures and business activities and how it is used for local and international communication. Students will practise translating papers related to negotiation, administration and the law arising from such contexts, and explore suitable translation techniques in the process.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Film-making today is becoming increasingly international, rendering translation almost indispensable to the industry. Translating films for dubbing and subtitling requires special skills distinct from those outside the field. This course concentrates on such skills, emphasizing audio-visual awareness and cinematic elements such as drama, dialogue, vernacular, and pacing. Critical theories on media and on cultural production and consumption will be introduced. Students learn through group projects, the hands-on translation of feature films, and critiques of film translation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course students will have the opportunity to practise translating from Chinese to English and vice-versa within the field of art history, art appreciation and art criticism. Writings on Chinese and western art, such as those published by museums and art galleries, will be used as study texts, and translation skills and strategies will be discussed to enable students to build up bilingual vocabulary and linguistic expressions for describing Chinese and western works of art in specific historical, social, cultural and aesthetic contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2342. Interpretation workshop II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of Interpretation Workshop I and aims to prepare students for the pursuit of a career in interpreting. Students will be provided with intensive training in interpreting on a variety of topics and taught the skills to improvise in times of a crisis. This course will also provide training in the essential skills and techniques for simultaneous interpreting, including shadowing, rephrasing, memory retention, abstraction and the cultivation of split attention.

Prerequisite: CHIN2336. Interpretation Workshop I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2343. Legal interpreting (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to provide students, who have already acquired the basic skills and techniques required for the different modes of interpreting, with the opportunity to develop advanced interpreting skills in legal interpreting. The introductory lectures will provide students with an overview of the legal system of Hong Kong, trial procedures, and the nature of legal interpreting. This course will also familiarise students with the characteristics of legal English, common terms pertaining to trial proceedings as well as principles and protocol associated with interpreting in the judicial system. Effects of legal bilingualism on legal interpreting will also be discussed. This course consists of lectures, workshops and visits to law courts to observe court interpreters at work.

Prerequisite: CHIN2336. Interpretation Workshop I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2344. Translation of short stories (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to introduce students to the fundamentals of short story composition and the techniques that are involved in their translation. It also aims to encourage them to pay close attention to the unique narrative techniques involved in the composition of short stories in both Chinese and English, and to encourage them to explore ways of re-creating such expositions in their translations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2345. Syntax-based translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an interdisciplinary, Linguistics-Translation crossover course offered to third year students majoring in Translation, Linguistics, and Law. As its course title suggests, it aims to help students acquire two types of skills: (i) to analyze highly complex sentence structures in English and Chinese; (ii) to translate legal documents from English into Chinese, and *vice versa*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2346. From page to stage: A workshop on drama adaptation and translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The adaptation of literary classics into staged productions can be an extremely rewarding pedagogic exercise. They not only demand from students an in-depth reading of the original text, but also writing and analytical skills, an understanding of the basics of drama performance, as well as familiarity with the principles of translation. Throughout this course, students will not only be trained in the above areas, but by collaborating with Eduarts Classic Theatre, they will be given the valuable opportunity to become involved in an actual production of a literary classic.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**GROUP D: DISSERTATION****Third-year Course****CHIN3401. Dissertation (12 credits)**

A dissertation will be written on a subject approved by the supervisor and the School. This course is only open to students majoring in the School of Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GROUP E: COURSES FOR FOREIGN LEARNERS****CHIN1501. Chinese as a foreign language I (Part I) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This intensive course is intended for foreign learners who have no prior knowledge of the Chinese language. It aims to build a solid foundation for students wishing to go on to more advanced levels of language study and in-depth study of Chinese culture and society. It familiarizes students with the phonetic structures of *Putonghua*, the *Hanyu Pinyin* system, pronunciation, tones, intonation, sentence patterns and the characteristics of situational conversations. Up to 300 most frequently used Chinese characters will be introduced. Students are required to write 200 of the 300 characters introduced. Students will be taught how to make use of Chinese dictionaries.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1502. Chinese as a foreign language I (Part II) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA Students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This intensive course is designed for foreign learners who have completed **CHIN1501** or who can demonstrate an equivalent competence in the placement test. A greater emphasis will be placed on oral drills and listening comprehension. Students will be exposed to about 400 frequently used Chinese characters, of which they are required to write 300. Upon the completion of the course, students should be able to recognize approximately 700 Chinese characters and write 500 Chinese characters. Students will also be exposed to various aspects of Chinese culture and history in learning the origins of Chinese characters and idioms.

Prerequisite: **CHIN1501**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2501. Chinese as a foreign language II (Part I) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This intensive course is intended for foreign learners who have completed or have an equivalent competency to CHIN1502. It aims to further develop students' audio-lingual proficiency as well as raise their reading and writing ability. Students can use information obtained from their course to converse in daily life topics with Chinese people, and present speeches based on the assigned topics. Emphasis will be placed on everyday topics and common patterns so that students can experience communication in Chinese. Students will learn how to write 250 new characters on top of approximately 500 characters acquired in previous level. Students should be able to recognize no less than 1,000 Chinese characters accumulated through previous learning. The length of the guided composition will be about 200 characters.

Prerequisite: **CHIN1502**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**CHIN2502. Chinese as a foreign language II (Part II) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This intensive course is intended for foreign learners who have completed or have an equivalent competency to CHIN2501. It aims to develop students' overall language skills through reading and discussion of contemporary affairs. Students will not only learn about differences between written language and spoken language, but will also gain the ability to understand and speak Chinese in a variety of situations. At the end of semester students should be able to write 150 new characters on top of those taught in CHIN2501. Students should be able to recognize up to 1,300 characters and write more than 900 of these characters accumulated through previous learning. The length of the guided composition will be 300-400 characters.

Prerequisite: **CHIN2501**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN3501. Chinese as a foreign language III (Part I) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This intensive course is intended for foreign learners who have completed or have an equivalent competency to CHIN2502. It aims to increase students' communicative and linguistic competence in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and translating. It also exposes students to some in-depth study of various aspects of Chinese culture and society. It familiarizes students with up to 200 Chinese characters in addition to 900 Chinese characters learnt. Attention will be paid to the increase of students' vocabulary. The length of the guided composition will be 400-500 characters. They should recognize up to 1,500 Chinese characters.

Prerequisite: **CHIN2502** or equivalent.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN3502. Chinese as a foreign language III (Part II) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This intensive course is intended for foreign learners who have completed or have an equivalent competency to CHIN3501. It aims to increase students' communicative and linguistic competence in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and translating. It will also raise students' reading comprehension ability through more in-depth reading on Chinese culture and society. Students will learn how to write up to 150 more Chinese characters, in addition to 1,100 Chinese characters learnt. The length of the guided composition will be about 500 characters. Students should be able to recognize up to 1,700 characters.

Prerequisite: **CHIN3501** or equivalent.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ASSESSMENT**

Each course will be examined by a written paper of not more than 2-hour duration except those courses which are assessed by 100% coursework.

---

**SCHOOL OF ENGLISH****INTRODUCTION**

The School of English gives teaching and supervision in English and American literatures, world literature and cross-cultural studies in English, sociolinguistics, critical linguistics, English language and linguistics, and is the home of the Programme in Language and Communication. The School of

English also contributes to the teaching of the major in English Language and Linguistics for the BA/BEd programme.

The School offers three majors in the second and third years:

- (1) **English Studies (ES)**;
- (2) **Cross-Cultural Studies in English (CSIE)**;
- (3) **Language and Communication (L&C)**.

**English Studies** offers a broad curriculum of literary and linguistic studies in English. **Cross-Cultural Studies in English** analyzes the encounters, crossings, fusions and conflicts of cultures; more specifically, those that have left their mark on English literature and the various literatures in English. **Language and Communication** centres on the study and use of language in society in a multilingual, globalized world.

Admission to the School is strictly on the basis of academic record including at least a minimum C grade in the Use of English AS-level examination or its equivalent. Students intending to declare a major/minor or enrol in courses in English Studies and/or Cross-Cultural Studies in English in Year 2 and Year 3 must normally have completed the first-year prerequisite course ENGL1009 with a satisfactory result of at least a C grade. Students who intend to declare a major/minor or enrol in courses in Language and Communication must have completed the first-year prerequisite course LCOM1001 with a satisfactory result of at least a C grade. (Waiver of the prerequisite may be given at the discretion of the School.) Students must complete a minimum of nine six-credit senior courses (or equivalent) in their major.

At the end of the students' first or second year, the School will invite a small number of students to become **Special Honours candidates**. Special Honours students may be Majors in English Studies, Cross-Cultural Studies in English, or Language and Communication. Selected on the basis of their academic record and tutors' recommendations, these students are required to take an additional 12 credits in the second and third years beyond the normal requirement, which include a 6-credit research seminar, and will be guaranteed admission to the courses of their choice. Upon completing their programme and meeting the Special Honours requirements, these students will be given special recognition by the School.

Choice of courses and options is subject to the approval of the School. Students should consult the School web page about the actual course offerings and must ensure that their choice of courses conforms to any prerequisites laid down by the School. MAJORS in English Studies, Cross-Cultural Studies in English and Language and Communication are given priority entry into senior courses in their respective major.

Prescribed reading, specifications for each course, recommended course combinations, and information about prerequisites are available at the website <http://www.hku.hk/english>. Regular attendance at tutorials and other classes and the punctual completion of work prescribed by the student's tutor or supervisor are expected.

## ENGLISH STUDIES

English Studies (ES) includes both the study of literatures in English (English and American literatures; creative writing; women's writing; postcolonial and world literature in English; literary, cultural and film studies; and critical theory) and English language and linguistics (sociolinguistics; World Englishes; language and identity; critical linguistics; discourse analysis; literary linguistics).

The English Studies major is designed to expose students to a rich spectrum of approaches to the study of English in a global environment and to promote a broad understanding of the effects to which English is and can be applied in a variety of discursive contexts. The courses are mostly assessed by coursework. Students are encouraged to demonstrate their understanding of topics and course materials in critical and creative applications of their knowledge, in the form of presentations, essays and research projects, and to develop skills of accurate and historically sensitive analysis, critical reading and thinking, and clear and coherent argument in both writing and speaking.

Students who declare a major or minor in English Studies will:

- Identify and explain major issues in the study of English literature and linguistics;
- Express their critical responses to the texts they study as a starting point for formulating their own argument;
- Question and evaluate different perspectives to achieve a better understanding of themselves and others as readers/writers and hearers/speakers;
- Integrate knowledge of English literature and linguistics in developing a critical vocabulary in which to discuss and analyze topics in English Studies;
- Develop an appreciation of the multicultural and heteroglossic nature of English language and literature.

### **Requirements**

Admission to the first year is on the basis of academic record including at least a minimum C grade in the Use of English AS-level examination or its equivalent.

Students intending to major or minor in English Studies must pass the first-year prerequisite course ENGL1009 with a satisfactory result of at least a C grade.

### **Syllabus for students admitted in the academic year 2010-2011**

#### **First-year Course**

Students intending to major or minor in English Studies must pass the first-year prerequisite course ENGL1009 with a satisfactory result of at least a C grade.

ENGL1009. Introduction to English studies (6 credits)

Students are encouraged to take ENGL1010. The scholarship of English Studies (6 credits) in conjunction with ENGL1009.

#### **Second and Third-year Courses**

The major in English Studies consists of 54 credits and the minor in English Studies consists of 30 credits from the list below, taken in the second and third years of the programme. An optional capstone experience for advanced students is provided by elective final-year research, lecture and seminar courses.

ENGL2002.	Language in society (6 credits)
ENGL2003.	The history of English (6 credits)
ENGL2004.	English syntax (6 credits)
ENGL2007.	Literary linguistics (6 credits)
ENGL2010.	English novel I (6 credits)
ENGL2011.	English novel II (6 credits)
ENGL2012.	Contemporary literary theory (6 Credits)

ENGL2022.	Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)
ENGL2027.	Text and discourse in contemporary English (6 credits)
ENGL2030.	World Englishes (6 credits)
ENGL2031.	The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)
ENGL2033.	English novel III (6 credits)
ENGL2035.	Reading poetry (6 credits)
ENGL2037.	Science fiction (6 credits)
ENGL2039.	Language and gender (6 credits)
ENGL2040.	Asian American literature (6 credits)
ENGL2045.	Travel writing (6 credits)
ENGL2046.	English words (6 credits)
ENGL2047.	English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)
ENGL2048.	Language and jargon (6 credits)
ENGL2050.	English corpus linguistics (6 credits)
ENGL2054.	Race, language and identity (6 credits)
ENGL2055.	American Gothic: Haunted Homes (6 credits)
ENGL2057.	Text and image (6 credits)
ENGL2062.	The history of Western linguistics (6 credits)
ENGL2065.	Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)
ENGL2066.	Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)
ENGL2069.	Form and meaning (6 credits)
ENGL2074.	Postcolonial readings (6 credits)
ENGL2075.	The idea of China (6 credits)
ENGL2076.	Romanticism (6 credits)
ENGL2078.	The novel today (6 credits)
ENGL2079.	Shakespeare (6 credits)
ENGL2080.	Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)
ENGL2082.	Modern literary criticism (6 credits)
ENGL2085.	Creative Writing I (6 credits)
ENGL2086.	Creative Writing II (6 credits)
ENGL2087.	Persuasion (6 credits)
ENGL2089.	Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)
ENGL2092.	Postcolonial English (6 credits)
ENGL2093.	Literary islands: English poetry and prose from the South Pacific and the Caribbean (6 credits)
ENGL2095.	The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)
ENGL2097.	Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)
ENGL2098.	Call and response: Southeast Asian literature written in English (6 credits)
ENGL2099.	Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)
ENGL2100.	Language and social interaction (6 credits)
ENGL2101.	Culture and society (6 credits)
ENGL2103.	Language and new media (6 credits)
ENGL2104.	Language in the USA (6 credits)
ENGL2109.	Writing diaspora (6 credits)
ENGL2110.	Writing back (6 credits)
ENGL2111.	Seeing Australia (6 credits)
ENGL2112.	An introduction to the history of English (6 credits)
ENGL2113.	Conrad and others (6 credits)
ENGL2115.	Theories of language acquisition I (6 credits)
ENGL2116.	Theories of language acquisition II (6 credits)
ENGL2117.	English phonology and morphology (6 credits)
ENGL2118.	Law and literature (6 credits)
ENGL2119.	English in Hong Kong: making it your own (6 credits)
ENGL2120.	Science fiction and utopia (6 credits)
ENGL2121.	Comedy, renewal, and cross-cultural drama (6 credits)

ENGL2122.	Victorians at home and abroad (6 credits)
ENGL2123.	Language and identity in Hong Kong (6 credits)
ENGL2125.	English construction grammar (6 credits)
ENGL2126.	Law, meaning, and interpretation (6 credits)
ENGL2127.	Legal discourse and the mind (6 credits)
ENGL2128.	Modernism (6 credits)
ENGL2129.	English as a language of science (6 credits)
ENGL2130.	Signs, language and meaning: integrational reflections (6 credits)
ENGL3032.	Advanced topics in English studies (12 credits)
ENGL3033.	Research seminar in English studies (6 credits)
ENGL3034.	Research seminar in English literary studies (6 credits)
ENGL3035.	Research seminar in literary theory (6 credits)
ENGL3036.	Research seminar in English linguistics (6 credits)
ENGL3037.	Research seminar in language and society (6 credits)
CSIE2003.	World literature (6 credits)
CSIE2004.	The cosmopolitan imagination (6 credits)
LCOM2001.	Theories of language and communication (6 credits)
LCOM2002.	Language in the workplace (6 credits)
LCOM2003.	Language and politeness (6 credits)
LCOM2004.	Language, communication and the media (6 credits)
LCOM2005.	Language, communication and globalization: Politics, peril, pop (6 credits)
LCOM3001.	Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)

### ***Special Honours Programme***

Students who have achieved outstanding academic performance in the first-year course with tutors' recommendation will be invited to become Special Honours candidates, for which they will be given priority for admission to senior ENGL, CSIE and LCOM courses as listed in the curriculum. Special Honours students majoring in English Studies must complete an additional 12 credits in the second and third years, including a 6-credit research seminar.

### **First-year Courses**

#### **ENGL1009. Introduction to English studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the study of English writing. Students will be introduced to the basic elements of literary analysis and theory in English, and to intellectual issues relevant to the study of the language and its culture. No previous experience of literary studies or linguistics is assumed, but at the end of this introductory course students will have a grasp of the basic concepts and skills needed to make advanced studies in English interesting and enjoyable. The course will also offer guidance and practice in reading, discussion, and group work.

Assessment: 60% coursework and 40% written examination.

#### **ENGL1010. The scholarship of English Studies (6 credits)**

*(Students can only take this course in conjunction with ENGL1009.)*

This course supplements ENGL1009; it focuses on the scholarship of English literature and linguistics. Although this is a WID course (Writing in the Disciplines), focusing on literary and linguistic studies, the skills students will acquire are essential to university studies and are transferable to other academic disciplines and students' working life.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## Second and Third-year Courses

### *English Studies*

#### **ENGL2002. Language in society (6 credits)**

This course will provide an introduction to the study of ‘sociolinguistics’, which deals with the relationship between language and society. Topics will vary, but may include the following: multilingualism, language varieties, language planning, language change, English in contact with other languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)**

This is a course about language origins and language change. It investigates the social, political and linguistic reasons that English has developed into the global superpower language of today, and introduces basic tools and methodologies for studying language change in English.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2004. English syntax (6 credits)**

This course introduces the structure of English by investigating approaches to grammar, models of grammatical analysis, and the grammar of contemporary English. It is interested in the relationship between morphology and syntax, and grammar and linguistics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)**

This course uses linguistic techniques to analyze literary texts by examining both the devices that literary authors employ and the literary effects they create in different styles and genres. It employs methods of structural linguistic analysis (looking at the syntax and phonology of texts) as well as socio-historical and pragmatic methods.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2010. English novel I (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its development in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2011. English novel II (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its development in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2012. Contemporary literary theory (6 Credits)**

In the late 20th century, developments in critical thought had a major impact on literature and criticism. Relations between literary production and language, politics and history were radically re-examined by and through what has become known as ‘theory’. As a body of thought, theory includes such diverse and conflicting schools and movements as Marxism, poststructuralism, feminism and gender theory, new historicism, postcolonialism and postmodernism. As well as exploring the institution of theory in the academy, students will put theory into practice in readings of selected literary texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2022. Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)**

This course will explore questions of identity and difference as expressed in women's writing. It will provide a general introduction to feminist literary theory and the on-going range of feminist interventions in literary and cultural studies.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2027. Text and discourse in contemporary English (6 credits)**

This course will examine how writers exploit the resources of English for creative and communicational purposes in contemporary writing in different genres.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)**

This course explores both structural and sociolinguistic aspects of World Englishes, with particular attention to New Englishes, especially postcolonial Englishes of Asia. We will examine how the structural features found in these Englishes are not a consequence of a lack of ability to learn English perfectly, or pronounce it correctly, or express it clearly. Rather, such features are completely appropriate to the multilingual and multicultural ecologies in which the Englishes have evolved, ecologies in which numerous other languages of diverse typologies abound. We will also critically consider issues and debates in World/ New Englishes, involving concepts of 'mother tongue', 'nativeness' and ownership, issues of ideology, attitudes and identity, and challenges of creative expression, pedagogy and planning.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2031. The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)**

This course introduces the study of meaning in the English language. We will examine semantic meanings – meanings encoded in the language system itself – and also pragmatic meanings – meanings inferred from the communicative context of language use.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2033. English novel III (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its developments in the twentieth century.

Assessment: 60% coursework and 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2035. Reading poetry (6 credits)**

An advanced reading course for students interested in specializing in poetry.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2037. Science fiction (6 credits)**

This is a survey of the genre of science fiction from late 19th century literature by H.G. Wells through to recent movies such as *Blade Runner* and *The Matrix*. As well as formal and historical study of the SF genre, the course will be concerned with fictional presentations of scientific possibility and the moral and political strategies that underlie representations of utopia and dystopia.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)**

This course examines the relationship between cultural attitudes and language, how gender socialization is reflected in the structure and use of language, and the effectiveness of political and social forces in “legislated” linguistic change. Stereotypes and biases about the sexes, standard and vernacular norms will also be examined in the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)**

This course presents a survey of Asian American literature through literary texts from Asian American communities, including Japanese, Chinese, Korean, Filipino, and Southeast Asian Americans. We will touch on major themes explored in these texts, such as concepts of dislocation and relocation as well as finding and/or inventing a usable past. The readings span a range of genres and historical periods. The course will attempt to contextualize these texts both historically and culturally.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)**

This is a survey of European travel writing as a literary genre from the medieval period to the present day. The writings of travelers and explorers such as Marco Polo, Christopher Columbus and James Cook are examined, as well as those of modern travel writers such as Freya Stark, Graham Greene, D.H. Lawrence, Paul Theroux and Jan Morris. European travel writing is explored formally and thematically with the aim of introducing students to its many strategies and subtexts, and especially its historical role in articulating ‘otherness’ for the European imagination.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2046. English words (6 credits)**

This course explores the structure, meaning, history, and usage of English words from a linguistic point of view.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2047. English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)**

This course will provide an introduction to the analysis of English discourse from a linguistic perspective. Students will learn rhetorical methodologies and examine their effects on readers and listeners. Units include: spoken and written English discourse, global organization and cohesion, discourse markers, information structure, narrative, and non-verbal structures and strategies.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2048. Language and jargon (6 credits)**

This course focuses on specialized sub-group languages or jargons, and uses texts from a range of historical period to examine the socio-cultural dynamics behind the creation, maintenance and disappearance of such jargons. Particular attention will be paid to the history of criminal jargon, prison jargon and other speech varieties associated with other marginal or criminalized sub-groups (e.g. drug addicts, “tramps”, etc.), as well as to the history of the study of such jargons and the inclusion of jargon and slang items in mainstream dictionaries. Students will read texts from different periods in the history of English, as well as considering the role of jargons in modern societies such as the United States, Britain and Hong Kong, as well as in “cyber-space”.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**ENGL2050. English corpus linguistics (6 credits)**

Corpus linguistics is a rapidly-developing methodology in the study of language. It exploits the power of modern computer technology to manipulate and analyze large collections of naturally-occurring language (“corpora”). This course will introduce students to the use of computers and computerized corpora as tools for exploring the English language.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2054. Race, language and identity (6 credits)**

This course looks at different notions of identity and the origins of modern understandings of ethnicity. It focuses on the contribution made by ideas about language to theories of group identity, including nationalism, and the tensions between linguistic, racial, religious and cultural notions of identity.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2055. American Gothic: Haunted Homes (6 credits)**

In this course we will examine the gothic as an important genre in American literature and trace its tradition across two centuries. As a response to dominant ideas and conventions that shaped American literature, the gothic offers us a challenging perspective on the mainstream as well as on what it excludes. Beginning with some classic examples of the genre, we will seek to identify the elements and the rhetoric of the gothic text in order to appreciate the specific use that later writers have made of the gothic form.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2057. Text and image (6 credits)**

This interdisciplinary course explores relations between literature and various forms of image-based representation. It begins with ‘painterly’ descriptions in novels and poetry, and common strands in art and literary criticism, and proceeds to discussion of relations between film and literature, such as the presence of cinematographic form in modern literature. In the concluding module, we consider the shift in emphasis from text-based to image-based culture and its impact on postmodern society. Course material consists of critical essays, and examples from literature, the pictorial arts and the moving image.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2062. The history of Western linguistics (6 credits)**

This course will trace the history of ideas about language and its relationship to the mind and the world, from ancient to modern times.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2065. Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)**

This course will introduce students to a number of questions about linguistic meaning and examine various definitions of metaphor. Among the questions considered are: What role does metaphor play in human language? In what way (if at all) do languages create or embody particular culturally-specific world-views?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)**

This course studies linguistics as a branch of what Edward Said has termed 'Orientalism', i.e. western models of Asian language, literature, culture and society created within European colonialism. It looks at the ways western linguists of the 19th and 20th century have 'imagined' or categorized Asian languages, relating those categories to debates within western linguistics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2069. Form and meaning (6 credits)**

An investigation into the relationship between English structure and meaning (semantics and pragmatics), considering how meanings are encoded and inferred.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2074. Postcolonial readings (6 credits)**

This course examines important works of literature in English from perspectives opened up by recent debates on 'nation', 'narration', and 'hybridity'.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)**

An examination of English representations and interpretations of China in a selection of writings from the 18th century to the early 20th century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2076. Romanticism (6 credits)**

The course studies the Romantic era, and traces its history through a selection of its main texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2078. The novel today (6 credits)**

This course examines developments in the novel by studying a representative sample of recently published fiction in English. Innovations in narrative technique, such as metafiction and postmodern poetics, will be one strand of enquiry. Thematic strands will depend on the novels selected for study but are likely to include, gender, representation, globalism, postmodernism, race and ethnicity, and identity.

Assessment: 60% coursework and 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2079. Shakespeare (6 credits)**

This course will explore some of the themes and form of Shakespeare's drama, and will consider how his work has been interpreted in modern times.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)**

This course will explore the often difficult relationship between women and what has been traditionally known as the 'feminine sphere'. Women have commonly been associated with the feminine sphere of love, marriage and family and this course will consider how modernity and feminism have challenged and disrupted this assumption.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2082. Modern literary criticism (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to a selection of major texts in literary criticism from the early 19th century to the 1960s. It examines principal critical concepts and methodological principles formulated in these texts and traces the developments of critical thought within this period.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2085. Creative Writing I (6 credits)**

This seminar offers an introduction to creative writing. Writers in the class will focus especially on telling and writing stories through workshops, readings, research, and individual coaching. Students will also practice the art of holding an audience page by page. Each writer in the class will develop a body of work specific to individual taste and discovery. No previous experience is necessary. Workshops and materials will be introduced to sharpen the writer's plot, characters, dialogue, with an emphasis on the writer's ear and eye for shaping stories across drafts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2086. Creative Writing II (6 credits)**

This seminar offers an introduction to creative writing through the lens of drama and screenwriting. Workshops, studio exercises, and individual coaching will offer writers in the class a chance to work individually and collaboratively on plays, screenplays, and the art of the scene. With individual coaching and practice sessions in class, students will develop the structures and designs for plays or movie scripts, along with decisions for bringing each scene alive for viewers. Each writer in the class will develop plays or screenplays specific to voice and history. No previous experience is necessary, and there is no prerequisite for this course. Workshops and exercises will be introduced to help sharpen plot, character, set, staging, and drafts across scripts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)**

This is a course about rhetoric, in which students will explore ways in which language can be used to convey, reinforce or change ideas. The objective is to help students to understand, analyze, and develop the arts of discourse in English, and the critical skills on which they depend.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)**

This course will be an introduction to American literature primarily through fictional and non-fictional accounts of exemplary lives. Our focus will be on how successive generations of immigrants and settlers have constructed and transformed a vision of "America" as process and promise. The course aims to introduce students to the diversity of writing that constitutes American literature, to guide them in the development of critical reading and writing skills and to provide them with opportunities to build, present and respond to arguments about the texts and topics under discussion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2092. Postcolonial English (6 credits)**

For many creative writers - writers of poetry, fiction, drama - from outside the Anglo-American world, English has a complex history and often an uneasy relationship, with native languages. The decision, or the choice, to write and publish in English, is an issue they have reflected upon and debated, nationally and internationally, with other writers. Such reflections and debates constitute one of the dynamic contours of “Global English” as a discourse. Critical questions often raised in the debate concern the English language as the bearer of cultures. They include the changing roles of English as a colonial or postcolonial language, as the language of the unitary or pluralistic nations, as a dominant or minority language, as the language of ‘English literature’ or ‘Literature in English’. In this course, students will be introduced to these questions through discussions of essays by writers who have considerable practical experience using English as the language of creativity, and who are active contributors to debates about English in their own locations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2093. Literary islands: English poetry and prose from the South Pacific and the Caribbean (6 credits)**

In this course we will read and discuss literary texts mainly poems and short stories from two cultural regions that received the English language as colonial cargo between the 17th and 19th centuries. Looking at the different histories of the insular cultures of the South Pacific and the Caribbean, we will consider how these histories have shaped the emergence of Anglophone literatures, and how these literatures in turn challenge our expectations of English literature. We will pay special attention to the forms of communication these texts represent and establish as they construct a sense of place, and parallels will perhaps be drawn to the case of Hong Kong. Topics: history and politics of English in the South Pacific and the Caribbean, the emergence of English-language literatures and the development of indigenous traditions, the relationship between writing and place, distance and insularity, the relationship between literature and vernacular culture (conversation, song, storytelling, oratory).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2095. The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)**

Interpretations of the Orient in modern western writings, from the colonial to the postcolonial period.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2097. Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)**

In this course, students will read selections of fiction, poetry, essays, and journalism from earlier moments in the twentieth century to post-1997. Questions of modernity, urbanization and the urban subject, and cross-cultural identities will be discussed from perspectives opened up by postcolonial theories, and with reference to historical change both locally and in Hong Kong’s geopolitical situation in the last fifty years.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2098. Call and response: Southeast Asian literature written in English (6 credits)**

This course considers a range of South East Asian texts by focusing on authors from India, Malaysia and Singapore. Discussions will centre on issues raised by the literature, such as: the effects of colonialism, post-colonialism and neo-colonialism over the last century, the construction of “nation” and the problematic relationship between individual, religious, cultural and national identities, the effects of exile and peripheral existence on identity, the role of the author as myth-maker and canonical revisionist, regional forms of feminism, and the consequences of globalization and transculturalism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2099. Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)**

This interdisciplinary course explores the relationship between language and identity with a special focus on Asian Americans and linguistic issues relevant to Asian Americans. With particular attention to the linguistic practices of Asian Americans, we will examine such questions as: What attitudes are associated with being bilingual? Do Asian Americans speak with an accent? Does accent determine whether Asian Americans are perceived of as 'white'? Do any Asian Americans speak 'black'? We will also explore the position of Asian Americans in social, political, and educational discourses in order to understand how an 'Asian American' identity can be constructed through language practices. Although the course focuses on Asian American identities and experiences, students will be encouraged to discuss issues of social identity and language in general.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2100. Language and social interaction (6 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to the analysis of social interaction (in English) and explores the relationships between macro- and micro-level approaches to the study of language and social interaction. We will examine how language both reflects and contributes to the organization of social order by close analyzes of naturally occurring interactions. Students will learn the fundamentals of data collection and transcription, explore ways of interpreting talk as a form of social action, and conduct original research on the analysis of data that they will collect for the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2101. Culture and society (6 credits)**

What is culture? What is Cultural Studies? Why should we consider cultural formations in literary studies? Focusing on the cultural critic Raymond Williams (1921 – 1988), this course introduces students to British Cultural Studies and discusses the importance of Cultural Studies in the changing landscape of literary studies. More specifically, we will discuss the historical transformation of literary studies from a text-based practice into a broad critical engagement with human experience and examine the critical energies within literary studies that have brought about such a transformation. Students in this course will read a selection of seminal writings by Williams with close reference to the literary examples he cites from prose fiction, poetry and drama.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2103. Language and new media (6 credits)**

*[Non permissible combinations: LCOM2004. Language, communication and the media]*

Language is strongly influenced by the medium through which it is presented. When the medium itself is in wide use, norms emerge which determine not only the form that language can take, but also the pragmatic effects of any language use that either exploits or deviates from these norms. The nature of public language--that is, language generated by or for the public at large through various media--in turn influences public discourse (i.e., what is being talked about large-scale, and how it is talked about). When the nature of the medium is expressly exploited linguistically, then this change can achieve overwhelming and widespread effects.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)**

This course addresses the problems (theoretical and practical) inherent in defining a variety of English as 'American'. Issues treated include the history of American English; dialectology; sociolinguistics; Black English; and the politics of American English.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2109. Writing diaspora (6 credits)**

This course examines problems and issues in the literature and film produced by diasporic and migrant communities. Structured around several modules in which various texts are used to investigate such issues as identity and subjectivity, displacement, nostalgia, memory, second-generation conflicts, “passing” and diasporic transformation. Elaborates on the problematic nature of these issues and explains their significance in global diasporas.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2110. Writing back (6 credits)**

‘Writing Back: Post-Colonial Re-writings of the Canon’ is a course that examines the strategy employed by some post-colonial literary texts of re-writing ‘canonical’ literary texts to expose their literary, cultural and ideological assumptions. The course investigates the ways in which such texts resist the imposed cultural assumptions of English literature.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2111. Seeing Australia (6 credits)**

‘Seeing Australia’ is a course that examines the way Australia has been ‘seen’ over the last two centuries, in art and literature. In investigating the way Australia has historically been depicted and understood, students will discover how Australia has come to exist in the mind of its own people and those from other countries. Australia is therefore seen as the subject of many culturally disparate ‘ways of seeing’. We begin the process by analyzing the concept of ‘seeing’ itself. ‘Seeing’ stands for many different ways of knowing and representing and these will be explored in a range of texts: written texts in poetic and narrative form, and visual texts of various kinds.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2112. An introduction to the history of English (6 credits)**

This introductory seminar will acquaint students with the main historical periods of the English language (Old English, Middle English, Early Modern English) and theoretical and methodological problems and approaches in studying these varieties. Through the use of various media apart from academic literature (video, audio presentations, online sources, computer corpora), the seminar will offer students various modes of learning about the history of English, language change, and linguistic theory.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2113. Conrad and others (6 credits)**

Joseph Conrad (1857-1924) was a Pole who wrote fiction in English, after a career as a sailor which took him round a world largely dominated by expanding and competing European empires. He often focuses his stories on cross-cultural encounters. This course sets Conrad’s work in its cultural and historical context, and examines the way his fiction represents ‘alterity’, our sense of the otherness of other people, which also helps us define the self.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2115. Theories of language acquisition I (6 credits)**

[*Non permissible combinations: EDUC2203 First and second language acquisition, LING2036 Child language*]

This course offers an introduction to the central themes in language acquisition, covering first language acquisition, second/foreign language acquisition and bilingualism. Students are expected to gain from the course a broad understanding of how children acquire their first language, how second language learners learn a new language, and the potential differences in processing and outcome.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2116. Theories of language acquisition II (6 credits)**

This advanced course will deal with some of the critical issues addressed in Theories of Language Acquisition I in greater depth. It covers theoretical perspectives ranging from innateness, empiricism, to emergentism. We will study a survey of research on language acquisition and examine observational and experimental empirical data from various schools.

Prerequisite: ENGL2115. Theories of Language Acquisition I or EDUC2203 or LING2036.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2117. English phonology and morphology (6 credits)**

This course provides a comprehensive study of the sounds (phonemes) and structure (morphemes) of English words. Students will examine the phonemes of English as they occur separately and in context and the processes involved in producing those sounds. The course includes problems that Cantonese speakers might have in mastering English phonemes (and why) and ways in which those problems can be overcome. Students will also develop an understanding of the building blocks of English words and how morphemes differ from syllables. In learning the various ways in which English words are formed, each student will be able to increase his/her own lexicon and develop an understanding of how and why words are constantly being added to or deleted from the English language and who is generally responsible for those changes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2118. Law and literature (6 credits)**

Law and literature are cognate disciplines: legal themes and characters recur in fiction, and rhetoric and storytelling arguably form an integral part of legal argumentation. This course will explore the relationship between law and literature via an examination of the ways they respond to common issues and problems. We will look at how the law has been represented in a literary context, and will investigate the possibility of interpreting legal material as literary product. Readings will be drawn from fiction, drama, court cases, and critical theory.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2119. English in Hong Kong: making it your own (6 credits)**

This is a web-based self-study course for inter-Faculty broadening purposes, providing an introduction to English as a cultural phenomenon in Hong Kong. There are no lectures and all teaching materials are available online for self-study.

Assessment: 60% coursework and 40% written examination.

**ENGL2120. Science fiction and utopia (6 credits)**

This is a web-based self-directed course that examines the concept of utopia (including eutopia and dystopia) through the reading of selected Science Fiction texts. The course begins by theorising utopia and then proceeds by way of three additional modules, each of which extends a particular aspect of the concept of utopia. Since this is a web-based course there are no formal lectures or tutorials for students to attend. Rather, “lectures” and other teaching and learning materials are available online for self-directed study.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2121. Comedy, renewal, and cross-cultural drama (6 credits)**

In this course we will look at cross-cultural drama through the lens of renewal and comedy. Topics to be addressed include cross-cultural theory, dramatic renewal, development of “character” in cross-cultural stagings, oral and ritual origins of drama, humor and comedy. The course involves students in several ways: as readers, as writers, as voluntary participants in short stage pieces, as collectors of data on comedy and renewal in popular and literary settings.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2122. Victorians at home and abroad (6 credits)**

This course gives an overview of Great Britain and her Empire under the reign of Queen Victoria (1837-1901), tracing its history, culture and politics through a number of representative fictional and non-fictional texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2123. Language and identity in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of ENGL2002 Language in Society with a special focus on language and identity in Hong Kong. Students who have taken ENGL2002 will have a foundation in sociolinguistics, which certainly will be helpful, but ENGL2002 is not a prerequisite.

This course examines identity studies and related language ideology research in sociolinguistics and linguistic anthropology (including some relevant literature from sociology and social psychology). It specifically draws on research based in Hong Kong for comparison understanding, and application of currently available theoretical models.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2125. English construction grammar (6 credits)**

This course will introduce students to two burgeoning paradigms in present-day linguistics: construction grammar and grammaticalization theory. The first of these is a general semantico-syntactic language theory; the second a (historical) linguistic discipline that focuses on how grammatical constructions come into being. The compatibility and complementarity of both approaches will be looked at through a detailed case study of English clausal complement constructions.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**ENGL2126. Law, meaning, and interpretation (6 credits)**

In this course law is used as a means of focusing discussion on a range of issues in the study of language, meaning and interpretation. No prior knowledge of law is assumed. The course shows how the interpretative issues that arise in law reflect fundamental questions in the way societies, institutions and individuals assign meaning to words, phrases and texts. Theories of language and meaning derived from linguistics and literary theory are applied to problems in legal interpretation, and models of language, meaning and interpretation developed by legal practitioners and legal theorists analyzed. Of particular interest are cases where social controversy, linguistic interpretation and law intersect, such as 'hate speech' issues on American university campuses, arguments over the commercialization of language in trademark law, the control of language on the internet. These cases illustrate the role of law in the politics of language, and the pervasiveness of language politics at all levels of social interaction. Students are introduced to practical and intellectual problems of legal interpretation, and develop their analytical and rhetorical skills through applying general principles and interpretative strategies to difficult or contentious cases.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2127. Legal discourse and the mind (6 credits)**

This course is a critical enquiry into how the law, as a cultural construct, attempts to reflect a society's values by regulating behaviour, and the challenges embedded in this ideology. It is argued that an improved understanding of the workings of the human mind will inform these issues. The course shows how the processes of human perception, interpretation of meaning, memory reconstruction and decision-making interact with the legal system, and how such interactions sometimes pose challenges to justice.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2128. Modernism (6 credits)**

This course explores a number of radical twentieth-century literary texts in various genres, written in or translated into English, each of which is an attempt to challenge and re-invent more traditional forms and modes of writing. The course will also look at some of the themes - including empire and nation, the nature of the artist, the bourgeois experience, the city, and changing understandings of gender, race, sexuality and the foreign - that shaped modernity in the modernist century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2129. English as a language of science (6 credits)**

English is sometimes called "the" language of science. This could be more myth than reality, but there is no question that a great deal of academic communication takes place in English. Well-established notions like "scientific English" or "academic English" suggest that this is a special kind of English which has features that differ from "general" English. This course will provide a context for reflection on the present role of English in a globalized academic world and the history of that role, as well as on the nature of English-language discourse in various academic disciplines. It is not an academic writing course, but an analytical course dealing, on the one hand, with the sociology and history of the language of science, and, on the other, with the textual and linguistic characteristics of the discourse produced in natural-scientific, social-scientific and humanities disciplines.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2130. Signs, language and meaning: integrational reflections (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the basic tenets of integrational linguistics and integrationism. Integrational linguistics takes as its point of departure a theory of the sign which emphasizes the

temporal, contextual and experiential dimensions of language and communication. Language users are also seen as language makers, in that they constantly create meaning and integrate and adapt their linguistic experience to novel situations. The course aims to provide insight into a wide range of topics, including the nature of memory, experience, consciousness, and other psychological and philosophical questions.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **Courses available for third year students only**

#### **ENGL3032. Advanced topics in English studies (12 credits)**

This is an advanced tutorial course which allows the student to follow an in-depth programme of research under the guidance of a member of staff. There are no lectures, and the course aims to encourage the student to pursue independent research. Students should choose a topic which falls within the broad area of the English Department's curriculum. This should be done in consultation with a member of staff. The student and staff member should agree a programme of study, and the student can opt either to produce a single extended piece of work (a dissertation) or four essays on related topics. The student should have regular meetings with the tutor. Admission to this course is conditional on good academic performance, and the subject matter and scope of the course requires the approval of the department.

Assessment: 100% coursework (dissertation or four written essays).

---

#### **ENGL3033. Research seminar in English studies (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in a specialized area of English Studies. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

---

#### **ENGL3034. Research seminar in English literary studies (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of literatures in English. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

---

#### **ENGL3035. Research seminar in literary theory (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of literary theory and literary criticism. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

**ENGL3036. Research seminar in English linguistics (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of English language and linguistics. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

---

**ENGL3037. Research seminar in language and society (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of language and society. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

---

***Cross-Cultural Studies in English*****CSIE2003. World literature (6 credits)**

This course seeks to understand world literature not as a collection of national literary canons created in different linguistic and cultural locations, but as a field of knowledge about literature as a cross-cultural and translingual system of production. Reading a selection of texts, both fictional and non-fictional, we will discuss the concept and practice of world literature: its genealogy and methodology, its scope and purpose, its politics and limitations, in close relation to historical forms and forces of globalization.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CSIE2004. The cosmopolitan imagination (6 credits)**

Invented by Greek philosophers twenty-four centuries ago as a way to stretch received notions of belonging and obligation, the word “cosmopolitan” continues to tease the imagination even today, in a time when universities declare global citizenship as an educational aim and you can sign up for world citizenship online. In this course, we will critically examine different interpretations of what it might mean to be “a citizen of the world” or “at home in every place” (as Samuel Johnson’s *Dictionary of the English Language* defined “cosmopolitan” in 1755). From the vantage point of recent debates about the promise or failure of cosmopolitanism to challenge dominant forms of globalization, we will read and discuss a selection of texts in various genres from the 18<sup>th</sup> to the 21<sup>st</sup> century, situating the cosmopolitan ideal and its critiques in relation to different modes of representation and discrepant experiences of globalization.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## ***Language and Communication***

### **LCOM2001. Theories of language and communication (6 credits)**

The core course following LCOM1001 examines theoretical discussions of language and communication, with special reference to underlying assumptions about language (i.e. their metatheory) and the respective philosophies of language they are based on, their merits and shortcomings, as well as possible points of contact between them. These assumptions will also be critically discussed on the basis of exemplary linguistic studies presented in class. We shall hence consider the various traditions contributing to language and communication theory, among which are the semiotic, the phenomenological, and the sociocultural traditions. Particular emphasis will be placed on how sociolinguistic theory has dealt with the phenomena of language and communication. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LCOM2002. Language in the workplace (6 credits)**

People spend a considerable amount of time at work. The workplace thus provides a useful site for investigating various aspects of language and communication. This course will discuss a range of features of workplace discourse and illustrate the impact social factors may have on the ways in which language is used in this context. We will also discuss and compare different methodological approaches and a variety of theoretical frameworks used for an analysis of workplace discourse. These tools will then be used by the students to analyze naturalistic data. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LCOM2003. Language and politeness (6 credits)**

This course will discuss various approaches to linguistic politeness. Students will be introduced to a number of theoretical frameworks that have been developed in order to capture and assess this complex concept. A particular focus will be on the question of universality and culturally influenced perceptions of politeness. Moreover, the impact of various social factors (including power, gender and ethnicity) on the performance and perception of linguistic politeness is discussed, and the topic of impoliteness is covered. Assessment: 60% examination and 40% in-class presentation.

---

### **LCOM2004. Language, communication and the media (6 credits)**

*[Non permissible combinations: ENGL2103. Language and new media]*

This course introduces students to the study of mass media discourse in today's society. The 'mass media' phenomenon deserves particular attention because, as sociologists and sociolinguists point out, it has a deep impact on our knowledge of and on how we communicate about the world. The course considers cross-cultural issues of mediated discourse and looks how eastern and western ideologies amalgamate to form new local ideological discourses, with particular attention to Hong Kong. The course will take as its foundation the field of (social) semiotics, and will look more closely at how this field's theoretical premises match with our personal experiences as communicating members of society. The course also introduces students to philosophical-semiotic questions about epistemology and ontology. Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **LCOM2005. Language, communication and globalization: Politics, peril, pop (6 credits)**

This course, centring on the phenomenon of ‘globalization’ in relation to language and communication, critically examines some widely held notions, such as the view that globalization has resulted in the homogenization of cultures and languages, and in the hegemony of English, and is organised along three main lines. It investigates the *politics* of language and globalization, in how various nations, particularly those in Asia, struggle with the balance between their indigenous languages and languages of global import and/or wider local significance, e.g. English or Mandarin. It addresses the phenomenon of globalization bringing communities and languages into contact, the consequences of which are often viewed as situations of *peril*, involving the endangerment of languages, as well as the evolution of new linguistic varieties such as World/New Englishes. It identifies a number of communicative practices in *pop* culture that are ubiquitous in and representative of today’s global world, such as SMSes, e-mail and other electronic communication, hiphop, and callcentres, and explores how languages are appropriated by users in managing their own local identity alongside wider global needs.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **Courses available for third year students only**

### **LCOM3001. Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)**

Taking its cue from the view of communicative practices as constitutive of the culture of everyday life, this course has as a focus the speakers and cultures involved in language and communication. A number of topics usually studied under the heading of linguistic anthropology will be explored, including linguistic relativity, linguistic diversity, and the ethnography of communication. The course addresses not only the theories involved but just as importantly the methods for intellectual investigation, and activities and assignments will involve investigative fieldwork projects on speech communities in Hong Kong, including local Hongkongers as well as other ‘minority’ groups in the ecology such as ethnic minorities and domestic workers.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **CROSS-CULTURAL STUDIES IN ENGLISH**

Cross-Cultural Studies in English (CSIE) is a specialised programme in the School of English. It is designed to provide opportunities for students to study cross-cultural examples in literary and cultural history. Topics pursued include the relationship between culture and politics; the study of literature and culture beyond national, regional, and disciplinary boundaries; the politics of knowledge production, circulation, and institutionalization.

CSIE equips students with new ways of thinking about literature and culture and encourages them to engage with the challenges created by the emergence and proliferation of new literatures and literary subjects. The programme allows students to investigate traditional modes of literary studies as a discipline organized by and around concepts of the “nation” or the “national.” It encourages them to critically reflect upon the relation between literature and such issues as colonization, decolonization, and globalization, and invites them to analyze the literary products and cultural politics that arise from these issues. It offers students opportunities to explore literature and culture not only in terms of the effects of globality but also in terms of their potential for innovation, both within the national and as part of the global. Students will acquire the theoretical and historical knowledge and the analytical skills necessary to undertake critical and culturally sensitive readings and construct clear and coherent argument in both writing and speaking.

One particular strand within the CSIE programme is the China-West axis, which aims to provide students with an understanding of specifically, but not exclusively, Hong Kong's cross-cultural history and its literary products. CSIE is thus unique in giving students a critical awareness of how to approach and navigate today's multicultural world.

Students who declare a major or minor in Cross-Cultural Studies in English will:

- Demonstrate an understanding of the culture and literature in English as a site of encounters, fusions, conflicts, and transformations between people and ideas of different cultures;
- Respond critically, theoretically, and intellectually to cross-cultural literary manifestations;
- Develop a cultural awareness and sensitivity that bring about an informed and intelligent understanding of today's globalised world;
- Demonstrate an understanding and appreciation of the implications of the interconnectedness between different cultures and eras;
- Understand Hong Kong as an important site of cross-cultural contacts.

### **Requirements**

Admission to the first year is on the basis of academic record including at least a minimum C grade in the Use of English AS-level examination or its equivalent.

Students intending to major or minor in Cross-Cultural Studies in English must pass the first-year prerequisite course ENGL1009 with a satisfactory result of at least a C grade.

### **Syllabus for students admitted in the academic year 2010-2011**

#### **First-year Course**

Students intending to major or minor in Cross-Cultural Studies in English must pass the first-year prerequisite course ENGL1009 with a satisfactory result of at least a C grade.

ENGL1009. Introduction to English studies (6 credits)

Students are encouraged to take ENGL1010. The scholarship of English Studies (6 credits) in conjunction with ENGL1009.

#### **Second and Third-year Courses**

The major and minor in CSIE introduce students to relevant issues and methodologies, which are then built upon in in-depth discussions of specific cross-cultural examples. An optional capstone experience for advanced students is provided by elective final-year research, lecture and seminar courses.

The major in Cross-Cultural Studies in English consists of 54 credits taken in the second and third years of the programme. This comprises at least 18 credits of core courses (of which CSIE2001 is compulsory); and up to 36 credits of electives in the manner specified below.

The minor in Cross-Cultural Studies in English consists of 30 credits taken in the second and third years of the programme. This comprises at least 12 credits of core courses (of which CSIE2001 is compulsory); and up to 18 credits of electives in the manner specified below.

## Core Courses

Students majoring in Cross-Cultural Studies in English must complete at least 18 credits of core courses from the list below (of which CSIE2001 is compulsory):

CSIE2001.	Cross-cultural issues and theories (6 credits) (compulsory)
CSIE2002.	Topics in cross-cultural studies: disciplinarity, methodology, and politics (6 credits)
CSIE2003.	World literature (6 credits)
CSIE2004.	The cosmopolitan imagination (6 credits)
CSIE2005.	Cross-cultural discourses (6 credits)
CSIE3001.	Cross-cultural issues and theories 2 (6 credits)

---

## Elective Courses

The remaining credits (up to 36) are to be taken in electives from the following list:

CSIE3002.	Research seminar in cross-cultural studies in English (6 credits)
ENGL2022.	Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)
ENGL2045.	Travel writing (6 credits)
ENGL2074.	Postcolonial readings (6 credits)
ENGL2075.	The idea of China (6 credits)
ENGL2093.	Literary islands: English poetry and prose from the South Pacific and the Caribbean (6 credits)
ENGL2095.	The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)
ENGL2097.	Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)
ENGL2109.	Writing diaspora (6 credits)
ENGL2110.	Writing back (6 credits)
ENGL2113.	Conrad and others (6 credits)
ENGL2121.	Comedy, renewal, and cross-cultural drama (6 credits)
ENGL2122.	Victorians at home and abroad (6 credits)
ENGL2128.	Modernism (6 credits)

## Special Honours Programme

Students who have achieved outstanding academic performance in the first-year course with tutors' recommendation will be invited to become Special Honours candidates, for which they will be given priority for admission to senior CSIE and ENGL courses as listed in the curriculum. Special Honours students majoring in Cross-Cultural Studies in English must complete an additional 12 credits in the second and third years, including CSIE3002. Research seminar in cross-cultural studies in English (6 credits).

---

## First-year Courses

### ENGL1009. Introduction to English studies (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the study of English writing. Students will be introduced to the basic elements of literary analysis and theory in English, and to intellectual issues relevant to the study of the language and its culture. No previous experience of literary studies or linguistics is assumed, but at the end of this introductory course students will have a grasp of the basic concepts and skills needed to make advanced studies in English interesting and enjoyable. The course will also offer guidance and practice in reading, discussion, and group work.

Assessment: 60% coursework and 40% written examination.

**ENGL1010. The scholarship of English Studies (6 credits)**

*(Students can only take this course in conjunction with ENGL1009.)*

This course supplements ENGL1009; it focuses on the scholarship of English literature and linguistics. Although this is a WID course (Writing in the Disciplines), focusing on literary and linguistic studies, the skills students will acquire are essential to university studies and are transferable to other academic disciplines and students' working life.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second and Third-year Courses*****Cross-Cultural Studies in English*****CSIE2001. Cross-Cultural issues and theories (6 credits)**

This course, which is compulsory for students majoring in Cross-Cultural Studies in English, will familiarize students with the most important terms and ideas to be encountered in cross-cultural studies, and the debates about them, including: globalization, world literature, world languages, the local, cosmopolitanism, translation, ethnography and auto-ethnography, Orientalism, alterity. This course must be taken in the second year of study.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CSIE2002. Topics in cross-cultural studies: disciplinarity, methodology, and politics (6 credits)**

This course is concerned with the complex ways that intellectual institutions and disciplines are formed. It begins with a discussion of the genealogy of Cross-Cultural Studies as a discipline that emerged in response to the limitations of Area Studies and the post-Cold War shifts in international power relations. The course focuses on the emergence of studies of Communist China during the Cold-War era as a particular research area and examine its transformation over time. We discuss how 'disciplines' are formed in response to political needs and how explanations about the nature of Mao's China were established and developed in accordance with the political climate of the time. To understand the descriptive power of those politicized ideas about Communist China, we will read a collection of popular memoirs written by Chinese authors about their traumatic experience during the Cultural Revolution (1966-76) and discuss how these memories can be understood as the product of institutionalized knowledge.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CSIE2003. World literature (6 credits)**

This course seeks to understand world literature not as a collection of national literary canons created in different linguistic and cultural locations, but as a field of knowledge about literature as a cross-cultural and translingual system of production. Reading a selection of texts, both fictional and non-fictional, we will discuss the concept and practice of world literature: its genealogy and methodology, its scope and purpose, its politics and limitations, in close relation to historical forms and forces of globalization.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**CSIE2004. The cosmopolitan imagination (6 credits)**

Invented by Greek philosophers twenty-four centuries ago as a way to stretch received notions of belonging and obligation, the word “cosmopolitan” continues to tease the imagination even today, in a time when universities declare global citizenship as an educational aim and you can sign up for world citizenship online. In this course, we will critically examine different interpretations of what it might mean to be “a citizen of the world” or “at home in every place” (as Samuel Johnson’s *Dictionary of the English Language* defined “cosmopolitan” in 1755). From the vantage point of recent debates about the promise or failure of cosmopolitanism to challenge dominant forms of globalization, we will read and discuss a selection of texts in various genres from the 18<sup>th</sup> to the 21<sup>st</sup> century, situating the cosmopolitan ideal and its critiques in relation to different modes of representation and discrepant experiences of globalization.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CSIE2005. Cross-cultural discourses (6 credits)**

This course is a seminar and lecture series for advanced students in which between three and six teachers introduce and discuss a variety of topics and critical issues in cross-cultural studies. Topics will vary from year to year but will always revolve around one coherent thematic cluster, which might be, for example, China-West, travel writing, cross-cultural theory and methodology, world literature, literary crossings in British history, globalism, colonialism, Hong Kong. Students will thus engage with a specific cross-cultural subject matter in-depth, and from a variety of critical perspectives. They will also learn specifically about academic research in cross-cultural studies.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

---

**Courses available to third year students only****CSIE3001. Cross-cultural issues and theories 2 (6 credits)**

This course builds on and completes the introduction to the chief theoretical issues and methodologies of this branch of study which began in CSIE2001. This course is open to final year students only.

Prerequisite: CSIE2001. Cross-cultural issues and theories.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CSIE3002. Research seminar in cross-cultural studies in English (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students majoring or minoring in Cross-Cultural Studies in English who wish to pursue advanced work. This course is open to third year students only, and students should consult the co-ordinator of the major before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

---

**English Studies****ENGL2022. Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)**

This course will explore questions of identity and difference as expressed in women’s writing. It will provide a general introduction to feminist literary theory and the on-going range of feminist interventions in literary and cultural studies.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)**

This is a survey of European travel writing as a literary genre from the medieval period to the present day. The writings of travelers and explorers such as Marco Polo, Christopher Columbus and James Cook are examined, as well as those of modern travel writers such as Freya Stark, Graham Greene, D.H. Lawrence, Paul Theroux and Jan Morris. European travel writing is explored formally and thematically with the aim of introducing students to its many strategies and subtexts, and especially its historical role in articulating 'otherness' for the European imagination.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2074. Postcolonial readings (6 credits)**

This course examines important works of literature in English from perspectives opened up by recent debates on 'nation', 'narration', and 'hybridity'.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)**

An examination of English representations and interpretations of China in a selection of writings from the 18th century to the early 20th century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2093. Literary islands: English poetry and prose from the South Pacific and the Caribbean (6 credits)**

In this course we will read and discuss literary texts mainly poems and short stories from two cultural regions that received the English language as colonial cargo between the 17th and 19th centuries. Looking at the different histories of the insular cultures of the South Pacific and the Caribbean, we will consider how these histories have shaped the emergence of Anglophone literatures, and how these literatures in turn challenge our expectations of English literature. We will pay special attention to the forms of communication these texts represent and establish as they construct a sense of place, and parallels will perhaps be drawn to the case of Hong Kong. Topics: history and politics of English in the South Pacific and the Caribbean, the emergence of English-language literatures and the development of indigenous traditions, the relationship between writing and place, distance and insularity, the relationship between literature and vernacular culture (conversation, song, storytelling, oratory).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2095. The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)**

Interpretations of the Orient in modern western writings, from the colonial to the postcolonial period.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2097. Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)**

In this course, students will read selections of fiction, poetry, essays, and journalism from earlier moments in the twentieth century to post-1997. Questions of modernity, urbanization and the urban subject, and cross-cultural identities will be discussed from perspectives opened up by postcolonial theories, and with reference to historical change both locally and in Hong Kong's geopolitical situation in the last fifty years.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2109. Writing diaspora (6 credits)**

This course examines problems and issues in the literature and film produced by diasporic and migrant communities. Structured around several modules in which various texts are used to investigate such issues as identity and subjectivity, displacement, nostalgia, memory, second-generation conflicts, “passing” and diasporic transformation. Elaborates on the problematic nature of these issues and explains their significance in global diasporas.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2110. Writing back (6 credits)**

‘Writing Back: Post-Colonial Re-writings of the Canon’ is a course that examines the strategy employed by some post-colonial literary texts of re-writing ‘canonical’ literary texts to expose their literary, cultural and ideological assumptions. The course investigates the ways in which such texts resist the imposed cultural assumptions of English literature.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2113. Conrad and others (6 credits)**

Joseph Conrad (1857-1924) was a Pole who wrote fiction in English, after a career as a sailor which took him round a world largely dominated by expanding and competing European empires. He often focuses his stories on cross-cultural encounters. This course sets Conrad’s work in its cultural and historical context, and examines the way his fiction represents ‘alterity’, our sense of the otherness of other people, which also helps us define the self.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2121. Comedy, renewal, and cross-cultural drama (6 credits)**

In this course we will look at cross-cultural drama through the lens of renewal and comedy. Topics to be addressed include cross-cultural theory, dramatic renewal, development of “character” in cross-cultural stagings, oral and ritual origins of drama, humor and comedy. The course involves students in several ways: as readers, as writers, as voluntary participants in short stage pieces, as collectors of data on comedy and renewal in popular and literary settings.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2122. Victorians at home and abroad (6 credits)**

This course gives an overview of Great Britain and her Empire under the reign of Queen Victoria (1837-1901), tracing its history, culture and politics through a number of representative fictional and non-fictional texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2128. Modernism (6 credits)**

This course explores a number of radical twentieth-century literary texts in various genres, written in or translated into English, each of which is an attempt to challenge and re-invent more traditional forms and modes of writing. The course will also look at some of the themes - including empire and nation, the nature of the artist, the bourgeois experience, the city, and changing understandings of gender, race, sexuality and the foreign - that shaped modernity in the modernist century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION

Language and Communication (L&C), an interdisciplinary programme within the Faculty of Arts, centres on the study and use of language in society in a multilingual, globalized world, with a particular focus on the positioning of languages of global import, such as English, as well as those with local significance, in how they are appropriated in multilingual, cosmopolitan contexts of Asia. The programme provides the theoretical foundations and applied contexts for understanding and addressing linguistic and social questions of language and communication. It equips students with the intellectual and practical tools to critically examine, intelligently reflect on, and competently participate in communicative situations, in real-world contexts, such as in the workplace as well as in more informal sites of multilingual communication. Both traditional as well as experiential learning, such as fieldwork and internships, are pursued. Fulfilling a need in society for linguistically versatile and culturally sensitive leaders in the 21<sup>st</sup>-century knowledge economy of Asia's world city and beyond, the programme prepares students with an appreciation of communicative competence. The programme also aims at honing of transferable skills for a wide range of careers, including education, editing and publishing, public administration, public relations, marketing, the media, tourism, and cultural affairs.

Students who declare a major or minor in Language and Communication will:

- Identify and critique relevant issues in the study of language and communication, and apply theoretical and methodological knowledge to real-world social and linguistic data;
- Critically evaluate established knowledge and creatively apply it to novel, contemporary contexts of communication, in this multilingual, globalised world, in particular in the settings of Hong Kong and Asia;
- Identify, appreciate and critically examine the role of diversity in languages and communicative strategies across cultures and time, and how this shapes one's linguistic identity and comes to bear upon communicative situations, drawing on cross-cultural perspectives in the study of language and communication;
- Use the necessary intellectual, communicative and practical skills to participate in intellectual discussions of socio/linguistic issues and collaborate productively in research projects;
- Demonstrate an understanding of the complexities of contemporary social and political issues of language and communication in the context of globalization – such as the positioning of languages of global significance, in particular English, in how they are appropriated in multilingual, cosmopolitan contexts of Asia, and the fine balance struck with other local languages for sustainability – which allows for intelligent, significant and responsible contributions to society.

### **Requirements**

Admission to the first year is on the basis of academic record including at least a minimum C grade in the Use of English AS-level examination or its equivalent.

Students intending to major or minor in Language and Communication must pass the first-year prerequisite course LCOM1001 with a satisfactory result of at least a C grade.

### **Syllabus for students admitted in the academic year 2010-2011**

#### **First-year Course**

Students intending to declare a major or minor in Language and Communication must complete the following prerequisite course in their first year of study with at least a C grade:

LCOM1001. Introduction to language and communication (6 credits)

Note:

- Students who declare a major or minor in Language and Communication and have passed LCOM1001 at grade C or above will be given a waiver of “ENGL1009. Introduction to English studies” and “LING1001. Introduction to Linguistics” for taking senior ENGL and LING courses as listed in the curriculum below.
- Students should check with individual departments about the actual course offerings, updated course information including pre-requisite(s) for electives to be met unless otherwise waived.

## **Second and Third-year Courses**

The Major in Language and Communication consists of 54 credits taken in the second and third years of the programme. This comprises 12 credits of core courses (LCOM2001 and LCOM3001); and 42 credits of electives in the manner specified below.

The Minor in Language and Communication consists of 30 credits taken in the second and third years of the programme. This comprises 6 credits of core course (LCOM2001 or LCOM3001); and 24 credits of electives (including at least one 6-credit LCOM course).

An optional capstone experience for advanced students is provided by elective final-year research, lecture and seminar courses.

## **Core Courses**

The following core courses are compulsory for all students taking the major:

- LCOM2001. Theories of language and communication (6 credits) (to be taken in the second year)  
 LCOM3001. Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits) (to be taken in the third year)

## **Elective Courses**

Students majoring in Language and Communication must complete a total of 42 credits in elective courses from the list below. Courses must be taken from at least 3 different majors in the list and must include at least 12 credits from LCOM courses and at least 12 credits from ENGL courses.

### *Translation*

- CHIN2331. Choice of words in translation (6 credits)  
 CHIN2332. Translation in Hong Kong society (6 credits)  
 CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)  
 CHIN2334. Power of speech in written translation (6 credits)  
 CHIN2336. Interpretation workshop I (6 credits)  
 CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (6 credits)  
 CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)  
 CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (6 credits)  
 CHIN2342. Interpretation workshop II (6 credits)  
 CHIN2343. Legal interpreting (6 credits)  
 CHIN2344. Translating short stories (6 credits)  
 CHIN2345. Syntax-based translation (6 credits)

### *Comparative Literature*

- CLIT2050. Globalization and cultures (6 credits)

*English Studies*

- ENGL2002. Language in society (6 credits)  
 ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)  
 ENGL2031. The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)  
 ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)  
 ENGL2047. English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)  
 ENGL2048. Language and jargon (6 credits)  
 ENGL2054. Race, language and identity (6 credits)  
 ENGL2065. Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)  
 ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)  
 ENGL2099. Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)  
 ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)  
 ENGL2123. Language and identity in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 ENGL2126. Law, meaning and interpretation (6 credits)  
 ENGL2127. Legal discourse and the mind (6 credits)  
 ENGL2129. English as a language of science (6 credits)  
 ENGL2130. Signs, language and meaning: integrational reflections (6 credits)  
 ENGL3036. Research seminar in English linguistics (6 credits)  
 ENGL3037. Research seminar in language and society (6 credits)

*Japanese Studies*

- JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)  
 JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)  
 JAPN2039. Negotiation and conflict resolution: a cross-cultural perspective (6 credits)

*Language and Communication*

- LCOM2002. Language in the workplace (6 credits)  
 LCOM2003. Language and politeness (6 credits)  
 LCOM2004. Language, communication and the media (6 credits) [*Non permissible combinations: ENGL2103*]  
 LCOM2005. Language, communication and globalization: Politics, peril, pop (6 credits)  
 LCOM2006. Language and communication field trip (6 credits) [*course offering will be subject to student enrolment*]  
 LCOM3003. LCOM Papers: Writing for, editing, and producing an academic e-journal (12 credits)

*Linguistics*

- LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)  
 LING2040. Languages in contact (6 credits)  
 LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)  
 LING2056. Sociolinguistics (6 credits)

*Philosophy*

- PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction (6 credits)  
 PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)  
 PHIL2410. Mind and language in Chinese thought (6 credits)

***Special Honours Programme***

Students who have achieved an outstanding academic performance in the first-year Language and Communication course with tutors' recommendation will be invited to become Special Honours candidates, for which they will be given priority for admission to senior LCOM and ENGL courses as

listed in the curriculum. Special Honours students majoring in Language and Communication must complete an additional 12 credits in the second and third years, including a 6-credit research seminar in the field of language and communication, and another 6-credit senior course preferably in LCOM.

---

### **First-year Course**

#### **LCOM1001. Introduction to language and communication (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces fundamental concepts in the study of contemporary communication that are relevant for students who are living and communicating in today's multilingual, globalized world. Students will be introduced to the three crucial dimensions in the study of language and communication: language structures (the study of language as a system), language in context (how language is used in communicative practices), and mediating language ideology (the evaluations of language and its contexts). The course provides students with the theoretical foundations from which they may proceed to examine the practical applications of language and its social relevance in contemporary communities.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **Second and Third-year Courses**

#### ***Translation***

#### **CHIN2331. Choice of words in translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course takes a new semantic approach to the analysis of different types of word meaning in a text. It addresses some key issues of a functional grammar pertaining to translation studies in Hong Kong and it is specially planned for students who aspire to carve out for themselves a career in administration, publishing, advertising and journalism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2332. Translation in Hong Kong society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The basic aim of this course is to provide students who intend to become professional translators in Hong Kong with an overall view of translation as a communicative activity. The translators' work demands specialised knowledge of the ways translation functions in specific social contexts. The principal concern of this course is the practical information about the various circumstances in which translation serves its purpose as a communicative activity, either in the Government or in the private sector. This course will be assessed on the basis of a written seminar paper presented orally and participation in discussion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the cross-cultural dimension of translation. It examines the most complex cultural barriers faced by the translator – such as differences in the expression of emotions (for

instance - love, anger, fear), codes of behaviour (for instance intimacy, privacy, politeness), values and world views, notions of gender, aesthetic taste, humour and forms of symbolism and metaphor. These issues arising from translation practice will be discussed in light of current theories on culture and translation from multiple disciplines.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2334. Power of speech in written translation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a crash course designed to teach both Translation and non-Translation students specific communication skills required for social interaction in a cosmopolitan city such as Hong Kong. 'Good communication behaviour' exhibited in bilingual texts is studied within the general framework of an Interpersonal Rhetoric model.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2336. Interpretation workshop I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to introduce to students the different modes of interpreting, i.e. sight translation, consecutive interpreting and simultaneous interpreting, and to familiarise them with the basic skills and techniques essential for interpreting. In addition to note-taking skills, students will also be introduced to a brief history of interpreting, different environments where interpretation service is required and the professional ethics of the interpreter. Training will focus on sight translation and consecutive interpretation between English and Chinese. This course consists of both lectures and workshops.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2337. Journalistic translation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The primary focus of this course is the linguistic features and stylistic conventions of press material. Texts of various types from the mass media will be examined, and their generic characteristics identified. Students will familiarize themselves in this course with the basic techniques of news reporting and the skills needed to render press material from one language into another.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2338. Translation of promotional material (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Promotional material usually has a unique appeal that lies in the skilful manipulation of rhetorical devices. In this course their linguistic and stylistic characteristics will be studied, with emphasis on how best to translate the original into Chinese or English. Students will be provided with opportunities to examine the creative use of language and to improve their ability through training and regular practice to deal with different kinds of writing for advertizing products and services.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the role of translation in Hong Kong's public administration procedures, and how it is used by Hong Kong and Chinese business concerns in conducting international business. Students will practise translating papers related to negotiation, administration and the law arising from such contexts, and explore suitable translation techniques in the process.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Film-making today is becoming increasingly international, rendering translation almost indispensable to the industry. Translating films for dubbing and subtitling requires special skills distinct from those outside the field. This course concentrates on such skills, emphasizing audio-visual awareness and cinematic elements such as drama, dialogue, vernacular, and pacing. Critical theories on media and on cultural production and consumption will be introduced. Students learn through group projects, the hands-on translation of feature films, and critiques of film translation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course students will have the opportunity to practise translating from Chinese to English and vice-versa within the field of art history, art appreciation and art criticism. Writings on Chinese and western art, such as those published by museums and art galleries, will be used as study texts, and translation skills and strategies will be discussed to enable students to build up bilingual vocabulary and linguistic expressions for describing Chinese and western works of art in specific historical, social, cultural and aesthetic contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2342. Interpretation workshop II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of Interpretation Workshop I and aims to prepare students for the pursuit of a career in interpreting. Students will be provided with intensive training in interpreting on a variety of topics and taught the skills to improvise in times of a crisis. This course will also provide training in the essential skills and techniques for simultaneous interpreting, including shadowing, rephrasing, memory retention, abstraction and the cultivation of split attention.

Prerequisite: CHIN2336. Interpretation Workshop I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2343. Legal interpreting (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to provide students, who have already acquired the basic skills and techniques required for the different modes of interpreting, with the opportunity to develop advanced interpreting

skills in legal interpreting. The introductory lectures will provide students with an overview of the legal system of Hong Kong, trial procedures, and the nature of legal interpreting. This course will also familiarise students with the characteristics of legal English, common terms pertaining to trial proceedings as well as principles and protocol associated with interpreting in the judicial system. Effects of legal bilingualism on legal interpreting will also be discussed. This course consists of lectures, workshops and visits to law courts to observe court interpreters at work.

Prerequisite: CHIN2336. Interpretation Workshop I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2344. Translating short stories (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course, students will learn to pay close attention to the unique narrative techniques involved in the composition of short stories in both Chinese and English, and be encouraged to explore ways of re-creating such exposition in their translations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **CHIN2345. Syntax-based translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an interdisciplinary, Linguistics-Translation crossover course offered to third year students majoring in Translation, Linguistics, and Law. As its course title suggests, it aims to help students acquire two types of skills: (i) to analyze highly complex sentence structures in English and Chinese; (ii) to translate legal documents from English into Chinese, and *vice versa*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### ***Comparative Literature***

#### **CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How do we understand the issue of globalization in Hong Kong and China in relation to other cultures? Are we becoming more alike everywhere or more aware of our cultural differences because of globalization? How do cultures everywhere localize strategies in face of globalizing influences? How can we analyze the problems of globalization from the spread of European cultures in the age of colonialism to the present new world orders in terms of culture and political-economy? This course takes a cultural studies approach to contextualize the history of debates on globalization. Globalization has become the new buzzword of the decade, signifying that something profound is happening. Many contemporary theorists are converging on the position that globalization is a distinguishing trend of the present moment. Moreover, developments in transnational capitalism are producing a new global historical configuration of a new cultural logic of capitalism. In significant modern and postmodern social theories, globalization is thus taken as a salient feature of our times. Yet the conceptions of globalization deployed, the purposes for which the concepts are used, and the evaluations of the processes described by the concepts vary wildly. We will think through these key ideas with reference to local and global phenomena and texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## ***English Studies***

### **ENGL2002. Language in society (6 credits)**

This course will provide an introduction to the study of ‘sociolinguistics’, which deals with the relationship between language and society. Topics will vary, but may include the following: multilingualism, language varieties, language planning, language change, English in contact with other languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)**

This course explores both structural and sociolinguistic aspects of World Englishes, with particular attention to New Englishes, especially postcolonial Englishes of Asia. We will examine how the structural features found in these Englishes are not a consequence of a lack of ability to learn English perfectly, or pronounce it correctly, or express it clearly. Rather, such features are completely appropriate to the multilingual and multicultural ecologies in which the Englishes have evolved, ecologies in which numerous other languages of diverse typologies abound. We will also critically consider issues and debates in World/ New Englishes, involving concepts of ‘mother tongue’, ‘nativeness’ and ownership, issues of ideology, attitudes and identity, and challenges of creative expression, pedagogy and planning.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **ENGL2031. The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)**

This course introduces the study of meaning in the English language. We will examine semantic meanings – meanings encoded in the language system itself – and also pragmatic meanings – meanings inferred from the communicative context of language use.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)**

This course examines the relationship between cultural attitudes and language, how gender socialization is reflected in the structure and use of language, and the effectiveness of political and social forces in “legislated” linguistic change. Stereotypes and biases about the sexes, standard and vernacular norms will also be examined in the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **ENGL2047. English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)**

This course will provide an introduction to the analysis of English discourse from a linguistic perspective. Students will learn rhetorical methodologies and examine their effects on readers and listeners. Units include: spoken and written English discourse, global organization and cohesion, discourse markers, information structure, narrative, and non-verbal structures and strategies.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **ENGL2048. Language and jargon (6 credits)**

This course focuses on specialized sub-group languages or jargons, and uses texts from a range of historical period to examine the socio-cultural dynamics behind the creation, maintenance and

disappearance of such jargons. Particular attention will be paid to the history of criminal jargon, prison jargon and other speech varieties associated with other marginal or criminalized sub-groups (e.g. drug addicts, “tramps”, etc.), as well as to the history of the study of such jargons and the inclusion of jargon and slang items in mainstream dictionaries. Students will read texts from different periods in the history of English, as well as considering the role of jargons in modern societies such as the United States, Britain and Hong Kong, as well as in “cyber-space”.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2054. Race, language and identity (6 credits)**

This course looks at different notions of identity and the origins of modern understandings of ethnicity. It focuses on the contribution made by ideas about language to theories of group identity, including nationalism, and the tensions between linguistic, racial, religious and cultural notions of identity.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2065. Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)**

This course will introduce students to a number of questions about linguistic meaning and examine various definitions of metaphor. Among the questions considered are: What role does metaphor play in human language? In what way (if at all) do languages create or embody particular culturally specific world-views?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)**

This is a course about rhetoric, in which students will explore ways in which language can be used to convey, reinforce or change ideas. The objective is to help students to understand, analyze, and develop the arts of discourse in English, and the critical skills on which they depend.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2099. Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)**

This interdisciplinary course explores the relationship between language and identity with a special focus on Asian Americans and linguistic issues relevant to Asian Americans. With particular attention to the linguistic practices of Asian Americans, we will examine such questions as: What attitudes are associated with being bilingual? Do Asian Americans speak with an accent? Does accent determine whether Asian Americans are perceived of as ‘white’? Do any Asian Americans speak ‘black’? We will also explore the position of Asian Americans in social, political, and educational discourses in order to understand how an ‘Asian American’ identity can be constructed through language practices. Although the course focuses on Asian American identities and experiences, students will be encouraged to discuss issues of social identity and language in general.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)**

This course addresses the problems (theoretical and practical) inherent in defining a variety of English as ‘American’. Issues treated include the history of American English; dialectology; sociolinguistics; Black English; and the politics of American English.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **ENGL2123. Language and identity in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of ENGL2002 Language in Society with a special focus on language and identity in Hong Kong. Students who have taken ENGL2002 will have a foundation in sociolinguistics, which certainly will be helpful, but ENGL2002 is not a prerequisite. This course examines identity studies and related language ideology research in sociolinguistics and linguistic anthropology (including some relevant literature from sociology and social psychology). It specifically draws on research based in Hong Kong for comparison understanding, and application of currently available theoretical models.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **ENGL2126. Law, meaning, and interpretation (6 credits)**

In this course law is used as a means of focusing discussion on a range of issues in the study of language, meaning and interpretation. No prior knowledge of law is assumed. The course shows how the interpretative issues that arise in law reflect fundamental questions in the way societies, institutions and individuals assign meaning to words, phrases and texts. Theories of language and meaning derived from linguistics and literary theory are applied to problems in legal interpretation, and models of language, meaning and interpretation developed by legal practitioners and legal theorists analyzed. Of particular interest are cases where social controversy, linguistic interpretation and law intersect, such as ‘hate speech’ issues on American university campuses, arguments over the commercialization of language in trademark law, the control of language on the internet. These cases illustrate the role of law in the politics of language, and the pervasiveness of language politics at all levels of social interaction. Students are introduced to practical and intellectual problems of legal interpretation, and develop their analytical and rhetorical skills through applying general principles and interpretative strategies to difficult or contentious cases.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **ENGL2127. Legal discourse and the mind (6 credits)**

This course is a critical enquiry into how the law, as a cultural construct, attempts to reflect a society’s values by regulating behaviour, and the challenges embedded in this ideology. It is argued that an improved understanding of the workings of the human mind will inform these issues. The course shows how the processes of human perception, interpretation of meaning, memory reconstruction and decision-making interact with the legal system, and how such interactions sometimes pose challenges to justice.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **ENGL2129. English as a language of science (6 credits)**

English is sometimes called “the” language of science. This could be more myth than reality, but there is no question that a great deal of academic communication takes place in English. Well-established notions like “scientific English” or “academic English” suggest that this is a special kind of English which has features that differ from “general” English. This course will provide a context for reflection on the present role of English in a globalized academic world and the history of that role, as well as on the nature of English-language discourse in various academic disciplines. It is not an academic writing course, but an analytical course dealing, on the one hand, with the sociology and history of the language of science, and, on the other, with the textual and linguistic characteristics of the discourse produced in natural-scientific, social-scientific and humanities disciplines.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ENGL2130. Signs, language and meaning: integrational reflections (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the basic tenets of integrational linguistics and integrationism. Integrational linguistics takes as its point of departure a theory of the sign which emphasizes the temporal, contextual and experiential dimensions of language and communication. Language users are also seen as language makers, in that they constantly create meaning and integrate and adapt their linguistic experience to novel situations. The course aims to provide insight into a wide range of topics, including the nature of memory, experience, consciousness, and other psychological and philosophical questions.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Courses available for third year students only****ENGL3036. Research seminar in English linguistics (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of English language and linguistics. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar coordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

---

**ENGL3037. Research seminar in language and society (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of language and society. This course is open to third year students only. Students are normally expected to have prior knowledge in the subject area and should consult individual seminar co-ordinators before registering for the course. There will be no formal lectures. Students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance but they will also be required to work independently. They will be expected to take the initiative in locating and evaluating primary and secondary sources research materials.

Assessment: 100% coursework (written essay or project).

---

***Japanese Studies*****JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This interdisciplinary content course focuses on intercultural communication involving Japanese professionals. The course will explore how and why members of different groups misunderstand each other in spoken, written and electronically mediated communication. It will consider the ways in which people use language to claim and display complex and often multiple identities. Rather than adopting a one-size-fits-all approach and applying it to both Japanese and Chinese professionals, the course will take a situation-based approach to the examination of professional communication across cultures.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays).

**JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This interdisciplinary content course introduces students to the workings of the electronic media in Japan. The course will focus on the following three areas: coverage of the Hong Kong handover; TV documentary features on international affairs; and Japanese TV entertainment programmes available in Hong Kong. It will examine how the Japanese media covered the 1997 handover and will contrast its coverage of the event with that of other international media organizations. Students will watch and analyze feature-length documentaries whose broadcasting subsequently influenced the decisions of high-ranking Japanese Government officials. The course will also look at the distribution and consumption of Japanese cartoons, dramas and entertainment shows amongst the local Hong Kong Chinese population from the 1970s onwards.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays).

---

**JAPN2039. Negotiation and conflict resolution: a cross-cultural perspective (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to some powerful frameworks for analyzing and preparing for negotiations and for resolving conflicts. Students will practice applying these frameworks through in-class simulations and role plays. The course will make use of numerous cross-cultural cases and readings (particularly relating to Japan and mainland China) to help students develop an awareness of how the cultural contexts and the cultural backgrounds of negotiators could influence negotiations.

Assessment: 100% coursework (class participation, negotiation planning documents, class diary and research paper or book review).

---

***Language and Communication*****LCOM2001. Theories of language and communication (6 credits)**

The core course following LCOM1001 examines theoretical discussions of language and communication, with special reference to underlying assumptions about language (i.e. their metatheory) and the respective philosophies of language they are based on, their merits and shortcomings, as well as possible points of contact between them. These assumptions will also be critically discussed on the basis of exemplary linguistic studies presented in class. We shall hence consider the various traditions contributing to language and communication theory, among which the semiotic, the phenomenological, and the sociocultural traditions. Particular emphasis will be placed on how sociolinguistic theory has dealt with the phenomena of language and communication.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LCOM2002. Language in the workplace (6 credits)**

People spend a considerable amount of time at work. The workplace thus provides a useful site for investigating various aspects of language and communication. This course will discuss a range of features of workplace discourse and illustrate the impact social factors may have on the ways in which language is used in this context. We will also discuss and compare different methodological approaches and a variety of theoretical frameworks used for an analysis of workplace discourse. These tools will then be used by the students to analyze naturalistic data.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LCOM2003. Language and politeness (6 credits)**

This course will discuss various approaches to linguistic politeness. Students will be introduced to a number of theoretical frameworks that have been developed in order to capture and assess this complex concept. A particular focus will be on the question of universality and culturally influenced perceptions of politeness. Moreover, the impact of various social factors (including power, gender and ethnicity) on the performance and perception of linguistic politeness is discussed, and the topic of impoliteness is covered.

Assessment: 60% examination and 40% in-class presentation.

---

**LCOM2004. Language, communication and the media (6 credits)**

*[Non permissible combinations: ENGL2103. Language and new media]*

This course introduces students to the study of mass media discourse in today's society. The 'mass media' phenomenon deserves particular attention because, as sociologists and sociolinguists point out, it has a deep impact on our knowledge of and on how we communicate about the world. The course considers cross-cultural issues of mediated discourse and looks how eastern and western ideologies amalgamate to form new local ideological discourses, with particular attention to Hong Kong. The course will take as its foundation the field of (social) semiotics, and will look more closely at how this field's theoretical premises match with our personal experiences as communicating members of society. The course also introduces students to philosophical-semiotic questions about epistemology and ontology.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LCOM2005. Language, communication and globalization: Politics, peril, pop (6 credits)**

This course, centring on the phenomenon of 'globalization' in relation to language and communication, critically examines some widely held notions, such as the view that globalization has resulted in the homogenization of cultures and languages, and in the hegemony of English, and is organised along three main lines. It investigates the *politics* of language and globalization, in how various nations, particularly those in Asia, struggle with the balance between their indigenous languages and languages of global import and/or wider local significance, e.g. English or Mandarin. It addresses the phenomenon of globalization bringing communities and languages into contact, the consequences of which are often viewed as situations of *peril*, involving the endangerment of languages, as well as the evolution of new linguistic varieties such as World/New Englishes. It identifies a number of communicative practices in *pop* culture that are ubiquitous in and representative of today's global world, such as SMSes, e-mail and other electronic communication, hiphop, and callcentres, and explores how languages are appropriated by users in managing their own local identity alongside wider global needs.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LCOM2006. Language and communication field trip (6 credits)**

*[Course offering will be subject to student enrolment]*

The LCOM field trip provides students with a valuable international experience and a perfect opportunity for experiential learning: in this course, students of language and communication witness first-hand, engage in and intellectually reflect on communicative practices in multilingual settings, such as Singapore or Switzerland, where languages of global import are used – in complementary or competing fashion – alongside languages of local significance.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



### Courses available for third year students only

#### **LCOM3001. Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)**

Taking its cue from the view of communicative practices as constitutive of the culture of everyday life, this course has as a focus the speakers and cultures involved in language and communication. A number of topics usually studied under the heading of linguistic anthropology will be explored, including linguistic relativity, linguistic diversity, and the ethnography of communication. The course addresses not only the theories involved but just as importantly the methods for intellectual investigation, and activities and assignments will involve investigative fieldwork projects on speech communities in Hong Kong, including local Hongkongers as well as other 'minority' groups such as ethnic minorities and domestic workers.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **LCOM3003. LCOM Papers: writing for, editing, and producing an academic e-journal (12 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in a specialized area, while at the same time gaining practical experience of the editing and production process of an academic e-journal (LCOM Papers) in the form of a 'mini-internship'. Students will meet regularly with the course co-ordinator for guidance while working on their own research project. This course will provide students with several skills relevant to the workplace, including cooperation and team-work, IT, drafting, editing and the presentation and organization of ideas, time-management and logistics. Students intending to enroll in this course should have obtained at least a B in LCOM1001 and LCOM2001.

Prerequisites: LCOM1001. Introduction to language and communication and LCOM2001. Theories of language and communication.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### *Linguistics*

#### **LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey of the world's languages covers how languages are classified into families and types as well as issues of linguistic diversity and endangered languages. The course involves regular practical work. The course satisfies the prerequisite for the advanced course, Language typology, and also provides useful background for all courses in linguistics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **LING2040. Languages in contact (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

No language exists in isolation and all show some effect of contact with other languages. The course will introduce basic concepts in language contact such as code-mixing, lexical borrowing, language shift and language creation. We focus on contact languages – including pidgins and creoles – and the challenges and opportunities they present to linguistics. The course is especially relevant to students interested in East-West contacts and the pre- and colonial linguistic ecologies of Monsoon Asia such as Sri Lanka, the Malay/Indonesian archipelago and the Pearl River Delta.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues with major themes from LING1002. 'Language.com: Language in the contemporary world' and aims to create a greater awareness of the growing importance of language information processing methods. The objective of the course is to explore the interface between language, linguistics, and information technology.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2056. Sociolinguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course introduces students to the study of the relationship between language and society. During the course we cover the following topics: (i) fundamentals of language variation and change, (ii) multilingualism and language contact (iii) language maintenance, shift and death, (iv) language planning, policy and education, and (v) linguistic landscapes. The course has both theoretical and empirical content; in terms of the former, we focus in particular on evolutionary theories of language and usage-based approaches; as for the latter, we focus on the study of Asian contexts, in particular China, South and Southeast Asia through ethnographic methods. The course includes an active fieldwork component on sociolinguistic issues in Hong Kong. A good understanding of sociolinguistics is seriously recommended for linguistics majors and is an important asset for anyone who seeks to competently engage in the field of language usage in society.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Philosophy****PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

One of the central issues in contemporary philosophy of language and linguistics concerns whether and where one should draw the line between semantic meaning and pragmatic meaning, or the meanings had by the words and sentences a speaker uses, and what a speaker means in using those words and sentences. One reason the issue is central is that there are debates over the semantic meanings of certain expressions, e.g. names and definite descriptions. Without a general account of the difference between semantic and pragmatic meaning, these debates cannot be settled. Another reason the issue is central is that there are some who, in a roughly Wittgensteinian manner, deny that there is any real sense to be made of the notion of semantic, or literal, meaning. According to them, there is, therefore, no line between pragmatic and semantic meaning at all. In this course we will try to determine whether the distinction can be drawn, and, if so, where.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We shall look at some of the philosophical issues involved in studying minds and behaviour scientifically. We might discuss questions such as: Can we explain all mental phenomena in computational terms? What is consciousness? What is the role of language in thinking? How useful are neural networks in understanding the mind?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**PHIL2410. Mind and language in Chinese thought (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The philosophy of mind and language plays a crucial role in the philosophical dialectic of classical China. This course will guide students in reconstructing this dialectic and exploring its philosophical significance by interpreting and critically evaluating selected early Chinese philosophical texts that treat mind, language, and interrelated aspects of psychology. Issues to be discussed include the nature and functions of the heart-mind (*xīn*), its relation to other organs, the nature of perception and knowledge, semantic theories, and the role of language in knowledge and action. Texts may include the *Analects*, *Mozi*, *Mencius*, *Daodejing*, *Xunzi*, *Zhuangzi*, and *Lushi Chunqiu*. Students will be encouraged to read the original sources in Chinese, but translations will be made available for those without reading knowledge of classical Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

There is no prerequisite for this course, but one Philosophy course is highly recommended.

**SCHOOL OF HUMANITIES****AFRICAN STUDIES**

The African Studies Programme at the University of Hong Kong offers a Bachelor of Arts Minor in African Studies, through which students can explore Africa as a study area from interdisciplinary perspectives.

To obtain a Minor in African Studies students are required to take AFRI1001 “Foundations in African Studies”, and 30 credits from second and third-year courses. The courses FINE2057 and LING2052 are also counted towards the 30 second/third-year credits required in the minor. Please refer to the Fine Arts and Linguistics syllabi for details.

Courses within the African Studies Programme are open to all BA students and also to students in other faculties.

**First-year Course****AFRI1001. Foundations in African studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to all years of non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will present a basic outline of Africa’s geographic location, its political map, history, languages, peoples, cultures, musics, literatures, etc. It will deal with contemporary issues affecting Africa such as the demands of nation-building, economic challenges, social and political conflict, health issues, sports, etc, and end with a survey of Africa and its relations to the outside world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**Second and Third-year Courses****AFRI2001. Educational field trip to an African country (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course, students will be led by an experienced faculty member on a supervised two-week educational field trip to an African country, such as Ghana, Kenya, South Africa, Cameroon, and

Mauritius. The rationale is to closely observe and study an aspect of Africa introduced in one of the courses on Africa Studies or in a related course. Leading up to the field trip, students must participate in three-weeks of intensive preparation in Hong Kong. After returning to Hong Kong, students will be required to attend class meetings over one week. In addition, students will also be required to complete a written report of about 5,000 words based on the experience and knowledge they have acquired during the field trip.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AFRI2002. Africa studies workshop (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course involves attending seminars and workshops on advanced topics in African Studies (including history, literature, linguistics, education, music, law, science, technology, and international relations) by leading Africanist scholars.

Prerequisite: AFRI1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AFRI2003. Proficiency course in an African language X (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Depending on staff and tutor availability, a selection of beginners' courses in African languages like Swahili, Hausa, Akan, and Dagaare will be offered during the summer. Students going to a particular African country in connection with AFRI2001 must learn a language spoken in the area of Africa they are scheduled to go to.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AFRI2004. Introduction to African linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)* This course will cover basic aspects of the phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics of major African languages, such as vowel harmony, tone, click sounds, the noun class system, verbal extensions, serial verbs, and other complex constructions. Some sociolinguistic features about various regions in Africa will also be included.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AFRI2005. Africa-China relations (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

In recent years, Africa and China have renewed their relations to include frequent official visits by top-level government officials between Beijing and the various African capitals, increased trade and economic relations, and more especially, increased interactions between ordinary Africans and Chinese. There are now growing Chinese communities in Africa and growing African communities in China. This course, based on contemporary research findings by the instructor and by visiting professors, will introduce students to the dynamics and consequences of these closer relationships and interactions. Students will be expected to do a field project on an African community in Hong Kong, Macau or mainland China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AFRI2006. African music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce various music cultures and traditions from Africa. The course emphasizes the acquisition of basic skills and knowledge of the djembe and gahu drum ensembles from Senegal and Ghana, respectively. Lectures will discuss the music and cultural context of various musical and performance genres from West, Southern and Eastern Africa. This will include the griot tradition, mbalax, high-life, bawo, morna, mbira and isicathamiya. No previous musical experience is necessary. Students will participate in intensive African percussion workshops and have the opportunity to learn to play and sing djembe and gahu music. Students will also be expected to undertake and maintain a logbook that documents independent practice sessions, either alone or with other participants, and individual progress.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AFRI2007. African Nobel Laureates in literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the literature of Africa by way of its Nobel Prize-winning authors. It is intended that by studying what may be regarded as the very best literature of the continent that the student will begin, first, to appreciate the rich cultural history of the continent; second, to appreciate the complex social and political composition of the continent; and, thereby, to develop an informed sensitivity towards the diversity of African thought.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**COMPARATIVE LITERATURE**

The Department of Comparative Literature teaches culture and literature in their broadest senses, and from international and interdisciplinary perspectives. The department offers a curriculum that reaches beyond any single national culture to explore relations between various texts, cultures, and historical contexts. Students learn to read culture by analyzing literary texts and other forms of writing, films, and other socio-cultural phenomena, from the city and its multiple spaces and communities to the media and popular culture, and in a range of national and international contexts. Texts are studied in English, though texts in Chinese are often used in cross-cultural studies and in Hong Kong and Chinese cultural studies.

Courses are open to students who have fulfilled the University's entrance requirements, though priority will usually be given to students with a Grade C or above in the Use of English examination, or who otherwise show special aptitude.

Courses in the department can be divided into different levels of difficulty and learning modes: introductory, foundational, survey, advanced topical, seminar, research and workplace experience. Every year, the department will announce a list of courses designated in the above seven categories to help students make their course selection and combination. In order to major in Comparative Literature, students have to fulfill the following requirements.

1. Students must select **at least one** 6-credit first-year introductory course (CLIT1008 or CLIT1009 or CLIT1010) offered by the department. Students who fail to obtain a C grade in the first-year course will normally not be allowed to major in Comparative Literature.

2. In the second and third years, students must select not less than 54 credits or equivalent from among those offered by the department including foundational, survey, and capstone learning courses.
3. Of these 54 credits, at least 12 credits must fall into the category of foundational courses which include CLIT2001 and CLIT2094.
4. In their final year of study, students are required to take no less than 6 credits and no more than 18 credits of courses which contribute to the capstone learning experience in Comparative Literature. Capstone courses, which include advanced topical, seminar, research and internship courses, enable students to advance their analytical thinking by applying their disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the introductory and foundational courses. Capstone courses which may be available to students can include CLIT2005, CLIT2008, CLIT2018, CLIT2061, CLIT2069, CLIT2076, CLIT2084, CLIT2087, CLIT2088, CLIT3019, and CLIT 3020.

Other than the above specific requirements in foundational knowledge (12 credits) and capstone learning experience (6 to 18 credits), Comparative Literature majors may freely combine their choices from the seven categories of courses according to their interests and aptitude.

Choice of courses is subject to the approval of the department and priority of entry into senior courses will be given to Comparative Literature majors. Students must make sure that their choices conform to any prerequisites set down by the department. Some of the capstone courses, for example, research and internship courses, are offered to Comparative Literature majors only.

A minor in Comparative Literature shall consist of **one** 6-credit first-year course and 30 credit units of second and third-year courses. There are no specific requirements as to how courses are combined for a minor programme.

To fulfill the credit requirements of the major/minor in Comparative Literature, students may also take LLAW3141 and the following History courses: HIST2082, HIST2083, HIST2084, HIST2085 and HIST2119. Refer to the Law School and History syllabi for details.

All courses offered in the department will be examined by 100% continuous assessment. Teaching activities may include film screenings, workshops, and guest lectures. Assignments may include essay writing, oral presentations in tutorials, take-home or in-class tests, and so on. Course organizers will provide details of assessment at the beginning of their courses.

## **First Year**

The department's first year consists of courses introducing students to cross-cultural and interdisciplinary perspectives in comparative literary, cultural, and visual studies. There will normally be at least one 6-credit course offered in each semester.

## **First-year Courses**

### **CLIT1001. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies I: Film studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will introduce students to the techniques and practice of film through the study of a historically and culturally varied range of cinematic productions. Both international and local cinema will be studied. The aim of the course is to enable students to read the language of film.

**CLIT1002. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies II: Gender studies (6 credits)**

Feminism, gender and sexuality, masculinity and femininity – indeed, even what we mean by ‘men’ and ‘women’ – are all areas of contemporary debate and always topical. This course introduces you to the subject of Comparative Literature by introducing the issues, which will remain important throughout your three years of study. We will look at what is meant by ‘gender’ through critical readings of some crucial texts, and we will support examination of these texts by reference to some critical theories.

---

**CLIT1004. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies III: Colonial and postcolonial culture – Hong Kong and beyond (6 credits)**

The course explores the importance of the cultural representations of colonizer and colonized in forming the way we imagine the world today. Through film, fiction and other texts, students will study colonial practices, and the responses of the colonized. Hong Kong, China and Chinese people will form an integral part of the course.

---

**CLIT1006. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies IV: Cultural studies (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to some of the fundamental issues which are raised when we ask what “culture” is and how it forms us and creates our ways of thinking, talking and creating. To study a text or a film, a painting, or a piece of music, is not just to attend to the individual work, but to think about its context, and what permits its existence in that culture. To begin to read a text may mean to read a culture. There are three emphases in this course. The first thinks about the relation of culture to ideology. How do the narratives that we read, the films we see, present us with an unconscious ideology? And why is the study of culture as ideology so important? The second is the plurality of different cultural voices that we are surrounded by: “high” and “low,” “elitist” and “popular.” Is it useful to distinguish these? How can “cultural studies” read both types of cultural products adequately? The third emphasis is on how different cultural forms or expressions contest and perhaps subvert official cultures, and ideological positions.

---

**CLIT1008. Ways of reading: film, literature, and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The objective of this course is to introduce to students different approaches and techniques to read a wide range of texts such as short stories, poems, films, photographs, fashion statements, architecture, the city and urban spaces. Drawing on Nietzsche’s view that “slow reading” is important, the course will initiate students to close and critical reading as well as the psychoanalytical practice of “reading otherwise.” The topics that we will explore include the following: What is the relation between a text and its social and cultural context? How do we read an event which generates multiple interpretations? How do we analyze a film-within-a-film structure? Can we decipher the meaning of what is absent in a text? How can the city be read? As Roland Barthes says, “those who fail to re-read are doomed to read the same text everywhere.” The aim of the course is to learn the art of reading through different textual strategies. Students will also be introduced to a number of foundational concepts of critical and cultural theory.

**CLIT1009. Questioning difference: gender, postcolonialism and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Through film and literature, this course introduces theoretical approaches to 3 main clusters of issues that cultures with colonial experiences need to deal with. Firstly, we will analyze cultural representations and issues of identity politics, such as the orientalist imagination and the nationalist imagination of culture, history and gender, as well as challenges to such imaginaries. We will also learn how to analyze the traumatic experience of racial and sexual discrimination under conditions of colonialism, slavery, exile and poverty, and the possibilities of survival and resistance. Texts from cultures that have undergone multiple colonial experiences will allow students to think also the issue of inter-racial relations not just between the West and the rest, but also among peoples of colour.

---

**CLIT1010. Ways of thinking about society and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces ways of thinking about culture and society in an international frame. “Culture” and “society” are familiar yet difficult terms. The main purpose of this class is to arrive at a sense of why each of them represents something important, something that speaks to everyday, real life and not just the dominant accounts of what is going on. It will introduce students to some of the key terms, techniques, and interpretive strategies that enable them to think about culture and society in complex ways. Thinking in this sense means being familiar with a range of concepts, issues, and “isms” and being able to relate them to other texts and problems. But to think is also to read. Thus we will also study the *ways* of reading in its broadest and narrowest senses – how we make sense of texts and problems and do “readings” of them. To do this we must place texts into their contexts and analyze them rhetorically. This includes the ability to do “practical criticism” or “close reading” – to make advanced sense of the words on the page, or what people actually say and do.

Texts from China and elsewhere will illustrate these ways of thinking. These range from literary, popular, and historical texts to visual ones like film and architecture as well as the practices of everyday life. The common emphasis is on the ways of thinking that can then be carried over into later classes in Comparative Literature.

---

**Second and Third Year**

Students taking nine or more 6-credit courses in the department must normally have taken at least one of the first-year courses. The following courses - or from time to time other courses - will be offered, as teaching arrangements permit.

---

**Second and Third-year Courses****CLIT2001. Comparative studies in narratives (6 credits)**

“The narratives of the world are numberless” – so Roland Barthes begins a crucial essay which argues that we can study different narratives and find underlying assumptions at work in them. These assumptions tie different stories back to culture and ideology and to history. This course will look at a variety of different narratives, novels, short stories and films both to discover what is of value in them, and how they may be best analyzed.



**CLIT2003. Modern European drama (6 credits)**

Questions about identity and “the self” are most urgently raised during periods of social, political and intellectual crises. This course studies in some depth the work of selected seminal European playwrights in relation to the crises of their time. Included may also be discussions of changing dramatic concepts, and the relevance to drama of other media (photography, cinema, television, video). Plays by Ibsen, Strindberg, Beckett, Brecht may be included to look at the way in which drama explores the history of the modern subject.

---

**CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory after Lacan (6 credits)**

This is an advanced level theory class. It will focus specifically on the Lacanian or psychoanalytic and post-structuralist way of viewing the world. We will ask questions like: What are the problems and blindspots in our existing ways of understanding and representing this world we live in? How do we define ourselves as subjects and agents in our relation to the world and to reality? What is the relation between language, reality, and subjectivity? What are the relations between the realms of the imaginary and the symbolic, as well as the real material world? How does psychoanalysis inform the study of masculinity and sexuality? And is it a “Western” discourse? How did this type of “theory” emerge and develop in the West and in Hong Kong? These and related questions will be examined as we explore the ways in which Lacanian theory as well as post-structuralism more generally have transformed the ways we analyze, represent, and engage the world we live in.

---

**CLIT2007. Film culture I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designed to explore global cinema by focusing on key genres, directors, and movements that emerged after World War II. It surveys some of the major developments in international film since 1945. It explores a variety of film types from popular genre films to art films, from realist drama to modernist experimentation, produced under a variety of conditions in order to provide students with an understanding of the relationship between film culture and issues of national identity, ethnicity, class, race, gender and sexual orientation. Students are expected to sharpen their critical and analytical abilities through the close analysis of individual films.

---

**CLIT2008. Film culture II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course seeks to investigate critical methodologies for reading film texts with a particular emphasis on psychoanalytic, feminist, and postcolonial theories. The approach will be cross-cultural and interdisciplinary. Film texts will be examined in relation to questions of gender, sexual difference, sexuality, and subjectivity. The films to be examined may include films from Hollywood and Asian cinemas.

Prerequisite: CLIT1008 or CLIT2007 or CLIT2025 or CLIT2061 or CLIT2065 or CLIT2074 or CLIT2084.

---

**CLIT2014. Feminist cultural studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys the history of the feminist critique of patriarchal culture from the “First Wave” to the “Third Wave” of feminist thought. Students are expected to acquire an appreciation for the range of approaches available within the field of feminist cultural studies, including psychoanalysis, Marxism, postmodernism, post-structuralism, performance theory, and queer critique. They will become familiar with the depiction of women in a range of cultural texts, including films, popular books, commercial advertising, music, theatre, and television.

**CLIT2016. The body in culture (6 credits)**

This course will explore various theoretical approaches as we attempt to develop discourses to address the notion of ‘the body’. There will be an emphasis on issues of corporeal identity, movement, and performance. We will present and discuss texts from the fields of philosophy, critical theory, psychoanalysis, architecture, literature, dance, theatre, film/media studies, gender studies, anthropology, technology, science, performance art, and cultural studies.

---

**CLIT2018. Critiques of modernity (6 credits)**

This course will examine cultural critiques of, and reflections upon, modernity and its consequences in “the West” and the non-West (primarily China) over the past century or so. While this course will be informed by theoretical consideration of capitalist modernity and “alternative” modernities, the central texts discussed will be primary cultural texts that are foregrounded within their specific cultural contexts by the acuity and consciousness of their critique of modernity. Exploring the many “faces of modernity,” we will analyze our selected texts as “metacommentaries” on modernity’s contradictions. In addition to selected essays from the reading list below, literary (short story and poetry) and visual (film and painting) texts will also be included to offer students an opportunity to analyze creative responses to processes of modernization and globalization.

---

**CLIT2025. Visual cultures (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to key issues and debates in visual culture studies. It explores how the cultures of visual consumption, surveillance, and simulacra are formed, how these visual cultures impact upon ways of seeing the world, upon feelings, desires, and thoughts. From advertising images to built spaces to videos and the cyberspace, there is an “optical unconscious” made up of the criss-crossings of technologies, power, ideologies, and desires. Students will learn to use critical concepts in cultural theory to assess the cultural politics of the image in visual cultures of the modern and the postmodern.

---

**CLIT2026. Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the interactions between contemporary critical and cultural theory and digital culture. We will discuss theoretical and compositional approaches in the work of international new media artists (via World Wide Web, CD-ROM, video, exhibition and slide formats as available), and create new media projects ourselves, in order to expose possible modes of critical interpretation and creation for these media. Issues of identity construction, gender, corporeal vs. psychic presence, interactivity, bodily motion and motion capture, community, interface, performativity, and representation will be discussed.

---

**CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)**

If contemporary cities are becoming more ‘invisible’, it is because the effects they have upon us are indirect and displaced. Our experience of cities becomes more problematic as cities themselves become more complex. This course explores the changing cultural space of cities mainly through major works of fiction and of cinema, though it will include other forms like painting and architecture as well as theoretical texts. Topics for discussion include: How is urban experience transformed by colonialism/imperialism, technology, information? What are the different ways of reading the city? Is Hong Kong a ‘Chinese city’? How can the city be read as a cultural text?

**CLIT2031. Fashion theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Fashion lies somewhere between ‘art’ and ‘consumption’, and for mysterious reasons (according to historian Eric Hobsbawm) often anticipates future cultural tendencies better than both. We will discuss the relation of fashion to art, media, spectacles, and marketing; to questions of identity and self-fashioning; to images of the body and ideas of femininity and masculinity; to notions of style and anti-style (e.g. jeans as degree zero fashion); to looking and having ‘the look’. Throughout, the focus will be on the surprising impact of fashion on culture, particularly contemporary culture.

---

**CLIT2037. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of the course is twofold: to serve as an introduction to some representative works in contemporary Chinese literature and film, and to analyze the representation of women in contemporary Chinese culture through these works. A key characteristic of contemporary Chinese literature and film is its obsession with gender and sexuality. Since the end of the Mao era and the beginning of the market reforms in the late 70s, “sex” has replaced “class” as one of the most frequently circulated motifs in the mass media and a new trend has thus emerged in contemporary Chinese literature and film with exclusive focus on issues of gender and sexuality. We will discuss this new phenomenon through two groups of writings: patriarchal representation of women and women’s self-representation.

---

**CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the influential and inter-disciplinary field of Postcolonial Studies. It builds on earlier units in other departmental classes by surveying this field as a whole. It studies representative texts, problems, and concepts central to the study of colonialism and postcolonialism. Since this is a vast area of world history and culture (dating from at least 1492), not all issues, key texts, concepts, and geographic areas can be considered, and so will vary by instructor. However topics to be examined can include: definitions of colonialism, imperialism and the post-colonial condition; orientalism and occidentalism; colonial discourse and sexuality and gender; race; the nation and nationalism as imagined community; identities and mentalities of the colonized and colonizer. Representative areas might include the mainland and greater China, but will certainly include some texts from and places within South and South East Asia, Africa, the Caribbean and the Americas. Texts can include literature, film, non-fiction, television, advertizing and the media.

---

**CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Globalization is not only an obvious “buzzword” of the post-Cold War age, but is also an important historical, social, and cultural process that both predates the current era and yet is said to be “new” and more important than ever. Whether you see it as the most salient feature of our age or as so much hype if not an alibi for transnational capitalism, it is an important term and phenomenon in the study of literature, film, and culture more broadly. This course introduces students to some of the key debates about globalization, especially but not only in terms of culture. We will examine questions like: How do we understand globalization in Hong Kong, China, South East Asia and elsewhere? What is “new” about it? Are we becoming more alike everywhere or more aware of our cultural differences because of globalization? Are our identities and cultures more or less “hybrid” and “cosmopolitan” than before recent globalization? And how do national and local cultures everywhere respond to globalization? Are the nation-state and nationalism fading away or is it the reverse? How can we analyze the problems of globalization from the spread of European cultures in the age of colonialism to the present new world orders of global capitalism? We will think through these types of questions with reference to local and global phenomena and texts.

**CLIT2052. Chinese urban culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

With specific reference to major Chinese cities, for example Beijing, Shanghai, Taipei, and Hong Kong, the course is designed to examine how forces of modernization, colonialism and globalization have drastically transformed these cities. It explores problems of urban culture and the changing meaning of 'Chineseness' through major works of fiction, cinema, architecture and other relevant cultural texts. Although no prerequisites are required, students are advised to study CLIT2028 'The City as Cultural Text' before taking this course.

---

**CLIT2058. Histories of sexuality (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course compares the theoretical approaches of Freud and Foucault to sexuality – a history of repression versus a history of the production of the subject – by looking at a number of literary and cultural texts whose interest for us is how they make problematic and fascinating either theory of the subject. Included will also be discussions of other critics and theorists (e.g. Judith Butler, Julia Kristeva, Eve Sedgwick) who refine or critique these two major theoretical approaches to the study of sexuality.

---

**CLIT2060. Fiction and film in contemporary Chinese societies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies modern Chinese culture as it is expressed and understood in contemporary stories and films. It aims to explore relationships between narrative arts and society. It also examines literature and film in relation to each other, as well as literary and aesthetic theories, themes, genres and expressive modes.

---

**CLIT2061. Narratives of the past in contemporary culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Organized around different kinds of narratives of the past in contemporary culture, this course raises basic questions about historical representation: What is 'history'? How is it differentiated from 'memory' and 'nostalgia'? In what way is a spatial critique of culture pertinent to the study of historical representation? With reference to a range of texts such as literature, film, museum narratives, architecture and music from different cultures, the course explores the politics and poetics of historical representation in contemporary societies. Topics for discussion may include: tensions between official history and personal memory, different styles and forms of imagining and narrating history, and the role of the media and other cultural means such as oral narratives in the mediation of 'history'.

---

**CLIT2064. Hong Kong culture: Popular culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores the various aspects of popular culture in Hong Kong from the perspective of Cultural Studies. Major media and other popular forms of expression to be discussed include: television, radio, newspapers and popular magazines, popular music, popular literature, cartoons, youth, and fan culture. Theories of Cultural Studies will be introduced and discussed in relation to critical readings of such texts in order to expand the students' horizons in understanding and interpreting Hong Kong popular culture.

**CLIT2065. Hong Kong culture: Representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims primarily to examine the transformation of identity in Hong Kong through the analysis of the tropes of crisis, home, and “border-crossing” in contemporary Hong Kong literary and filmic texts. We shall explore how various crucial moments of transition in Hong Kong history have produced identity crises in the people of Hong Kong. Some of these intriguing moments include the communist takeover in 1949, the 1997 handover, as well as more recently the SARS outbreak and the urban redevelopments debates. We will discuss critically the relation between nation and home, self and other, the individual and the collective, memory and forgetting to critique the cultural problems bound up in a space of flows called “Hong Kong.”

---

**CLIT2066. Postmodernism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We are constantly bombarded with images by the media day and night. MTV is equally popular in the developed as well as in the developing countries. The old distinction between high culture and popular culture is breaking down. Literary and cinematic genres are being constantly mixed, resulting in composite and hybrid works. More and more Hong Kong Chinese live in Toronto, Melbourne, London and San Francisco while more and more Filipinos come to Hong Kong as housemaids. The postmodern world is full of fascinating phenomena. In this course we plan to study postmodernism by focusing on literature, cinema, art, and other cultural productions. The aim of the course is not to define postmodernism but rather to evoke and question it as we seek to make sense of the radical changes taking place in ideas and experiences related to technology, entertainment, art, everyday life and the problems of representation.

---

**CLIT2067. Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)**

This course ‘replaces’ Shakespeare not by removing his work from the agenda, but by reconsidering his place in contemporary criticism and popular cultural practice. Some of the topics the course may deal with are: feminist, psychoanalytic and literary historicist re-readings of Shakespeare’s texts; comparisons of how international film directors, with their differing multi-cultural perspectives, have handled the problems of filming Shakespeare; and the way that Shakespeare has been adapted and re-imagined by innovative and influential modern artists.

---

**CLIT2069. The making of modern masculinities (6 credits)**

Using cross-cultural materials taken from a wide range of media such as films, fiction, magazines, paintings, TV and advertising, this course engages in a multidisciplinary study of the formation of different types of masculinities in the modern world.

---

**CLIT2072. Deconstruction (6 credits)**

This course examines the method of deconstruction around such issues as truth, power, subjectivity, modernity, postmodernity, and so on. Readings include texts by Derrida himself and by some other thinkers (e.g. Nietzsche, J. L. Austin, Habermas).

**CLIT2073. Deleuze on cinema (6 credits)**

Though not a film-maker or theorist, Deleuze's writings on cinema (which combine film theory and analyzes, philosophy and cultural criticism) may prove to be as seminal as Eisenstein's or Bazin's. The course will introduce students to what is innovative about Deleuze's two books on cinema. This includes his radical manner of analyzing films: instead of focusing on 'film language', he focuses on the kind of cinematic image each film constructs. Thus the books offer at one level a classification of different types of cinematic images. However, underlying the analyzes is also a very provocative thesis about the 'history' of cinema, which Deleuze argues has undergone a crucial mutation: from different forms of 'the movement-image' pioneered by the classic cinema, to the much more elusive forms of 'the time-image' which characterize the contemporary cinema - with Hitchcock as the fulcrum around which the history of cinema turns. Finally, and most significantly, Deleuze relates both the 'movement-image' and the 'time-image' to developments in thought and culture; and this enables him to formulate, through the analyzes of cinema, ideas like 'any-space-whatever', 'the crystals of time', 'the powers of the false', and 'the thought of the outside' - which take us way beyond the limits of film criticism. The great directors, Deleuze says, have to be compared to thinkers. The implication is that understanding cinema is understanding modern thought itself - its crises, ruptures and possibilities.

**CLIT2074. Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)**

This course offers (a) a survey of contemporary Chinese film, especially the most recent productions of mainstream cinema, and (b) a critical examination of post-Mao ideology in the context of market reforms. Topics include the following. (1) The meaning of wealth: We will look at how wealth is represented in post-Mao film, and whether this representation coheres with the Party's political program and serves the purpose of interpellating the general public. (2) The identity of the post-Mao hero. In post-Mao China, there is no longer any cinematic representation of the working class as hero and thus no more ideological interpellation of the working class as the central constituent of the Party. The entrepreneur has replaced the proletarian as the new hero of the reform era. (3) The re-sexualization of the population. The practice of Marxism in China after 1949 led to the disavowal of gender and sexuality as a suitable object of cultural representation. The population was de-sexualized, in the sense that no cultural 'signifiers' were available in the Maoist discourse to inscribe men and women as sexual beings. In post-Mao China, 'sex' has come back with a vengeance through the re-discovery of patriarchal sexual conventions, and 'woman' of a particular class has become the signifier of sexual difference.

The course will pay special attention to film language. Films will be treated as a collection of cinematic signifiers that contribute to the meaning of the texts rather than serving as transparent vehicles for plots.

**CLIT2075. Reading modern poetry (6 credits)**

This course will do two things: it will study some fine examples of poetry, asking the following questions: what is poetry? How does it work? Why should we read it, and how? Where should we start? What is the good of poetry?

Its time-span is the moment when Europe and America defined themselves as modern, as part of the modern world. So, it will begin with two examples of Romanticism, will continue with the urban poetry of Paris and the modernism it produced; it will look at three very different examples of American poetry, some of it obsessed with the question of how this poetry should relate to anything traditional and European; it will conclude with the Europe of the political crisis of two world wars, after which, as Adorno said - 'Auschwitz made lyric poetry impossible.' Adorno is not necessarily to be agreed with, and much poetry would question his formulation, but his voice is important in a debate over the functions of poetry, and where it comes from.

There will be then, a mixture of English, French, American, German and Russian poetry: all of it will be looked at in English.

**CLIT2076. Fashioning femininities (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Starting with Simone de Beauvoir's celebrated statement that "One is not born, but rather becomes, a woman," this course engages students into questioning our common understanding of sexual differences. Drawing on a number of landmark works of gender theories we will learn to analyze the socio-historical construction and transformation of femininities as represented in biomedical discourse, women's magazines and fashion advertisings. Special attention will be focused on the imaging and fashioning of the female/feminine body.

---

**CLIT2078. Childhood, feminine roles and cultural myths (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will begin with 'liminal' works which chart a traumatic rite of passage for women from childhood to adulthood or suggest that there might be a dynamic interplay between the two states. It will focus, in particular, on texts in which women directly challenge prevailing social myths of human development, family organization, and sexual relations. It will be especially interested in texts which proceed to deconstruct the social codes governing women, their relationships, and their scope for defining and expressing themselves.

---

**CLIT2079. Traumatic events (6 credits)**

This course will observe the workings of trauma (the enactment and working-through of collective and individual symptoms of trauma), memory, and witnessing in various modes of everyday life. We will examine notions of catastrophe, disaster, accident, and violence, and explore the possibilities and impossibilities of bearing witness in many forms of cultural production. We will examine the representation of traumatic events in fiction, poetry, architecture, critical theory, visual art, philosophy, science, cartoons, film, video, television reportage, newspaper documentation, and performance, on the internet and World Wide Web, and in the public and domestic spaces of Hong Kong.

---

**CLIT2080. Walter Benjamin as writer and cultural critic (6 credits)**

The course is an introduction to the seminal work of Walter Benjamin. His essays - on literature, translation, photography and film, culture and politics, the experience of cities - develop a theory of reading and a style of argument that are indispensable to the understanding of contemporary cultural debates.

---

**CLIT2081. Becoming post-human: animal bodies and virtual bodies (6 credits)**

We study 'Humanities', but is there a relationship between humanist values and the global crises currently being experienced in environmental damage? What differences have cinema and even more, digital technologies made to perceptions of space, time, embodiment and human presence? That our cinematic and electronic lives have transformed us as subjects is apparent, but how they have altered consciousness and identity is for discussion. These changes have redefined the human, and 'nature' and 'human nature' and the course assumes a current overthrowing of the human within critical theory and within digitalization, and the appearance of the 'non-species' (Derrida). It looks at 'ecocriticism' and explores the posthuman body as this has come into question in relation to new technologies.

**CLIT2083. Film art, language and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines key ways of analyzing film art and culture. How films create meaning and how viewers make sense of the cinema frame this exploration of film as visual language and culture. The course places emphasis on learning basic film terminology and the rudiments of film form. The student becomes acquainted with classical Hollywood cinema, other national cinemas, transnational cinemas, as well as hybrid, experimental and documentary film modes. At the conclusion of the course, the student should be able to look at motion pictures critically, understand films as formal constructs, and place films within broader institutional, economic, ideological, and cultural contexts.

---

**CLIT2084. “New” cinemas across national boundaries (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Almost as soon as the French *nouvelle vague* appeared, the next European new wave began to break on the cinematic horizon. Since then, “new” cinemas have appeared in places as diverse as the United States, Japan, Senegal, Brazil, Iran, South Korea and Taiwan. However, the emergence of postmodernism has called into question what can be claimed as “new” in global film culture. Interventions coming from post-classical Hollywood, the digital revolution, postcolonial cinemas, diasporic and transnational film cultures, post-feminist and queer considerations of gender and sexual orientation have further complicated the notion of the “new” in world cinema. This course examines what is beyond or behind the “new waves” in global cinema by exploring key auteurs, genres, film movements, aesthetic and technological innovations in world film culture from the mid-1980s to the present.

---

**CLIT2085. Hong Kong: Community and cultural policy in the global context (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Cultural production is becoming the new drive for the world’s global and local economy. Dynamic cultural planning has been gaining currency worldwide as a way to integrate cultural demands, planning objectives, and socioeconomic goals. How does Hong Kong fare in this picture? New studies on global cultural policies show that “managerialism” and “entrepreneurialism” in planning prioritize entertainment, tourism, and architecture, resulting in an unsustainable build-up of cultural hardware. Similarly, the West Kowloon Cultural District is an issue of competitive urban growth vs. sustainable cultural development. The heavy reliance on the hardware build-up exposes not only the lack of perspective on culture policy (the “cultural” infrastructure), but essentially, the absence of cultural planning and cultural policy. Other countries in recent years have stressed the importance of cultural policies that are sustainable, democratic and grounded in community needs. This is an intellectual and policy gap that we can, and ought to, fill. This course equips students with the capacity to understand and participate in Hong Kong cultural policy analysis and planning in the local condition and the global context.

---

**CLIT2086. Asia on global screens (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designed to acquaint the student with the diverse national cinemas of Asia and with the ways “Asia” as a continent has been depicted in films from around the world. The interconnections



among various national cinemas of Asia, the visualization of Asia and its people in Hollywood and European film, and the transnational history of Asian global film culture are given serious consideration in this course. Drawing on an eclectic blend of popular and “art” films, documentaries and experimental works, we will explore Asia on world screens within political, national, economic, and cultural contexts. Special attention will be paid to film as a popular art (e.g., Hong Kong martial arts films), the representation of women (e.g., in Hollywood, European, and Asian melodramas), and alternative media practices (Asian American independent film). Although the emphasis in this course is on cinema, the relationship between film and other arts will also be examined.

---

**CLIT2087. Modern Chinese culture and society: Rebellions and revolutions (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the social history, politics, and culture of modern China. We will study important moments of the May 4<sup>th</sup> and “reform” eras, but most of our attention will be spent on the most maligned but fascinating and still influential era of modern China: that of Mao Zedong and the continuous revolution (1930s-1979). This course is an advanced introduction but does not presume too much knowledge about mainland China. We’ll look at the development of the P.R.C. as it is reflected and refracted in select literary, film, ethnographic, scholarly, and primary/historical documents from China and the world. Writers can range from Lu Xun, Liang Chi-Chao, and Mao Zedong to William Hinton and Gao Mobo. Films can include “agit-prop” as well as documentaries. But in addition to surveying this complex socio-cultural history, we will also contest conventional wisdom about the People’s Republic. We will take China’s long revolution seriously, in all its glory as well as its gory details. We’ll explore some of the theoretical, ethical, interpretive, and political issues raised by a rich history of revolution and rebellion in modern China.

---

**CLIT2088. Critical approaches to film studies (6 credits)**

This course is designed to acquaint the student with the principal critical methods and theoretical debates of film theory. In addition to providing a survey of film theories, this course focuses on the interconnections of theory with film criticism and production practices. A range of fiction and non-fiction films will be screened, including early Soviet, classical Hollywood, Third Cinema, French New Wave, and contemporary international productions. Theoretical perspectives include structuralism, semiology, Marxism, feminism, psychoanalysis, queer theory, post-structuralism, and cultural studies. Some of the theoretical issues covered include questions of narrative and narration, realism, formalism, modernism, postmodernism, post-colonialism, gender, sexuality, ideology, authorship, and genre.

---

**CLIT2089. Culture and ‘queer’ theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

‘Queer theory’ has been developed over the past fifteen years in order to deal with the expanding subject of lesbian and gay writings and film, and the increasing representation of lesbian and gay writings and film, and the increasing representation of homosexuality within modern cultures. This course will discuss a number of the texts of ‘queer theory’ by Michel Foucault, Judith Butler and Eve Sedgwick, and will study a variety of texts, contemporary and historical, which in literature or in allegorical terms have represented male and female homosexuality, whether directly or indirectly. It will study how these changes of representation, and new critical theories have repositioned the subject of gender studies.

**CLIT2090. Orientalism, China, and globalization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the theory and history of orientalism both in themselves and as they apply – or fail to usefully apply – to Western understandings of China from dynastic times up to more recent decades of globalization. Edward Said's *Orientalism* (1978) has helped transform the humanities and social sciences and helped establish the field of postcolonial studies. It has also been taken up in problematic ways and remains a controversial if not notorious text in some circles. We will seek to gain a firm grasp of Said's book and the complex historical phenomenon of orientalism. We'll also examine two crucial areas that Said himself largely left unexplored: that of the real, historical China and the "China" of Western minds. We will then ask how well the theory fits "China" (and China) both in the past and in more recent, postcolonial or global times. How might the theory be revised, assuming it should be at all? Why does orientalism persist even after the formal end of colonialism? And what of its flip-side or obverse, "occidentalism"? How might we understand or represent "the Other" in non-orientalist or non-dominative ways? These are difficult, speculative questions but important for all of us living in an increasingly globalized and increasingly "Chinese" world.

---

**CLIT2091. Gender, feminism and modern China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on literary, historical and theoretical/interpretive writings by and about modern Chinese women and their experiences of gender and of China's long revolution (from the late Qing and early Republican periods up to the present). We'll focus on how our selected texts reflect and record the place, significance, and "experience" of gender (and to a lesser extent, of sexuality) during key moments within Chinese history. Lectures will cover this historical ground and examine how women made history and were made by it, how the feminist movement impacted mainland China (and vice versa), and how the P.R.C. incorporated feminist analysis and sought to liberate women. We'll also delve into select interpretive and theoretical issues related to this focus, such as state feminism, gender neutrality, homosociality, (Confucian) patriarchy, gender discourse, and domestic labor. We'll emphasize the quest for women's liberation and (or "in") the revolution. While we will spend some time studying the post-Mao era, the majority of the course will be on the radical decades from the fall of the Qing through the various campaigns of the Mao era (1936-1976).

---

**CLIT2092. Modern American poetry: Politics and aesthetics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys modern American poetry in its aesthetics and "politics". The richness of its language and formal expression is, in other words, rivaled only by its abilities to thematize social, intellectual and cultural problems (e.g. mass culture, racism or alienation) as well as their imaginative resolution. We will read both canonical and non-canonical poets. Among the authors we will study are: Walt Whitman, Robert Frost, T.S. Eliot, Ezra Pound, William Carlos Williams, Wallace Stevens, Langston Hughes, Kenneth Fearing, Tillie Olsen, Edwin Rolfe, Edna St. Vincent Millay, Allen Ginsberg, Amiri Baraka, and Adrienne Rich. Much of the course will be given over to instruction and practice in the "art" of reading modern poetry as well as discussing and writing about it. But we will also be concerned as much with content – and historical and intellectual contexts – as with form. Among the topics we will attend to are: the long-standing dialogue on the meaning, hope or nightmare of America; the search for a literary form adequate to the complexity of modern life; modernity as problem, possibility, and "feeling"; "political poetry" versus the politics of poetry; and lyricism vs. "facts".

**CLIT2093. 20th Century fashion and the making of the modern women (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Coco Chanel, the celebrated French fashion designer known for redefining the feminine form and silhouette, once said: “I make fashions that women can live in, breathe in, feel comfortable in and look younger in.” Using the work of Chanel as a launching point, students will develop a historical understanding of the emergence of the modern woman through the study of the evolution of women’s fashion and clothing in 20th century, and will learn to analyze the economic, social and political dimensions of fashion and their impacts on the evolution of women’s roles and identities.

**CLIT2094. Introduction to critical theory and cultural studies (6 credits)**

This introductory course examines some of the foundational texts, concepts, “isms,” and arguments within the fields of critical theory and cultural studies. It is not an advanced course but a foundational survey primarily intended for beginning majors. It prepares students for further work in literary, cultural, and theoretical studies by scrutinizing several foundational concepts and areas of theory. Some primary texts (extracts) will be read. But the bulk of the readings will be from standard guides and introductions to the fields. These may be supplemented by select literary, visual, or other texts which illuminate particular theories, concepts, or types of interpretation.

The rise of post-structuralism (or “postmodernism”) will be partially covered but is not the basis of the course. Alternative traditions and ideas within the long, rich history of critical theory will be addressed. These can range from ancient and early modern reflections on culture and literature, for example, to dialectical and Marxist notions of ideology and power as well as post-colonial and feminist critiques of history and patriarchy. The final part of the class will also deal with the interdisciplinary field of “cultural studies” in so far as it can be understood as a way to “apply” theory, on the one hand, or on the other as a way to rebuke the abstract and non-contextual pursuit of theory for its own sake.

Prerequisite: one 6-credit first year Comparative Literature course.

**Third-year Courses****CLIT3019. Internship in Comparative Literature and cultural sectors (6 credits)**

This course aims at placing final year Comparative Literature majors in the working environments where their cultural knowledge and their skills in writing, analysis and cultural research will find application and become enriched in the process. Internship placement will be made only if the student passes an interview and acquires the approval of the prospective host organization. Internship placements may include but are not limited to the following areas:

- Cultural criticism and publishing
- Film and media
- Cultural curatorship and management
- Cultural innovation/activism, non-government organizations
- Teaching and creative education

Prerequisite: a minimum cumulative GPA of 2.9 is normally required.

Note: for Comparative Literature majors only.

**CLIT3020. Independent research (6 credits)**

This course aims at providing well-prepared Comparative Literature majors in the final year an opportunity to pursue a research topic under the supervision of a teacher. It contributes to the capstone learning experience of major students in Comparative Literature majors. It helps students advance their skills in doing research for disciplinary and interdisciplinary topics in literary and cultural studies. The contact hours are minimal (10-14 hours for a 6-credit course) and will include teaching of research method and discussion of work-in-progress. Students will undertake independent research and writing. Assessment is through a single research essay or an undergraduate dissertation of approximately 7,000 words. The research courses require students to have a final year Comparative Literature Departmental major status, a GPA of 3.25 or above, and lecturer approval upon the receipt of a research proposal of approximately 1,000 words and a working bibliography at least one month prior to the semester when the course is taken.

Prerequisite: 6-credits of first year Comparative Literature course and 12 credits of designated second year foundational Comparative Literature courses; a minimum cumulative GPA of 3.25 is normally required.

Note: for Comparative Literature majors only.

**FINE ARTS**

The Department of Fine Arts teaches the history and theory of art. European, American, Chinese, Japanese and Indian artistic traditions are all examined in depth, and the broader international context of art making is also considered. An introduction to museum studies is also offered. Students may major in Fine Arts, or take a disciplinary minor, but will also discover many fruitful combinations between Fine Arts courses and those of other Arts and Social Science disciplines.

Students wishing to major in Fine Arts must normally pass **FINE1001** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** in their first year and must choose not less than 54 credits from among those courses offered by the department in the second and third years. Of these 54 credits, at least 6 credits must be in Western art, at least 6 credits must be in Asian art, and at least 6 credits must be chosen from the department's 3000-level courses. This last requirement is intended to provide a capstone experience for all Fine Arts majors.

Students wishing to minor in Fine Arts must normally pass **FINE1001** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** in their first year and must choose not less than 30 credits from among those courses offered by the department in the second and third years. There are no requirements as to specific courses that must be taken to form the 30 credits.

Prospective students are asked to note that individual second and third-year courses in the Department of Fine Arts may require **FINE1001** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** as a prerequisite. Other prerequisites for second and third-year courses are listed in the course descriptions. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived. All major, minor and other course selections are subject to the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

The form of assessment (i.e. percentage weighting of coursework and/or examination) for each course is specified in the course descriptions. Coursework assessment will be based on the student's performance in tutorials, seminars, written work and other practical work as specified by the course instructor.

## First Year

### **FINE1001. Introduction to western art history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce students to the art of Europe from the periods of ancient Greek and Roman civilization to the art of the twentieth century. Major developments in painting and sculpture will be studied, with the aim of giving students an understanding of the main characteristics of the art produced, and the relationship of art to the culture in which it was created. No previous knowledge of art history is assumed.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

---

### **FINE1006. Art and society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces visual and critical skills for interpreting the art of different cultures from both the past and the present. We examine a variety of themes related to the techniques and functions of art, and we study the way art expresses various moral, social, political, and religious ideas. Students will gain a better understanding of cross-cultural communication and will learn how to analyze the powerful visual culture of the contemporary world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FINE1007. Introduction to photography theory and practice (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to introduce students to principles of contemporary photography theory and a critical practice of the photographic medium. In addition to the teaching of basic photographic techniques, the course will also discuss how we can assess photographs with critical tools such as aesthetics and cultural theories.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FINE1008. Introduction to the arts of Asia: past and present (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey course introduces major themes in art from early formations of Asian civilizations to the twenty-first century. Students investigate the various forms of art production in China, Japan, India and Southeast Asia with an emphasis on the means by which art creates meaning in diverse Asian cultures. Themes include issues such as patronage, personal style, artistic autonomy, art institutions and collecting practices.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

## Second and Third Years

The following courses are open to both second and third year students. Prerequisites, if required, are stated in the course descriptions. If staffing arrangements permit, the following courses will be offered:

**FINE2012. Italian Renaissance art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the painting and sculpture of Italy from about 1300 to 1550. Beginning with Giotto's new approach to painting, the course will explore artistic developments in Italy throughout this period, concluding with a study of the art of the High Renaissance. The impact of the Antique and the interest in mathematics, characteristic of the Italian Renaissance, will be among the topics discussed.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE 1008.

Assessment: 65% coursework, 35% examination.

---

**FINE2013. Northern Renaissance art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the art produced in Flanders, France, and Germany between about 1300 and 1550, focusing primarily on painting and printmaking. It will begin with early 14th century illuminated manuscripts and the subsequent development of the International Style. It will then consider Flemish 15th century painting in some detail, concluding with a study of Flemish and German art of the 16th century.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 65% coursework, 35% examination.

---

**FINE2020. American art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys painting, sculpture, photography, and architecture in the United States from European settlement to 1945. The underlying theme is how art in the United States has helped project various new ideologies and values associated with this young and unique nation. Issues to be considered in relation to art will include Protestant values, democracy, wilderness, racial conflict, capitalism, popular culture, and America's gradual rise to power.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2025. The art of the Baroque (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the art of the 17th century in Italy, Flanders, Spain, the Netherlands and France. The emphasis will be on painting, although sculpture will be studied as well. Particular attention will be given to the impact of the Counter Reformation, the features of Baroque naturalism, the use of allegory, and attitudes towards the antique by artists of this period.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 65% coursework, 35% examination.

**FINE2026. The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)**

This course examines the radical transformation in European art from the age of kings to the age of revolutions, c.1750-1840. Painting, sculpture, and printmaking will be discussed in relation to various historical developments, including the decline of aristocratic culture and Christianity; the rise of science, industry, and democracy; and new, Romantic notions of nature, individuality, nationalism, and primitivism.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2027. The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)**

This course examines the early formation of modern European visual culture, from Realism to Impressionism. The underlying historical theme will be the rise of bourgeois society. Painting, sculpture, printmaking, and photography will be discussed in the context of related ideological issues such as industrial capitalism, mass media, urban leisure, tourism, new gender roles, and European imperialism.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2028. Vision in crisis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In art, as in other fields of knowledge, the late 19th century and the early 20th century was a time when pre-existing assumptions were challenged in a radical way. To certain artists in Europe, for instance, illusionistic realism or the conventions of perspective no longer seemed adequate tools for representing the world and our experience of it. Amongst the factors provoking this crisis of vision was an increasing awareness of other cultures and their differing modes of visual representation, and many non-Western artists shared with their Western counterparts this new sense of the relativity of cultural knowledge, although they tended to respond to it in different ways. *Vision in Crisis* will examine this moment of great artistic change, focusing primarily on European examples, with Chinese art being taken as the main non-Western case for study. Artists whose work may be discussed in depth include Van Gogh, Gauguin, Cézanne, Picasso and Matisse.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Although certain 20th century artists can be taken as celebrating the modern, many artists offered instead a critical engagement with the newly-emerging forms of experience they were encountering, or sought various forms of escape from them. While the response of European artists to the modern condition is most well known, artists from other parts of the world were equally engaged with the task of creating an art adequate to the new environment in which they found themselves. Both will be considered in this course, which will focus primarily on European art of the first half of the 20th century. Chinese art will provide the main non-Western case for study. Abstract art, Futurism, Expressionism, Dada and Surrealism may all be considered.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Paris has been described as the capital of the 19th century, and indeed one can talk of a European cultural hegemony that lasted until the outbreak of the Second World War. The postwar period, however, saw a migration of cultural authority across the Atlantic to the United States, and with the ending of the Cold War American cultural dominance seemed to become even more deeply entrenched. If the close of the colonial era did not then eliminate the asymmetry of power between Western and non-Western cultures, it did at least alter the conditions for artistic production in the latter. Furthermore, with an increasing pace of globalization at the end of the century, the opportunities for non-Western artists to reach new audiences have expanded enormously. This course will begin with a consideration of Pollock and Abstract Expressionism, and later developments in American art will be a major focus of the course, which will also be concerned to document the contribution of non-Western artists. A thematic approach will be adopted, with tendencies such as Pop Art, Minimal and Post-Minimal art, Environmental and Installation Art, Performance Art, Conceptual and Neo-Conceptual Art being amongst those which may be considered. A wide variety of artworks dating from 1945 to the present day will be discussed.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2031. The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Tracing the development of Western architecture from ancient Greece onward, this course focuses on the 19th and 20th centuries, from Neoclassicism in Washington, D.C. and Haussmann's renovation of Paris to the Bauhaus in Germany and the international spread of Modernism and Postmodernism. Emphasis is placed on the way buildings express institutional ideologies, as well as on construction technology and architectural theory. Numerous examples from Hong Kong are included.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2032. Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will consider the representation of women in Western art. The approach will be thematic, and examples ranging from medieval to modern will be considered. Topics will include 'good' women (virgins, saints, mothers, wives) and 'bad' (fallen women, temptresses, witches), as well as the nude and the portrait. Both religious and secular images will be considered.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Tracing the rise of global visual cultures, this course examines artistic interactions between Western and non-Western cultures brought on by colonialism, war, trade, and scientific exploration in the period 1750-1900. We study how European and American artists viewed the cultures they encountered in China, Japan, India, the Near East and elsewhere, as well as how non-Westerners viewed the West. Emphasis is placed on the varied processes of cultural interaction and on the importance of such interaction for the development of modernity in different cultural contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**FINE2034. Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce Hong Kong art and related aspects of Hong Kong visual culture. It will be taught in a workshop format, and will provide the opportunity for students to develop skills in art criticism as well as an understanding of Hong Kong art history.

Prerequisite: At least one FINE2000 level course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2035. Photography and the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies the history of photography in the nineteenth century: its invention and technological evolution, its various early practices, and its interactions with other cultural practices. In discussing these topics it also investigates the social, cultural and ideological problems to which the medium gave rise especially in the Western world and the era of modernity. Some introductory practical lessons and field trips are included so that students can have a better understanding of the actual photographic process.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course investigates the history of photography in the twentieth century. It charts how earlier photographic practices evolved and were transformed in the new era, and traces the workings of new practices such as photojournalism and fashion photography. As modernism and avant-gardism have pervaded twentieth century culture and arts, this course also focuses on how photography responded to these tendencies in different countries. Finally, it considers the medium's role in the age of global culture and digital imaging.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2042. Chinese material culture I: Neolithic to Tang (6 credits)**

China is considered to have at least five thousand years of continuous cultural development. This course will be a chronological survey of the material culture of China from the Neolithic period to the Tang dynasty. Students will explore the factors contributing to China's rich and unique visual culture through the study of early Chinese painted pottery, jades, bronzes, ceramics and sculptural works. The course will also address the impact of historical, philosophical and religious developments in China during this period on the production and uses of art. Students will be encouraged to consider how the relationship of art to personal and cultural identity has evolved from the development of archaeology in China.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2043. Chinese material culture II: Song to Qing (6 credits)**

This course will be a survey of the development of material culture in China from the Song dynasty to the fall of imperial China in 1911 and will focus in particular on the influence of imperial taste on art production. Ceramics in particular have reflected the aesthetics of the Court, from austere Buddhist-influenced expression to the highly decorative western-influenced wares of the Qing court, and so will feature prominently in the objects to be considered. Also included will be the iconography of tomb figurines and stone sculpture in imperial mausoleums as well as religious sculpture, bronzes, and carving in jade, wood, lacquer and bamboo.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the relationship between image-making and cultural encounters at regional and trans-national levels, and the role of visual artifacts in the making of real and imaginative geographies. The module will begin with 16th century Jesuit missionaries propagating their “universal history” with, amongst many things, world maps, and end with an investigation of modern Chinese artists’ visions of an “East” in the global context. Themes will be organized into two or three week classes, which are designed to stimulate students into making comparisons and parallels. This course will examine a range of visual artifacts including visual technologies, such as cartography and photography, and how these have changed the ways in which we look. Although the emphasis is on space and territory, the visual themes investigated will also include portraits and architecture, as well as landscapes. There will be a one hour lecture with a one hour seminar to discuss images, themes and readings held later during the week.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2047. Arts of India (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the painting and sculpture of the Indian subcontinent and considers the impact of religion, politics, and patronage on art. Through an interdisciplinary approach, we focus on Buddhist and Vedic/Hindu art in its religious context and the later art patronage of the Muslim and Mughal rulers. The course will conclude by investigating the art of colonized India through the twentieth century. The various styles of Indian art are discussed in their respective historical, religious, social, and cultural contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2048. Arts of Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys Japanese visual arts from prehistory to the eighteenth century. Lectures are chronologically arranged under thematic headings of: religion and politics, cross-cultural influences and urban arts. We will be looking at a diverse range of materials including painting, sculptures, prints, textiles and ceramics. The aim is to establish a solid critical foundation of Japanese art history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2049. Art and gender in China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This class will examine the role of gender in the production, consumption, and interpretation of Chinese art. Classes are chronologically organized into three broad time periods covering different themes each week. Topics will include the coding of landscapes and bird-and-flower paintings as gendered spaces, and the construction of male and female socio-political identities in portraits and figure paintings. The course is not intended to provide an overview of Chinese art, but a base that can challenge traditional perceptions of what constitutes masculinity and femininity. The broad historical frame will address how socio-cultural factors influencing gender roles in the arts, culture, and society changed over time. It will, more importantly, look at how these issues intersect with questions of ethnicity, social hierarchy, economic and cultural capital, and nationalism.

Prerequisites: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2051. Art, politics, and society in modern China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will provide an overview of the developments in the visual arts in China from the 19th century to the present day, and will relate them to broader changes in Chinese politics and society. It will look at the ways in which the physical materiality of objects, as well as the social roles of its makers and audiences, changed over this period. A broad range of visual objects will be covered in this course including paintings in different formats and mediums, architecture, graphics and photography. Our fundamental concern will be to examine art's role in the rapidly changing world of modern China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2052. Architecture of South and Southeast Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a study of the developments in architecture in South and Southeast Asia. It will offer a selective overview of the styles, theories, and structures of architecture from antiquity to the twenty-first century. This course utilizes a thematic approach aimed at understanding the relationships between private property, public authority, and power as articulated in architecture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2053. Beauties and the beasts: Song and Yuan painting (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the relationships between imagery and text from the late Tang to the Yuan dynasty. In addition, the rise of “genre painting” or paintings of the lives of the commoners in this time period will be explored. Various literary traditions associated with the appreciation of Chinese paintings will be central to our investigation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2054. Visual culture of modern Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Eighteenth century Edo (now known as Tokyo) was the world's largest city. It was the military headquarters of the shoguns, a cosmopolitan city with a vibrant milieu of merchants, samurai, actors, courtesans, craftsmen and artists. By the nineteenth century, it was transformed into Tokyo, the imperial capital with a reformed political infrastructure. This course will focus on the artistic traditions that were transformed and transplanted from Edo into Tokyo. Topics of discussion will include the revival of classical imagery, popular culture during the eighteenth century, the conflicts brought on by the opening of Japan to the West in the nineteenth century, the reconstruction of Tokyo and its artistic practices after the World War Two, and impact of Japanese architecture, design and popular culture over the past twenty years.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2055. Crossing cultures: China and the outside world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will begin with the 16th century and the arrival of the Jesuits and continue to the present. It will examine artists' responses to the outside world and investigate how cultural exchanges were formed, merged, and clashed. Topics covered will include western science and local culture in the Ming dynasty, Manchu identity and Qing expansionism, export trade art, western impact on prints, intra-Asian paintings, and visions of the "East" in the global art world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2056. Museum studies workshop (6 credits)**

This course aims to give students an introduction to the principles and practices of working in an art museum. The course will be conducted by curatorial staff of the University Museum and Art Gallery. Students majoring in Fine Arts will be given first preference, but other students fulfilling the prerequisite may apply. Any students wishing to apply for admission to FINE3004 in their third year should take this course in their second year.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2057. Arts of West, Central and Southern Africa (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores some of the artistic practices and material culture found in West, Central and Southern Africa. It provides a general introduction to the topic and offers a selective overview of the diversity of practices, styles and mediums. The course is organized geographically beginning with West Africa; from the earliest evidence for sculptural traditions and the rise of centralized structures of authority, to the variety and richness of the artistic and material culture traditions found in this region. It proceeds on to Central and Southern African communities and concludes with some examples of contemporary art practice and the ways in which the twentieth century has been a time of great change for visual culture in Africa.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2058. Cambodia, Java, and Bali: kingship, exchange, and modernity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores both traditional and modern art in Cambodia, Java, and Bali. We start by assessing how cosmology and kingship are represented physically in the architecture and sculpture of the Khmer capital of Angkor, followed by an examination of how Angkor influenced other areas of Southeast Asia and vice versa. We then turn to Java and look at Hindu-Buddhist ideas as reflected in the art of the pre-Islamic era. The arrival of the Muslims had a significant impact on the production of art and we will analyze the nature of that influence. The section on modern art will examine how Indonesians have synthesised past and present material. The Bali section will also start with a study of traditional Balinese concepts and art, including textiles. We will then look at the impact of tourism on the production of modern Balinese art.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2059. Tradition and innovation in mainland Southeast Asian art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the artistic production of three mainland Southeast Asian countries - Thailand, Burma, and Vietnam - for elements of tradition and innovation. We will analyze and compare the traditional forms of architecture, sculpture, and painting for continuing themes and new developments, leading to an understanding of the social, political, and religious ideas underpinning Thai, Burmese, and Vietnamese art. We will also explore how a multitude of influences, ranging from the historical past through European colonialism and globalization, have affected modern and contemporary art. The main thread of analysis will be how Southeast Asians have visually utilised historical references, what new elements have been incorporated over time, and how they have selected both past and present themes for inclusion in art.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2061. Contemporary Chinese art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the broad historical development of contemporary Chinese art in relation to its socio-political contexts. Emphasis will be put on major exhibitions and artworks made and exhibited at different stages of its development. In addition to stylistic characteristics, issues concerning art censorship, art criticism and art market will be explored. Works made by local and cross-border artists will be examined.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2062. Land and garden in Chinese art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the history and significance of land and its depiction in China from the fifth to the twentieth century. We will examine the cultural circumstances that promoted landscape to one of the most important subjects in Chinese art. Emphasis is placed on historical and interpretive issues that are important to the analysis of artwork and meaning.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Not to be taken with FINE2050.

**FINE2063. Ink painting in Muromachi Japan (1392-1564) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will outline various phases of ink painting which flourished in Japan especially during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. The origins, developments and trends of Muromachi ink painting, and its roles in culture will be assessed. Major artists and their works will be examined closely in relation to political, cultural, and social contexts.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1006 or FINE1008.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2064. Introduction to the arts of Southeast Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course reviews the world of Southeast Asian art from its earliest beginnings through the present. Through a combination of lectures, group work, and readings, the students will examine the belief systems, trade connections, aesthetic environments, and historical factors that have influenced the production of art in both mainland and island Southeast Asia. By studying specific monuments and groups of art works, the students will come to an understanding of how art was interpreted and used by Southeast Asians.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2065. Introduction to Islamic art and architecture (6 credits)**

Since the advent of Islam in 622 CE, people from a vast region from Spain to Central Asia, from Russia to India and to Sub-Saharan Africa have constructed Muslim identities through artistic expressions. This course will familiarize students with visual material from the Islamic world for the last fourteen centuries, including the Dome of the Rock, the Mughal albums of paintings, and Iranian cinema. It covers issues of text/image, socio-political and religious functions of art, and cross-cultural visibility. By reading both secondary and primary sources, students will come to broad understandings of Islamic art history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2066. Colonial and postcolonial Muslim visual cultures (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

With the success of European Imperialism, the three giant early modern empires in the Islamic world - Ottomans, Mughals, and Safavids - collapsed, and their vast territories in Asia came under foreign governance. During this colonial period from the seventeenth-century Dutch East India Company to twentieth-century WWII, Europe and the Islamic world engaged in political discourses through visual media. This course examines Muslim visual cultures before and after the fall of colonial power. Topics to be covered include colonial and postcolonial collecting, gift-giving, Orientalism, tourism, representations of Muslims by themselves and by others (including a special focus on Muslim as terrorist) along with an exploration of varying artistic media including photography, architecture, cinema, constructions of national identity through architecture, and presentation at World Fairs.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2067. Architecture of East Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Architecture is one of the most visible means for our interaction with the physical environment. It is a discipline that combines art, function, and public display. This course explores the history of East Asian architecture from early times to the present with an emphasis on religious, cultural, economic, and political contexts. Lectures provide a survey of important architectural constructions of China, Japan, Korea, Mongolia, and Tibet. Key structures including urban planning are taken as case studies for in depth discussion. Emphasis is placed on learning how to read the functional considerations and the symbolic meanings of works of architecture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2068. Global cultures of Chinese ceramics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Ceramics made in China have an exceptionally long and continuous history of production and consumption which makes this perhaps the most influential ceramic tradition in the world. Widely traded since the Han period, Chinese-style glazes, forms, decorative motifs and manufacturing techniques can be seen in ceramics from diverse locations around the world and encounters with Chinese ceramics through trade have had an impact on social and cultural activities beyond China. This course examines the history and development of Chinese ceramics from a transnational perspective. Topics to be covered include: the history of ceramics in China, their trade and consumption in three regions beyond China: East Asia, Europe and Britain, the Middle East, the transfer of Chinese ceramic designs and technology to other ceramic traditions and the reception of Chinese ceramics globally.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2069. Exhibiting art and design in the museum: history, theory and practice (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Exhibitions and the display of objects to the public are a form of museum practice which interprets cultures, concepts and things. From the first major public exhibitions in 19<sup>th</sup> – century Europe to current displays around the world, exhibitions can be seen as a form of cultural activity which has been used to promote and shape the reception of nations, artists, institutions and products. This course will examine exhibitionary activity from both historical and critical perspectives, using examples from international and local sites. Topics covered will include the history of museum displays, exhibitions as a form of object interpretation, and the critical examination of the function, significance, and execution of exhibitions from concept to installation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Third Year**

The following courses are open only to third year students and will be taught in a seminar format except for FINE3007.

**FINE3004. Museum studies internship (6 credits)**

The internship will allow a limited number of students to work with senior staff of the University Museum and Art Gallery or other art institutions in Hong Kong on a project relating to professional museological or curatorial practice. Admission will be by interview.

Prerequisite: FINE2056.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE3006. Art history methodology workshop (6 credits)**

This course is taught in the form of seminars. It requires active participation from students, and is intended for those in their third year who have already engaged seriously with art history during their previous study. It aims to deepen students' understanding of the methods used by art historians by introducing various debates about interpretation. Students are expected to write a paper concerning an area of art history or visual culture of their own choice, in which they demonstrate their sensitivity to questions of method.

Prerequisite: Students should have taken at least three Fine Arts courses, at least two of which should be 2000-level courses.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE3007. Independent research project (6 credits)**

Students with a focus of interest and the approval of a teacher may undertake independent study to produce a research paper under the supervision of a teacher.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE3008. Perspectives in Asian art (6 credits)**

This seminar will focus in depth on one area of Asian art and visual culture, with an emphasis on art historical strategies. Students will prepare a seminar paper drawing on knowledge of a certain area, but will further be encouraged to demonstrate a critical approach to broader methodological and theoretical issues.

Prerequisite: Students should have taken at least three Fine Arts courses, at least two of which should be 2000-level courses.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE3009. Perspectives in Western art (6 credits)**

This seminar will focus in depth on one area of Western art and visual culture, with an emphasis on art historical strategies. Students will prepare a seminar paper drawing on knowledge of a certain area, but will further be encouraged to demonstrate a critical approach to broader methodological and theoretical issues.

Prerequisite: Students should have taken at least three Fine Arts courses, at least two of which should be 2000-level courses.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HISTORY**

Courses in the Department of History are open both to B.A. students who wish to major in History and to other students in the Faculty of Arts who are not taking, or intending to take, History as a major. Students from the Faculty of Social Sciences and other faculties are also welcome in most courses offered by the Department of History, and an A-Level examination result in History is **not** a prerequisite for any first-year course.

**First-year Courses**

Students intending to major/minor in History must take at least one first-year History course.



**HIST1008. The world at war (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

By the end of 1941, the entire world was engulfed in war, a war from which the world would emerge in ruins and permanently altered. This course surveys the origins and the course of the Second World War. Here we will examine fascism, national socialism, and German and Japanese expansionism policies. Much attention will focus on the military struggle between 1939 and 1945: tactics, strategy, and major battles. Then we will also examine the occupation policies of the New Order, collaboration and resistance, mass bombings, social change, the concentration camps and the Holocaust in some details. The course will conclude with an analysis of war-time diplomacy, which was the origins of the Cold War.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1010. An introduction to European history and civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the development of European civilization from its earliest beginnings in the Fertile Crescent through the classical age of Ancient Greece, and the Roman Empire, to the Middle Ages, the Renaissance, the Reformation, the Enlightenment and the French Revolution. Selected highlights from these topics will be treated in the lectures and seminars and coursework assignments will seek to establish linkages between modern western civilization and its historical foundations. This course is valuable for history students, but should also appeal to others studying literature, art, music or philosophy. It will be especially useful for European Studies Majors. All students are welcome.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1012. From imperial to colonial: Nineteenth century Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course starts with looking at Hong Kong under Qing rule. It then goes on to examine the impact of British colonialism on this tiny outlying Chinese territory. Attention will be given to the colonial administration, the social scene, and the economic development of the new British colony until the end of the nineteenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1014. The early modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course offers a broad historical survey which aims at introducing students to the various interactions between the major civilizations of the world from the time of the European Renaissance until the early phase of the Industrial Revolution. The geographical coverage of the course will include Europe, Asia, the Middle East, Africa and the Americas. The course will adopt a comparative approach where possible and will be particularly concerned with the theme of globalization. This course does not aim to be a comprehensive survey of all aspects of the history of the early modern world, but it does range widely in attempting to acquaint students with important developments in the areas of culture, religion, politics, society, and the world economy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST1015. Foundations of modern China: Dimensions of Qing history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course starts with a series of survey lectures that cover political, institutional, social, economic, intellectual, and diplomatic trends from 1644 and 1912. These survey lectures will be followed by an in-depth study of two particular themes of Qing history, to be decided each year by the teachers who lecture this course. The historical significance of early, mid, and late Qing will be highlighted.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1016. The modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course offers a broad historical survey which aims at introducing students to the major developments in world history, in a period from the late eighteenth century to the present during which the world became increasingly interdependent. The course will adopt a comparative approach where possible and will be particularly concerned with the theme of globalization. This course does not aim to be a comprehensive survey of all aspects of the history of the modern world, but its range allows students to acquaint themselves with important developments in the areas of culture, religion, politics, society and the world economy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1017. Modern Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores the history of Hong Kong since the early 1800s from several angles: British imperial history, Chinese history, world history, and as a place with its own identity. Topics include: the opium wars, law and the administration of justice, gender and colonialism, Hong Kong and Chinese nationalism, the Japanese occupation, the 1967 disturbances, Hong Kong identity, the fight against corruption, the Sino-British negotiations and the retrocession to Chinese sovereignty, and developments since 1997. The goals of the course are to familiarize students with the history of Hong Kong, introduce the ways in which historians have approached this history, explore how Hong Kong's past has shaped its present, and help students learn to read and write analytically. No previous knowledge of history or Hong Kong is required.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1018. Europe in the long nineteenth century, 1789-1914 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the development of European nation states from the French Revolution to the outbreak of the First World War. It focuses on political, economic and social structures, on important historical events, and on various ideologies and national identities of the European powers Britain, France, Germany, the Habsburg Empire, the Ottoman Empire, and Russia. It will also deal with the histories of smaller countries such as Belgium, the Netherlands, Poland, and Switzerland. The course will adopt a comparative approach where possible and will be particularly concerned with presenting similarities and differences in the historical development of European nation states in the long nineteenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## Second and Third Years

All candidates for the degree of B.A. or from any faculty may enroll in the second or third-year courses offered by the Department of History.

Second and third-year courses in the Department of History are divided into Survey Courses and Seminar Courses. Survey Courses are intended to introduce the history of a geographic area, a country, an event, a historical problem or theme in a specific period. These courses will normally involve two lectures per week. Seminar Courses involve more advanced study of special topics in History and a higher level of training in the use of primary documents or historiography. These courses will normally offer no more than one lecture per week, but will also include one hour of seminar, tutorial or workshop classes each week.

In the second and third-years students may select from a large number of History courses. These courses are open to students who have declared either a History major or a History minor, but the Department of History also welcomes students from other programmes who wish to take one or more courses in History. History courses are also offered as a component of the various interdisciplinary programmes offered by the Faculty of Arts and the Faculty of Social Sciences. Visiting and exchange students are welcome to take any of the History courses listed in the Syllabus. We also welcome students from other faculties who wish to take History courses as part of the University's broadening requirement.

## The History Major

The History Department offers both a major and a minor in History, but some of its courses are also included as part of the various interdisciplinary major and minor programmes.

To declare a major in History a student must complete at least one 6-credit first year History course and not less than 54 credits of second/third year History courses, including HIST2999. **Doing history** (6 credits) normally in the First Semester of the Second Year. Of these 54 credits, at least 12 credit units must be in Asian History (China, Hong Kong, Japan or Southeast Asia) and at least 12 credits must be in Western History (America and Europe). This requirement may be met by taking either Survey or Seminar courses. The courses taken must also include at least 12 credit units of Seminar Courses, but students are encouraged to take more than the minimum number of Seminar Courses.

Students may enrol in the Department's 'English in the Discipline' course. This course provides a learning experience which combines English enhancement with the acquisition of disciplinary knowledge and skills.

History majors are encouraged to enrol in **HIST2065. Workshop in historical research** and **HIST3015. Theory and practice of history**, but these are not requirements for the major. Any student who is interested in pursuing postgraduate studies in History is also encouraged to take these two courses and either **HIST3017. Dissertation elective** (12 credits) or **HIST3023. History research project** (6 credits).

Third year students taking a major or minor in History who fulfil the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years. Capstone courses which may be available to students include **HIST2075. Directed Reading** (6 credits), **HIST2200. Europe fieldtrip** (6 credits), **HIST3015. The theory and practice of history** (6 credits), **HIST3017. Dissertation elective** (12 credits), **HIST3023. History Research Project** (6 credits) and **HIST3026. History publishing** (12 credits).

## The History Minor

A minor in History shall consist of not less than 30 credit units of second and third-year courses from the History Syllabus. As a prerequisite, 6 credit units in a first-year course are required.

---

### Second-year Course

#### **HIST2999. Doing history (6 credits)**

This course teaches basic methods of historical research to students who are history majors in their second year. Lectures will introduce the context in which have developed the methods that historians use to study documents, process information, organize information, and write historical papers. Seminars will investigate each of these topics in detail.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: This course is a required course for the History major.

Non Permissible Combination: HIST1013 Doing History

---

### Second and Third-year Courses

**SURVEY COURSES.** Survey courses will normally be offered by the Department of History in alternate academic years. Students should consult the Department of History Office to find out which surveys are to be offered each year.

The following courses are classified as “survey courses” and are counted towards the major and minor in History: CHIN2225 and CHIN2226. Please refer to the Chinese syllabus for details.

---

#### **HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, Part I: From revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the political, social, economic, intellectual and diplomatic history of China from the last decade of Manchu rule to the Communist victory in 1949. Attention will be drawn to the historical forces of continuity and change, and to the themes of nationalism, modernization, militarism, democracy and revolution.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **HIST2004. Twentieth-century China, Part II: From revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the consolidation of Communist power, the dynamics and constraints of revolutionary ideology, and the PRC's quest for modernization and great-power status. Attention will be drawn to the Chinese Communists' methods of thought and work, and to the historical forces of continuity and change.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2005. History of Hong Kong, Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Beginning with the pre-British situation, the course proceeds to examine the establishment of colonial rule, the development of Chinese social institutions such as the Tung Wah Hospital, the emergence of Chinese revolutionaries led by Sun Yat-sen, the anti-colonial boycotts culminating in the general strike of 1925-26, and the events leading up to World War II. Throughout, emphasis is placed on thematic and interpretive concerns.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2006. History of Hong Kong, Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the extraordinary development of Hong Kong after World War II. Hong Kong's relations with China, rapid industrialization in the 1950's and post-industrialization in the 1980's, the interdependence of real estate and financial development, immigration and cultural identity, social problems and riotous disorders, contrasts between modernization and westernization are major thematic concerns. Emphasis will be placed on developing interpretive understanding of historical events.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2011. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part I: 1780-1850 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many of the characteristics of contemporary Europe have their origins in the nineteenth century: urbanization and industrial change; rapid and misunderstood social development; the centrality of Germany; nationalism, which threatens to pull apart nations and the multi-national empire of Russia; new alliance patterns that are not so new; revolutionary political change; the development of a true civil society; and the threat from ultra-right-wing populist groups.

In this course we will cover European developments from the origins of the French Revolution through the Revolutions of 1848. Major topics discussed will include the Industrial Revolution, the 'isms' such as liberalism, conservatism, and nationalism, the Revolutions of 1848, and foreign affairs.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2012. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many of the characteristics of contemporary Europe have had their origins in the nineteenth century. Today Europe has to deal with several of the problems World War I either failed to resolve or in itself caused.

In this course we will cover European developments from the unifications that transformed Central Europe up to World War I. Major topics will include the second Industrial Revolution, socialism, social and cultural changes, reaction to those changes (anti-semitism and proto-fascism), imperialism, nationalism and liberation movements in Eastern Europe, *fin-de-siècle* Europe, the decline of the multi-national empires, and the origins of World War I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2013. Twentieth-century Europe, Part I: The European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This period can be seen as a Thirty Years' War fought over the problem of Germany, beginning with the First World War, 1914-18, and climaxing with the total defeat of Germany at the end of the Second World War, 1939-45. Tensions between the Great Powers were exacerbated by new ideologies such as Fascism, Nazism and Communism, which appeared in Europe as part of a general crisis in Western Civilization after the First World War. An attempt will be made to evaluate the debate between different schools of historians on what Fascism, Nazism and Communism signified. Finally one of the main aims of the course is to describe, and explain, the mass murders involving the deaths of millions carried out by a new breed of leaders such as Adolf Hitler and Joseph Stalin.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2014. Twentieth-century Europe, Part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

After the Second World War, Europe was divided into two camps, with Germany itself split into Western and Communist portions. The survey of the Western camp will focus on British, French and West German politics, social change, student revolts, and the growth of the consumer society and mass culture. In studying the 'Other Europe', the course will concentrate on the way Communism evolved and changed in the Soviet Union and its Eastern European empire, concluding with the dramatic popular revolutions that so suddenly toppled the Communist regimes in Eastern Europe in 1989 and the even more momentous collapse of Communism in the former Soviet Union in 1991. As the pace of change in the whole of Europe increased so dramatically in 1989, the course ends with a series of questions. What are the prospects for European unity, economically and politically? What role will the new unified Germany have in Europe? What are the prospects for Russia and the other republics that have emerged from the ruins of the Soviet Empire?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2015. The United States before 1900 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a general survey history of the United States from the colonial era up to 1900. Emphasis will be primarily on the nineteenth century. Key areas of focus include: industrialization and economic growth, urbanization, frontier communities, immigration, slavery, the Civil War, socio-political reform movements, and the Spanish-American War. This course is continued by **The United States in the twentieth century**, though the two courses can be taken separately.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2016. The United States in the twentieth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues the survey of United States history begun in **The United States before 1900**, though it can be taken separately. It traces the United States' response to its adjustment from an agrarian, small-scale society to a large-scale, urban, industrialized nation, characterised by large organizations. Concurrently, it covers the development into a global power with interests throughout the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2018. The foreign relations of China since 1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies developments in China's foreign relations after 1949, with reference to historical influences, ideological premises, and practical political, strategic, and economic considerations. Special attention is given to the interaction between theory and practice in China's foreign relations, the evolution of the impact of China's foreign policy on international political and vice versa, and the assessment of major paradigms.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2021. Nineteenth century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys developments within the Russian Empire from the duel between Alexander I and Napoleon through the Revolution of 1905, the dress rehearsal for the Revolution of 1917 which destroyed Tsarism. This course focuses on internal developments, rather than on foreign policy; and thus includes topics such as Slavophilism vs. Westernizers, the tsarist reaction, and then reform under Nicholas I and Alexander II, the revolutionary movement from the Decembrists to the Bolsheviks, industrialization, the Nationalities Question, and the peasantry before and after Emancipation. This course requires no prior knowledge of European history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2024. A century of business in Hong Kong, 1842-1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course traces the business history of Hong Kong after it became a British colony until the Communist Takeover of China in 1949. The topics covered in the course include Hong Kong as a centre of opium trade, the development of Western businesses, the mode and practice of Chinese businesses such as the Nam Pak Hong, relations between Western and Chinese businesses, the impact of Chinese nationalism, the world wars, the Great Depression, and communist control in China on Hong Kong business.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2025. British Hong Kong and China 1895-1945 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course follows the development of the relations between British Hong Kong and China from 1895 to 1945. On the one hand, it was a relation of confrontation, with Chinese governments increasingly using the slogan of anti-imperialism as a political weapon against foreign powers. This affected China's policies towards Hong Kong. On the other hand, it was a relation with benefits for both sides. When China was in political turmoil, people from the mainland migrated to Hong Kong. This had significant effect on Hong Kong's economic and cultural developments. This course analyzes the interaction between these two seemingly contradictory relations, with special emphasis on the rise of the position of the Chinese in the colony.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2034. An introduction to the history of education in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will provide students with the opportunity to relate educational developments in Hong Kong to contemporary opinion and other socio-economic pressures. It has been designed to introduce students to the perspectives, methods, and resources of history as they can be applied to educational matters and not merely to present a set of non-dispute-worthy “facts” about past Hong Kong schools. As such, it is essentially a form of social history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2035. The Bauhinia and the Lotus: Culture and history of the two SARs (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Prior to the Opium War, Macao was the major theatre for the first encounter between China and the West. After Hong Kong had been ceded to Great Britain by The Nanjing Treaty, Hong Kong soon replaced Macao as the centre for Sino-Western cultural and technical interchange.

Even though before 1997 and 1999 both Hong Kong and Macao were under the administration of Western countries, both have remained a predominantly Chinese society with their own unique heritage and history.

The aim of this course is to introduce to the student the development of Hong Kong and Macao's history and cultural heritage. It emphasizes the role and function of Hong Kong and Macao history in modern and contemporary Chinese history and its cultural interactions with the West.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2038. Germany, 1871-1990: From unification to reunification (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Germany, the largest country in Western Europe, needed a long time to build up a sovereign national state and to develop a common national identity. After the unification was achieved in 1871, internal and external political struggles led the country in two devastating wars in 1914 and 1939. Following the Second World War two independent German republics, controlled by their respective superpowers USA and USSR, developed into a capitalist and communist society. Reunification was finally achieved in 1989/90 by the collapse of the Soviet power in Central Europe. The course surveys the most important developments within the German Imperial Empire, the Weimar Republic, Nazi Germany, and the Federal Republic and German Democratic Republic. We will study topics such as conservatism, liberalism, nationalism, imperialism, and socialism, the two World Wars, and concentrate on the developments and changes of the different political and economic systems in modern German history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2062. From empire to EU: Culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)**

The course explores British politics, culture and society from the eve of World War I to the dawn of the third millennium. We will analyze and seek to understand some of the fundamental transformations that have occurred over the last century examining a number of prominent themes, including party politics, Britain and Europe, empire and decolonization, and domestic social transformations. Additionally, we will look closely at how the fortunes of different social groups evolved across the period, focussing in particular on ethnic minorities, women and young people.



This will be an issues-based course, exploring themes of 20th century British history in relation to the wider European context and exploring how they have had an impact on the nature of British and European society today. The subject matter of the course will be shaped around the study of the evolving political system, the effect of industrial (and post-industrial) change on contemporary society, and the relationship of Britain to its former empire, to Europe, and the rest of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2063. Europe and modernity: Cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we look at key social and cultural aspects of European ‘modernity’ in the nineteenth and twentieth century, exploring in particular the way Europeans from all kinds of backgrounds were defined and defined themselves in relation to work, leisure, race, gender, regions and cities. We look at the impact of new forms of cultural expression such as advertising, cinema, sport and leisure, as well as the identities (of age, class, gender, race and ethnicity) which Europeans adopted and rejected in their pursuit of ways of belonging within the cultural parameters of urban modernity. In relation to this we will consider expressions of enthusiasm for ‘the modern,’ as well as outbursts of dissatisfaction or irritation with modern civilization, expressed not just in aesthetic forms but also in violence against those identified as ‘outsiders.’

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2065. Workshop in historical research (6 credits)**

The research skills and methodologies used by historians are based on the critical analysis of primary and secondary sources. Competency in these skills and an acquaintance with the various methodologies of the historian are central to advanced studies in the historical discipline, but these skills and methodologies are also highly transferable to the workplace. In this course, students will work in small groups on a research project. Learning will be through directed group discussions and coordinated individual research tasks. The course will introduce students to a wide range of historical sources, equip them with the skills to analyze and interpret those sources, and will also encourage students to develop leadership and team-work roles in solving real historical problems.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2068. The intellectual history of twentieth-century China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course follows the thematic approach, with attention paid to both the intellectual leaders and the intellectual developments in China during the twentieth century. The leaders include Liang Qichao, Cai Yuanpei, Chen Duxiu, Hu Shi, Li Dazhao, Lu Xun, Gu Hongming, Lin Shu, Liang Shuming, Tao Xisheng, Chen Yinke, Chen Lifu, Xiong Shili, Zhang Wentian, Qian Mu, etc. The discussion of the intellectual waves focuses on such themes as traditionalism, cultural conservatism, liberalism, westernization, modernization, and Marxism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2069. The history of American popular culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

From its inception as a nation, the people of the United States have been educated and entertained via modes of vernacular or popular culture. This course moves chronologically from the 18th century to

the present looking at various expressions of popular culture as they developed and gained in popularity among the American public. As the course progresses, we will look for connections between popular culture in the U.S. and Asia, particularly in Hong Kong. Drawing on diverse samples of historical evidence (newspapers, magazines, advertisements, circus and vaudeville playbills, political cartoons, radio and television programs, films, and Internet materials, etc.) we will explore difference and common ground between various historical eras and their use of popular culture. Issues to be considered include: The definition of popular culture; Connections between popular culture and the construction of national identity, race, class, gender, ethnicity, and religion; The significance of popular culture in processes such as Americanization/globalization; The importance of looking historically at the way popular culture helps shape and is shaped by particular events.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2072. A history of modern European warfare (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will survey the evolution of modern warfare through the study of selected episodes in European (an Europe's two extensions – Russia/Soviet Union and the United States) military, naval, and aerial history from the dynastic and commercial wars of the eighteenth century, the French Revolutionary and Napoleonic Wars, the limited wars during the nineteenth century, the colonial wars, World War I, World War II, the proxy wars during the Cold War, Korea, Vietnam, through the war in Iraq earlier this year. While emphasis will be given to the larger conflicts, such as the two World Wars, attention will be given to less familiar but still important conflicts, such as the Crimean War, the Boer War, the Russian Civil War, the Spanish Civil War, Algeria and Palestine, and the Afghan Wars. The topics discussed will include causes of wars, technological changes, military strategies and tactics, social and economic changes, genocides, intelligence and espionage, and the use of ideology and propaganda in the conduct of warfare.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2073. Prussia in the age of absolutism and reform, 1648-1815 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Brandenburg-Prussia and the Hohenzollern Dynasty dominated the period of German history between the end of the Thirty Years' War and the French Revolution. Under the Great Elector and the Prussian Kings, Prussia became a military and political power within Europe, demonstrating its strength in many European wars. It also practiced mercantilism, religious tolerance and an enlightened absolutism. The reign of King Frederick the Great (1740-1786) is marked by wars, economic initiative, and the promotion of Enlightenment ideas. Prussia's capital Berlin became a European centre of science and culture in those years. During the Napoleonic period, the country was able to start a reform movement that paved the way for a modern German nation state.

The course will be organized around such themes as: political rivalries and wars in the 17th and 18th centuries; economic, social and intellectual changes in early modern Europe and their effects on Brandenburg-Prussia; mercantilism; Enlightenment; absolutism and enlightened absolutism; religious toleration; promotion of sciences by academies; the development of Berlin and Potsdam as royal residences; the defeat of the Prussian army by Napoleon; the Prussian Reform Movement of Stein and Hardenberg; and the War of Liberation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2076. Germany and the Cold War (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

During the Cold War period, Germany was divided into two independent states for more than forty years: The western-oriented Federal Republic of Germany (FRG) and the eastern-oriented German Democratic Republic (GDR). Under the auspices of the respective superpowers, USA and USSR, the Bonn and the East Berlin governments developed their own political and economic systems but also a distinct way of life in society and culture. In the international scene, the FRG was a founding member of the European Communities and became one of their staunchest supporters, while the GDR found itself reduced to satellite status inside the Soviet-dominated Eastern Bloc. The 'German Question' remained open until the sudden downfall of the socialist-communist East Berlin regime in 1989 and the peaceful reunification in 1990, events, which also marked the end of the Cold War in Europe.

The course will not only treat Germany as a case study of the Cold War period but will also deal extensively with important phases, milestones and persons in the history of the divided country in a comparative approach.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2077. Eating history: Food culture from the 19th century to the present (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to selected aspects of the study of food culture through historical analysis. We will discuss examples of food preparation, distribution, marketing, and consumption from the early 19th Century to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2078. Renaissance Europe 1453-1648 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The Intellectual upheavals of the Renaissance and Reformation changed the cultural and religious outlook of the whole European continent and opened the way for the emergence of the modern European state. This course therefore begins by considering the classical background to the Renaissance in Europe and seeks to explain how the intellectual changes of the fifteenth and early-sixteenth centuries contributed to the awakening of religious dissent in the 1520s. These developments are placed in the context of the general political history of the period and the course traces their impact through to the end of the Thirty Years' War.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2079. Early modern Europe 1648-1789 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines a crucial period of European history in which the emergence of the modern state, the birth of capitalism, and the expansion of European influence into the American and Asian hemispheres laid the foundations of the modern world. While the course concentrates primarily on political changes in Europe between the Thirty Years' War and the French Revolution, considerable attention will also be paid to social, economic and cultural developments in this period. This course therefore provides a backdrop to the events of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries which have helped to shape modern Europe.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2085. The history of modern sexual identity and discourse (6 credits)**

This course focuses on two 'new sciences' arising in the late nineteenth century that have shaped the modern understanding of sexual behavior -- sexology and psychoanalysis. It looks at key thinkers who pioneered sexology such as Havelock Ellis, Edward Carpenter, Richard von Krafft-Ebing, and Marie Stopes alongside the acknowledged founder of psychoanalysis Sigmund Freud. It will investigate primary sources in sexual science that have been subject to censorship and not generally available, until recently, for comparative study with Freudian psychosexual discourse. It will consider the historiographical debate (particularly among gay and feminist historians) as to whether these early investigators of sexology and psychoanalysis formulated progressive or repressive definitions of sexuality. It will explore the far-reaching consequences that these thinkers had on attitudes to the body and perceptions of gender and sexual difference.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2086. Bismarck: The Iron Chancellor (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Otto von Bismarck, a member of the Prussian nobility, began his political career as a conservative deputy of the Prussian diet, became Minister-President and served as Chancellor of the new German Empire. He was regarded as one of the leading European statesmen of his time. During his life span from 1815 to 1898, dramatic upheavals in political, constitutional, economic and social history took place in Prussia and in other parts of Germany, which had a deep impact on European history in the 19th and early 20th centuries. Therefore, the course will not deal with Bismarck's personality and career stations alone but will also study the German Confederation and the German Empire, the Revolutions of 1848-49, the Unification Wars with Denmark, with Austria and with France, German domestic and foreign policies since 1871, and major developments that led into the First World War.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2091. The British Empire (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the history of the British Empire from the late eighteenth century to the end of the twentieth century. The British Empire once spanned so much of the globe that it is impossible to understand the history of the modern world (including Hong Kong) without considering the role of British colonialism and imperialism. Topics include: the cultural and material foundations and the economic, political, and social consequences of empire; the relationship between metropole and periphery; collaboration and resistance; the dynamics of race, gender, and class; the relationship between empire and art; new national and local identities; decolonization, and independence; and the legacies of empire. The goals of the course are to familiarize students with the history of the British Empire; introduce them to the ways in which historians have approached this history; and help them learn to read and write analytically.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2092. The United States and Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a survey course covering U.S. relations with Asia, focusing largely on the twentieth century, but reaching back earlier. Topics covered include: Principles of American foreign policy; the early U.S. China trade; the U.S. and the opening of Japan; the U.S. acquisition of Hawaii; the

Spanish-American War, 1898; the Open Door Notes and the Boxer Rebellion; U.S. Policy, Asia, and World War I; the Washington Conference System; U.S. Policy in the Philippines; the Coming of World War II; World War II in Asia; the Occupation of Japan; the U.S. and the Chinese Civil War; the Korean War and U.S. Pacific Strategy; the U.S. and Decolonization in Asia; the Vietnam War and Its International Context; Japanese and Korean Economic Revival; Richard Nixon's Opening to China; U.S. Responses to Tiananmen Square; the Impact of the Ending of the Cold War; the Effect of 9/11 and the War on Terror; U.S. Pacific Strategies in the Late Twentieth and Early Twenty-First Centuries. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2093. International history in the era of two World Wars (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course explores the history of international relations from 1914 to 1945. It aims to equip students with a comprehensive understanding of the causative factors that drove international politics in this crucial period of the twentieth century; to offer a firm basis for more advanced work in history and international relations; and to provide the factual grounding and conceptual apparatus necessary to understand the contemporary world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2096. The history of European business in China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The termination of the East India Company's monopoly on British trade with China in 1834 provoked a flow of European goods and capital into the Chinese market. Since then foreign enterprises of different forms were operating in various business sectors of China under the strong influence of political and economic factors that shaped European-Chinese relations from the 18th century until the beginning of the Communist era in 1949. In Hong Kong, an international merchant community including Chinese, Europeans, Americans, and Japanese, were active in developing this British colony into a flourishing entrepôt facilitating trading with and investment in China. This course intends to provide a long-term historical perspective and will examine the structure and organization of European, particularly British, German, and French business in China including Hong Kong, explore the links between European business and European diplomacy, and look to the impact of European business on China and the response of China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2103. Russian state and society in the 20th century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will analyze major themes and events shaping Russian history in the 20th century -- decline of the Russian empire, the October revolution, the Civil War, the rise of the Soviet Union and World War II, the Khrushchev era and the collapse of the Soviet state in 1991. The course will explore the role of individuals, institutions and trends behind radical transformation of Russian/Soviet society. Particular attention will be paid to the lives of ordinary people affected by state policies and socialist culture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2105. The rise of modern Japan, 1830s to 1950s (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Japan's rapid and remarkable transformation from a semi-feudal, isolated island nation to that of a centralised nation state, empire, and eventual global power has had a profound impact on its people, its Asian and Pacific neighbours, and indeed world history. This course explores that extraordinary evolution and in doing so will not only help students understand Japan's past, but also this nation today. By introducing the history of Japan from the mid 19th century to the mid 20th century, this course explores what the 'rise of modern Japan' has meant to its own people and that of others in Asia and the Pacific. Throughout, students will use Japan's modern emergence as a window into its political, social, cultural, environmental, economic, ideological, and military history. This course will focus considerable attention on how Japan's natural environment and this country's emergence as a nation state during a period of global industrialization and military expansion shaped the nature and trajectory of Japan's domestic transformations and its foreign relations. Finally, this course will help students understand more fully how Japan's modern emergence has changed its people, the nation, and the world in fundamental and sometimes profound ways.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2106. Imperial Japan: Its modern wars and colonial empire (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In the one hundred years following its birth as a nation state in 1868, Japan became directly involved in four major wars and countless military skirmishes. It also found itself indirectly involved in larger coalition-based conflicts in Korea and Vietnam. Between the 1870s and 1945, moreover, Japan amassed one of the largest colonial empires in history. This course explores both phenomena. Specifically, we will examine the causes behind the wars Japan fought, how these conflicts were waged, and what role they played in the rise, fall, and rebirth of Japan as a modern nation state. Rather than focus on warfare in a strictly military sense, however, this course will emphasize the broader political, ideological, diplomatic, economic, social and cultural aspects of Japan's wars. This course will also explore how and why Japan emerged as a major colonial power, how it ruled over and collaborated with its colonial subjects, and how it dealt with resistance to its empire from within and from the international community. Finally, this course will help students understand how and why Japan's military and colonial past has shaped Japan's history and how they continue to influence this country's relations with virtually every country in the Asia and Pacific region today.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2107. The Second World War in Asia and the Pacific, 1931-1952 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Few events in the modern history of Asia and the Pacific have been as important or as transformative as the Second World War. Our course explores the far-reaching effects that this conflict had on the state, society, and individuals in, and between Japan, China, the United States, the Soviet Union, and the British and French Empires. Importantly, this course will examine how this conflict helped change war—conceptually and in real terms—from a narrowly defined engagement between military forces to one that encompassed a 'total experience' involving the mobilization of virtually all segments of society. In this course we will also trace the interconnectedness between the transformation of war and the development of new technology, changed concepts of morality, 'just war,' and altered perceptions concerning the relationship between the state and society, the soldier and the civilian. Finally, this course will help students understand more fully how and why this war, and the numerous acts of barbarism that defined it, still influence relations today on personal, national, and international levels in Asia and the Pacific.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2108. Empire and the making of modern France (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the history of the French empire and its links with the making of identity in modern France. It focuses primarily upon modern French history as lived experience rather than on 'high politics' while also providing students with knowledge of key events, debates, theories and concepts relating to theories of postcolonialism. The starting point for the course is an understanding of metropolitan France as the centre of an imperial nation-state the 'civilising' cultural influence of which was understood to radiate out from Paris and large provincial cities to metropolitan France and overseas colonies beyond the *hégaxone*, transforming the peoples and societies with which it came into contact.

This course examines the multiple interrelationships developed between centre and periphery in the modern era. It foregrounds the dual influence of metropole and colonies upon imperialism. In doing so it engages with theories of race, identity, governance and culture. It traces the ways in which European identity was reconceptualised in the colonies and how the European presence contributed to the transformation of colonised societies. Examining the decolonization process, the course also takes up the controversial issues of how the history of the French empire has been written, and the French contribution to the development of postcolonial theory.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2109. Modern France: Society, politics and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course discusses key events in modern French history, from the revolution to the present day. It examines crucial moments in the evolution of French politics, culture and society, and the actors involved, explaining their meaning and significance for France, Europe and the World. The course examines the French contribution to modern culture, critical scholarly debates on the course of French history and the experiences of different sections of French society as they engaged with the dramatic changes of the modern era.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2110. China and the West (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course analyzes China's political, economic, and cultural relations with the Western Powers from the seventeenth century to 1949. Students will consider the changing structure of Chinese society in order to understand how Imperial China perceived the West. Additionally, this course addresses different strategies employed by the Western Powers to gain influence in China, ranging from missionary work and the opium trade to military invasion. In the twentieth century, Chinese people borrowed such foreign concepts as republican government, revolution, and nationalism to overthrow the Qing dynasty and to launch political, economic, and social reforms that were unprecedented in scale and human cost. This course aims to help students reflect on the perceived and real impact of Chinese and Western civilizations on each other.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2111. War and medicine in Europe, 1800-1950 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Warfare played a crucial role in shaping European modernity in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. If the experience of military conflict prompted medical innovation, reciprocally, scientific medicine

was central to the rationalization of the military. In 'War and Medicine in Europe, 1800-1950', students will explore interconnected developments in warfare and medicine, and consider how these developments contributed to the rise of the modern state and to the modernization of European societies. Particular attention will be paid to the relationship between war and infectious diseases. Topics covered will include the rise of pathogenic theories of medicine in the 1860s and 1870s, sanitary discipline, antiseptics and the discovery of penicillin. The course will begin with an account of the Napoleonic Wars and the reorganization of French medicine. It will end with the establishment of public healthcare provisions, notably the creation of the National Health Service in Britain, following World War II. Although the principal focus will be on Western Europe, there will be some discussion of colonial warfare and medicine. Throughout, emphasis will be placed on the ways in which military technologies and the drive for efficient management determined medical practice, as well as the manner in which changes in medical organization, together with shifting conceptions of health and disease prevention, impacted upon military policy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **HIST2112. Technologies of empire: Science, medicine and colonialism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores the emergence of bioscience and Western medicine as modern technologies that underpinned Europe's colonial expansion from the late eighteenth century to the twentieth century. Employing specific case studies, the course investigates the changing role of professionals involved in researching, developing, implementing and managing such medical technologies in a number of colonial contexts from Africa, to the Subcontinent, the Pacific and Southeast Asia, including Hong Kong. A key focus of the course is on the ways in which such technologies were integral to governmental rationalities and served to legitimate colonial rule.

Students will examine this topic through three overarching themes. First, the course considers the 'colonies' as sites of experimentation, where 'progressive' scientific and medical knowledge was tested in the field. Second, it examines the role of colonial encounters in the formation of Western technologies and traces the complex dynamics between indigenous knowledge and colonial authority, and between centre and periphery. Third, the course investigates the interrelationship between colonising processes and the body, in particular the ways that biomedical technologies were deployed to regulate populations through specific colonial institutions, namely hospitals, schools, prisons, workplaces and the military.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **HIST2113. New worlds: Exploring the history of Latin America (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second/third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the history of Latin America from its earliest settlement to the present day. Stretching from California to Patagonia, this region – which has also been eloquently called 'the first America' – encompasses former Spanish and Portuguese colonies, hundreds of native cultures, and its societies have resulted from an intermingling of Amerindian, European, African, and Asian cultures that began half a millennium ago. We will explore the indigenous civilizations of the Mayas, Incas and Aztecs, Iberian colonization and the varied responses of indigenous peoples, the emergence of multi-racial societies and hybrid cultures as the region became an early site of 'globalization', and the economic relations, revolutions, and frustrated dreams that have shaped the region's (under)development over the past century. Drawing on a wide array of media, including primary sources, novels, art, and film, this course will give students the tools to understand how this dynamic region has shaped world history. This course is also valuable to students of Spanish and Portuguese languages, literature, fine arts, and political science.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**HIST2114. China and the wider world since 1600 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

China has experienced remarkable transformation from the seventeenth century to the twentieth-first century. What has happened in China since 1600 has had a profound impact on both its own people and indeed the world. This course explores development of modern China from a perspective of international history and emphasizes the shared experiences the one quarter of mankind (Chinese) have had with the rest of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2115. Sports and Chinese society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with sports and its impact on Chinese society. Through an in-depth exploration of the roles of sports in defining the relationship between physical culture and Confucian culture, between men and women, between physical education and national identity, between gold medals and national pride, between politics and political legitimacy and international recognition, this course will highlight the roles of sports in Chinese national development, nationalism, and internationalism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2117. Nanyang: The Chinese experience in Southeast Asia (6 credits)**

This course provides a broad survey of Chinese settlement and society in Southeast Asia from the 15th century until the late 1970s. Through a comparative and transnational approach it introduces key themes of migration, diaspora, entrepreneurship and network. The social, economic and cultural aspects closely associated with the history of the Chinese overseas, such as early Chinese migration, dialect organizations, guilds, occupational structure, and Chinese merchant culture will be discussed. Students will also be encouraged to consider new and important questions still relevant to the Chinese in Southeast today. Was the Chinese story in this region as much about exploitation as entrepreneurship? Why did postcolonial governments across the region come to regard the Chinese as such a 'problem'? And ultimately, what has it meant to be Chinese in a rapidly changing cultural and political landscape?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2120. International trade and finance in the early-modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The modern economic world of international trade and finance is the result of developments which took place in Europe from the early Renaissance through to the Industrial Revolution. This course will examine the foundations of these developments focusing particularly on the pre-modern industrial base of Europe, the change in European trading patterns from a Mediterranean to an Atlantic dominance during the Renaissance, the growth of banking and other financial institutions in the early modern period, and the role of urbanization as a background to the major economic advances which took place during the Industrial Revolution. This course is open to students from all faculties.

Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination.

Note: Not taken HIST2027

**HIST2121. The rise and fall of Adolf Hitler (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Adolf Hitler was an extreme nationalist who wanted a reawakened, racially united Germany to expand eastward at the expense of the Slavs. After finally seizing power in 1933, he installed a totalitarian state wiping out all democratic institutions. The Nazi persecution of the Jews and occupation, exploitation and domination of much of continental Europe in World War II became one of the blackest chapters in the history of Europe. In our course we will not concentrate on Hitler alone but study the outcome of World War I and the revolution of 1918-19 on the mentality of the German people, consider the problems of the fledgling Weimar Republic, and discuss the era of fascism in Germany and Italy, the nazification of culture and society, the Holocaust, and German aggression against Europe in World War II.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Not taken HIST2037

---

**HIST2122. The history of sport in modern Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will focus on the development of modern sport in Europe (with a strong British focus), and develop historical themes of class, gender, age, 'race' and locality. Particular emphasis will be given to the history of sport in relation to themes such as nationalism, empire and public health, in addition to the role of the state, the media and business in shaping and controlling the nature of contemporary sport. In brief, the course examines how and why sport has been located at the interstices of gender, race and class and has produced, and been generated by, multiple and contested social identities.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Not taken HIST2042

---

**SEMINAR COURSES** Except for the Theory and Practice of History and the Dissertation elective, the seminar courses listed may not be offered every year. Students should consult the Department of History Office to find out which Seminars are to be offered each year.

The following courses are classified as "seminar courses" and are counted towards the major and minor in History: CHIN2235, CLIT2076, CLIT2093 and GEOG2060. Please refer to the Chinese, Comparative Literature and Geography syllabuses for details.

---

**HIST2031. History through film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course looks at the manner in which film has portrayed events in history, considering the degree to which film can enhance or be detrimental to our understanding of history.

Students may expect to gain some appreciation, not just of the films themselves, but of the degree to which any movie is the product of a certain historical period and reflect its values and preoccupations. This course should be particularly enlightening to students who taking other United States history courses and American Studies majors.

Students are expected to produce one term paper, a comparative study of at least two films, to participate in class discussions, and to make at least one presentation in class.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar course will explore themes and issues in women's history/gender history in the 19th and 20th century. By focusing on Hong Kong and the U.S., students will work within a comparative framework to explore difference and common ground between societies and selected historical periods. Topics include: varieties of women's reform movements, gender and World War II, and gender and economic transformation in the late 20th century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2046. The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Over the past century and a half, the majority of Europeans have become urban dwellers. On an individual, civic, national and international level, every aspect of social life has been influenced by this evolution. Consequently, the study of cities provides a powerful perspective upon European history. An essential part of the process of urbanization involved the allocation of urban open spaces to specific social and cultural functions. A key focus for public and private life, the city's open spaces – parks, gardens, streets and squares – had a fundamental influence upon the nature of urban living. As those in positions of power influenced the provision and purpose of these areas, important developments in European social, economic, cultural and political life were linked closely to the evolution of open spaces in cities.

In this course the changing use and allocation of urban open spaces and the evolution of meanings of public and private space will provide a lens through which the development of modern European cities will be analyzed. The importance of open spaces will be addressed with recourse to a number of key themes, including the 'greening' of cities of the nineteenth century, the construction of ideal Fascist and Socialist cities in the 1930s, functionalism and post-war reconstruction, and the 'sustainable city' of the 1990s. By the end of the course the students will not only be more familiar with historical approaches to urban 'space' but will also have received an introduction to the evolution of European cities and the changing cultural importance of public and private open spaces.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2048. The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Responses to and representations of young people provide a valuable insight into the values of the society and the culture which generated them. The aim of this course will be to compare changing experiences of growing up with evolving representations of the life-stages used to identify the young (childhood, adolescence and youth) in nineteenth- and twentieth century Europe. It therefore considers what it has meant to be young in different times and places. Through comparison of experiences and representations the course will reconsider the validity of terms used to describe the young, highlight the social, political and cultural motives for advancing different roles and representations young people and generate a broad insight into regional patterns of similarity and difference in the European history of this demographic group. This course aims to teach students the importance of the historical context in shaping young people's lives by addressing variables such as class, gender and race. It will also introduce students to a variety of different methodological and theoretical approaches to the topic.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses upon the emergence and development of the Cold War in the 1940s and 1950s. It takes into account the new scholarship based on evidence from former Soviet, Eastern European, and Chinese archives since the early 1990s. Students are expected to make extensive use of documentary sources.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2070. Stories of self: History through autobiography (6 credits)**

Who has felt authorized to narrate their life history and what has compelled them to tell explanatory stories that make sense of their lives? How accurate is it to call autobiography the history of the self? Do we encounter other histories or selves in autobiography? What is the history of autobiography and how do we read it? Historians reading autobiography for documentary evidence of the past and endeavouring to write about it objectively will find that their task is complicated by the autobiographer's subjective and often highly creative engagement with memory, experience, identity, embodiment, and agency. This course is intended for students who wish to explore the interdisciplinary links between autobiography, history, literature, and personal narrative, and to acquire strategic theories and cultural understanding for reading these texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2075. Directed reading (6 credits)**

The aims and objectives of this intensive reading course are to provide the opportunity for students to pursue a specialized topic with a faculty member. Throughout the semester, the student and teacher will consult regularly on the direction of the readings and on the paper or papers (not to exceed 5,000 words) that will demonstrate the student's understanding of the material. This course cannot normally be taken before the fourth semester of candidature and subject to approval by the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the departmental Undergraduate Coordinator.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2081. Gender and history: Beauty, fashion and sex (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How do societies define what it means to be a man and a woman? Everyone, whatever their age, sex or social status, has an opinion on this issue, even if this is not always articulated consciously. Often, in fact, ideas about gender - the relations between the two sexes - are assumed to be 'natural' or 'normal' and timeless. However, by analyzing the question of what being a 'man' and being a 'woman' means at different times and in different places this course sets out to illustrate how these identities are socially constructed. HIST2081 aims to introduce students to the various ways through which scholars have sought to understand gender over time. Beginning with the earliest efforts to write 'women's history,' selections from the recent deluge of historical writing and new research on gender will be highlighted.

The topics to be covered will include beauty norms, dress reform, prostitution, women's suffrage, the impact of War on constructions of manhood and womanhood, permissiveness in the 'swinging' sixties and so on, down to the present day. A comparative geographical focus will be used, and the course will draw on a wide variety of material from the Early Modern period to the 21st Century, to facilitate the study of changing gender norms.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2082. Europe and its others (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an interdisciplinary exploration of the evolution of European perceptions of non-European peoples and cultures from the 18th to the early 20th centuries. Students will learn to investigate how Western representations of non-Europeans were shaped by the various political debates, scientific theories and colonial ideology that dominated European societies of the time. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and postcolonial studies to analyze a wide range of primary materials that include visual documents, travel narratives, fiction, scientific texts, philosophical treatises, and documentaries.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2083. Gender, sexuality and empire (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course investigates the ways in which concepts of gender and sexuality have been used in British and French imperial discourse during the 19th and 20th centuries to manage their relationships with the colonized peoples and to showcase the superiority of European civilization. Part one of the course examines how the male colonial identities were constructed through the sexualization of the colonized subjects while the second half of the course focuses on the multiple roles of European women in the colonies. The course uses the conceptual frameworks and methodologies of history and cultural studies to analyze different types of historical narratives ranging from archival documents, personal memoirs and correspondence, travel accounts to autobiographical texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2084. Sexing the spirit: The history of the modern feminist challenge to Christianity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Surveys of mainstream feminism have generally omitted the subject of faith. They have taken as a given wholesale feminist hostility to Christianity and have concluded that religion has little importance in the life of modern women. Recent global events are a reminder however that religion remains a passionate if volatile force in contemporary culture and politics. This course will consider a history that has been overlooked – the critical engagement of modern feminism with Christianity. The course will begin with two mid-twentieth century events that have proved to be crucial catalysts in the active feminist response to Christian religion. The first was the ordination of Florence Li Tim Oi as the first Anglican woman priest in Hong Kong in 1944. The second was Simone de Beauvoir's publication of *The Second Sex* in 1949. Li's courageous war-time decision to pioneer female entrance into the all-male clerical establishment constitutes a reformist engagement with Christianity, while De Beauvoir's rejection of Christianity as a patriarchal institution oppressive to women reflects a more radical and uncompromising stance. Their two positions can be read as representational of the compatibility/incompatibility, reform/revolutionist debate that feminists have had with Christianity since the rise of second wave feminism in the 1960s.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2089. History's closet: Clothing in context (6 credits)**

Fashion has been called the mirror of history, and this seminar course will examine how the growth of the fashion industry, the democratization and mass production of clothing, and changing dress styles in outer as well as underwear reflect new understandings of women, their bodies, sexuality, and roles

in society from the mid-nineteenth century through to the present day. HIST2089 will introduce students to a large, complex and vibrant field of study and suggest how the relationship of women to fashion constitutes a complicated pattern of conformity, self-expression, resistance, and subversion in which issues of identity, ideology, nationality, race, ethnicity, religion, class, and socioeconomic aspirations compete for influence.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2090. The Great Famine (1959-61) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to introduce students to the history of famine through a sustained investigation of the Great Famine in China from 1959 to 1961. From a comparative perspective, the student will be introduced to a series of historical debates on the definition, causation and nature of famines with specific reference to some of the major famines of the nineteenth and twentieth century, including the Great Irish Famine of 1845-8, the Great Bengal Famine of 1943-4 and the Great Ukrainian Famine of 1932-22. From a methodological perspective, the student will work with a wide range of primary and secondary sources on the Great Famine in China (1959-61) in order to develop specific skills of documentary analysis and historical interpretation. While the seminar will look in detail at the nature of the famine and its political, economic, social and demographic dimensions, we will try to get closer to an understanding of the famine as it was experienced from the bottom up: how did ordinary people cope with hunger and death on such a large scale? A grassroots approach will lead us to consider not only a variety of experiences among victims and survivors across the social spectrum, but also a number of methodological issues on the use of primary sources, the nature of memory and the making of official historiography.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2094. Museums and history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Museums have become one of the most popular ways of telling history. Many scholars argue that museums are not neutral places; rather, they are often used for a wide range of strategic purposes: regulating social behavior, building citizenship and national identity, and expanding state power. But museums also face a variety of constraints and challenges: culture, money, politics, physical space, locating and selecting appropriate artifacts, and forming narratives. This course considers these issues by looking at history museums and heritage preservation in Hong Kong. The goals of the course are to familiarize students with a range of theoretical approaches to museum studies; explore the ways in which museums and heritage preservation can be used to further certain political, cultural, and commercial agendas; and help students learn to write an analytical research essay based on readings and museum fieldwork.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2095. The World Wars through documents (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses upon the two world wars. It aims at helping students to assess and analyze critically different types of documents generated in the process of war, and to enhance their ability to handle original sources. It is taught as a seminar course, with students required to attend one lecture and one seminar per week. The course focuses upon a variety of documentary materials, including: official reports; public statements; speeches; newspaper and media reports; propaganda; letters; diaries; memoirs; and oral histories.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2097. Mao (6 credits)**

The aim of this seminar is to critically examine existing accounts of the life of Mao Zedong, whether he is portrayed as a great revolutionary, a paranoid tyrant or a mass murderer. We will do so by exploring not only a variety of secondary sources, including texts, images and films produced by historians, but also by looking at some of the primary sources which have been used in biographies of Mao Zedong, for instance his own writings, interviews with journalists, reminiscences by contemporaries and key documents from the campaigns he instigated.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2098. A history of modern Taiwan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar course examines the political and economic processes that have shaped Taiwan as a part of China until 1895, as Japan's first colony and as the Republic of China on Taiwan since 1949. In particular, the course surveys the evolution of Taiwanese political and economic development and scrutinises the conditions that allowed the process of democratization to take place on the island and its geopolitical and social consequences. It examines Taiwan's relations with its two key partners, China and the United States, and accounts for the dynamics in this triangular partnership. Finally, the course looks at Taiwan's place in global economy and international relations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2099. Themes in the history of the post-Cold War world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar course introduces students to the major developments in the post-Cold War history of the world. It breaks down the historical period around the Cold War, post-Cold War and post-9/11 eras and considers specific issues, themes and case studies to broaden students' understanding. The lectures and seminars will present information on the patterns of change in the major policy domains that have dominated recent history and influenced contemporary decision-makers and societies. The course places an emphasis on historical events between the first and third worlds, as these events often led to dramatic shifts and changes in contemporary international relations. Moreover, the course looks at various historiographical debates over the nature of historical interpretation of socio-political trends and does not treat history as a series of discrete 'facts' but seeks to contextualize the theoretical basis of different historical viewpoints and how these contribute to our understanding of post-Cold War diplomatic history, war and society. The course covers a broad range of areas that include the 'causes' of the end of the Cold War, the Middle East and international oil wars, East Asia's economic miracle, the rise of China, European unification, ethnic strife in post-communist Europe, the third wave of democratization and post-9/11 political and military developments.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2116. Oceans in History (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar explores the historical role of oceans as spaces of human interconnection and global transformation. Oceans have long been studied as linear conduits of exploration, imperialism, piracy, etc. Beneath these currents, historians have also taken new soundings in the depths, revealing stories of voluntary and forced migrations, of resistance and empowerment, of sudden fluctuations and centuries-long patterns, and of loss and gain. Focusing on the 'Age of Exploration' (1450–1800), we will read noteworthy historical scholarship that has made the ocean its unit of analysis, its transformational element. As our point of departure, we begin with Fernand Braudel's vision of the Mediterranean as a

coherent region unified by its internal sea. We shall then navigate the new history of the Atlantic, with its emerging stories of transatlantic slavery, radicalism, changing ecologies, and diasporas. We conclude on the latest frontiers of Pacific history, and in humanity's first ocean, the Indian Ocean.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2118. Chinese and Americans: A cultural and international history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

China and the United States are two most important nations in the world today. Their interactions and relations have had deep impact on both Chinese and American lives and the rest of the world. This course will explore Sino-American relations in the last several hundred years with special focus on their shared values and experiences and emphasize both diplomatic and people-people relations from cultural and international history perspectives.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2119. Changing lives: Women's history from Fin-de-Siècle to the interwar years (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The decades of late 19th and early 20th centuries had witnessed the emergence of new identities for women variously described as “Eve nouvelle,” “the New Woman,” “xin nuxing,” or “la garçonne.” In this course students will be introduced to the historical formation of these new images of women through a critical reading of a diverse range of primary sources such as advice literature, women's self-writings, fiction, visual arts, and periodicals. A comparative cross-cultural perspective which draws on case studies from different national and cultural contexts will be adopted in this course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2123. Meiji Japan, challenges and transformations, 1853-1912 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the transformation of Japan from a decentralized semi-feudal society to that of a highly centralized nation state and burgeoning regional power from 1853 to 1912. In essence, this seminar course explores the challenges, successes, and failures of nation building in Japan at a time of heightened international imperialism in East Asia and the Pacific and upheaval at home. It explores how Japan's governing elites attempted to create a stable state and society that balanced oligarchic rule with participatory democracy, economic authoritarianism with international capitalism, cosmopolitanism and internationalism with traditional cultural values, beliefs, and practices, and local and regional identities with those of the emerging Japanese nation state. Moreover, this course focuses on the writings, ideas, hopes and fears of people, elites and non-elite actors, who helped forge and maintain the institutions that helped make Japan a modern state and society.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Not taken HIST2008

---

**HIST2124. Taishō and Shōwa Japan: Perfecting state, society and nation, 1912 to 1989 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines efforts undertaken by elites, institutions and citizen groups to overcome problems—perceived and real—that many believed modern Japan faced in both the domestic sphere



as well as internationally. At home, these problems included: urbanization and poverty, exploitative industrialization, pollution, and labor unrest, socialism and ideological threats, moral degeneracy, crime and juvenile delinquency, agrarian decline and economic depression. Abroad, these threats included international diplomatic and economic isolation, racial inequality and discrimination, and foreign imperialism. Apart from exploring the perceived problems of Japan, this seminar also examines the various prescriptions advocated by officials and non-governing elites to ameliorate the afflictions that many believed threatened state, society, and the Japanese nation and empire. In doing so, this course will examine how and why concepts of reform, reconstruction, restoration, and even radical revolt and warfare influenced politics, economics, society, and Japan's relations with foreign powers during much of the twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Not taken HIST2009

---

### **HIST2200. Europe fieldtrip (6 credits)**

This course will engage students in a particular historical theme or period of history, in one or more geographical areas of Europe through a field trip to examine historical sites and historical remains in the field or in museums and archives. The nature of the field trip will vary from year to year depending upon the expertise of the teacher and the needs of students.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST3015. The theory and practice of history (6 credits)**

This course aims to acquaint students with some of the theoretical and practical considerations which underlie the study and writing of history by considering the development of the discipline of history from its beginnings in the ancient world through to the postmodernist critique. The course is especially recommended to those who wish to pursue history at the postgraduate level. All students taking the **Dissertation elective** are required to take **The theory and practice of history**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For third year students only.

---

### **HIST3017. Dissertation elective (12 credits)**

This is a research course which requires submission of an extended written dissertation. All students taking the **Dissertation elective** are required to take **The theory and practice of history**.

Co-requisite/Prerequisite: HIST3015.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For third year students only; a whole year course.

---

### **HIST3022. History by numbers: Quantitative methods in History (6 credits)**

This course seeks to introduce students to the various quantitative approaches used by historians in research and to provide an opportunity for students to learn to use some of these methodologies in a workshop environment. Its focus is therefore both theoretical and practical, and students will learn

skills which will be readily transferable to the workplace. This course is available only for History majors in their final year of study.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For third year History majors only.

---

### **HIST3023. History research project (6 credits)**

Students who wish to undertake a research project on a specialized historical topic in either semester of their final year of study may enroll in this course with the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the departmental Undergraduate Coordinator. The course aims at providing an opportunity for intensive research leading to the production of a long essay (not exceeding 7,000 words) which will be supervised by a faculty member with expertise in the chosen area of study.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For third year History majors and minors only.

---

### **HIST3024. Writing Hong Kong history (6 credits)**

This course looks at various themes, problems, and issues in Hong Kong's history since the 1800s. Rather than focusing on historical events, we will look at the ways in which certain themes have been studied. Thus we will be less concerned with dates and facts than with analysis and interpretation. Topics include: general approaches to Hong Kong history, the Opium War and the British occupation of Hong Kong, colonial education, regulation of prostitution and the mui tsai system, colonial medicine, colonialism and nationalism, WWII and the Japanese occupation, industrialization and economic development, history and identity, legacies and artifices of colonial rule, and history and memory. The goals of the course are to introduce students to the ways in which scholars have approached Hong Kong history, assess how theories based on other historical experiences can be used to understand Hong Kong history, and help students learn to argue effectively in written and oral presentations.

Prerequisite: HIST1012, HIST1017, HIST2005, or HIST2006.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For third year students only.

---

### **HIST3025. Hitler and the National Socialist ideology (6 credits)**

*(This course is offered to third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Adolf Hitler's books *Mein Kampf* (My Struggle) and *Zweites Buch* (Second Book), both written in the 1920s, offer a clear and succinct statement of his views on the world. Preaching a message of hatred, violence and destruction the books reveal both the presence of a genocidal mentality and the statement of an implicitly genocidal message. Much of the interpretative challenge lies in appreciating the significance of the simple but extensive sets of synonyms and antonyms that Hitler uses throughout his writing. However, if we wish to understand how the National Socialist genocide of the Jews occurred it is with Hitler's books that we must start. In the course we will concentrate on those writings and evaluate their intellectual and philosophical roots in a 19th and early 20th century tradition, and their background and motivation in Hitler's own biography. Students wishing to enrol in the course HIST3025 must have successfully completed the course HIST2121. **The rise and fall of Adolf Hitler.**

Prerequisite: HIST2121.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For third year students only.

**HIST3026. History publishing (12 credits)**

This course expects students to draw together the various strands in their undergraduate history training in a project which aims to (1) allow individual students to produce a professional piece of historical writing suitable for publication, and (2) bringing several of these written outputs together in a volume designed and produced by the course participants. The course will enable students to learn all the stages and methods of book production through practical involvement in creating a published volume of historical essays as a group project. Publishing professionals will be involved in teaching the course and professional standards will be encouraged throughout the project work. This course will be of particular interest to students who are interested in pursuing careers in any area of publishing, but it will also be valuable to those who intend to pursue postgraduate studies or careers in writing.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For third year students only; a whole year course.

**HIST3027. Natural disasters in history, 1700 to 2009 (6 credits)**

*(This course is offered to third-year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Natural disasters have had a destructive and often transformative impact on cities and rural landscapes, cultures and societies, and nation states for much of history. This course is designed to encourage students to look differently at natural disasters and their role in shaping the histories of peoples and nations across time and space from 1700 to the present. Using natural disasters as revealers or windows into the past this course will compel participants to think critically and creatively about fundamental relationships in society: What makes a natural phenomenon such as an earthquake, a cyclone, or a volcanic eruption a natural disaster; how have people interpreted disasters and what does this tell us about our relationships with religion, science and technology; how have disasters been portrayed or represented in art, literature, and the media and for what interpretative ends; and how have disasters and the reconstruction processes that followed been used by opportunistic leaders or non-governmental agencies to redevelop landscapes and remake societies? By focusing on case studies from around the globe from 1700 to the present, this course will cross cultures, disciplines, and time, and demonstrate how disasters and catastrophes are cultural constructions that reflect and reinforce, yet sometimes overturn our understanding of nature, science, society, and the cosmos.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For third year students only.

**LINGUISTICS**

In the Department of Linguistics, students can investigate a variety of different languages and through such investigations, come to a better understanding of the shared structure and broad variation of the world's languages. The BA programme provides a firm foundation so that those students who wish to do so can go on to pursue advanced studies in linguistics.

The undergraduate programme in Linguistics permits students to combine in a single field a variety of Arts and Social Science subjects and to develop their analytic skills in depth. Students are encouraged to explore with members of staff the many relationships of linguistics with other fields in order to discover the programme that best suits their individual goals and interests.

The department offers the following majors and minors:

**I. Major in General Linguistics**

**II. Minor in General Linguistics**

**III. Major in Human Language Technology**

All courses, except LING1001 and LING1003, are assessed by 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may take a variety of formats, including projects, term-papers, essays, portfolios, class tests, and student presentations.

All are taught as one-semester courses. Course availability is subject to staffing considerations.

---

## **(I) MAJOR IN GENERAL LINGUISTICS**

General Linguistics is a broad and varied field that covers the study of human language in all its aspects. In the Department of Linguistics students majoring in General Linguistics who wish to specialize in particular areas are offered the three options below; specialization is optional.

### **(1) Language documentation and description**

Language documentation and description involves on the study of minority and endangered languages with a particular focus on East Asia and West Africa. The purpose is to investigate lesser-known languages and produce materials for a better understanding and preservation of linguistic diversity.

### **(2) Empirical psycholinguistics.**

Empirical psycholinguistics, conducted in collaboration with the *State Key Laboratory of Brain and Cognitive Sciences*, introduces students to the field of brain sciences as well as cognitive linguistics and language disorders. Here the focus is on the study of Chinese and East Asian languages.

### **(3) Language and society**

Language and society involves the study of the social functions of language and the way in which speakers use language in relation to their identity, culture and society. In this field students can investigate aspects of political and educational significance in the use of languages.

**Course selection depends on students' intended specialization. Students wishing to specialize are encouraged to discuss with staff members which combination of courses is most relevant to their specific interests.**

Students majoring in General Linguistics are required to take LING1001 and LING1003 in the first year, and a minimum of 54 credits of second/third year Linguistics courses, including LING2004 and LING2050 normally in the second year, and LING3003 in the third year.

Students may enrol in the Department's 'English in the Discipline' course. This course provides a learning experience which combines English enhancement with the acquisition of disciplinary knowledge and skills.

---

## **First-year Courses**

### **LING1001. Introduction to linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a prerequisite for all students intending to declare a major or minor in any of the department's programmes. It is an introduction to the basic topics of linguistics: the nature of human language, speech sounds and sound patterns, word formation, sentence structure, and the study of meaning and use.

Students will learn about the general structure that underlies all language as well as the great variety of existing human languages. The course gives plenty of practice in solving problems, analyzing languages, including Chinese and English, and dealing with data.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Note: This course is a prerequisite for all majors and minors of the department, and also for all second and third-year Linguistics courses.

**LING1002. Language.com: Language in the contemporary world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designated as an IT-integrated course. Students who do the course can use it to fulfill the university's IT requirement. The 21st century is the Age of the Internet, with virtual addresses ending in Dot.com and others. What is the Internet all about? Essentially, it is about information and communication. Language is by far the most important means of communication and information exchange amongst human beings. To fully appreciate our own place in the contemporary world and to make the best of the many opportunities presented by new forms of communication, we need to know more about language. This course is an introduction to language: its nature and its relationship with facets of life in the contemporary world. Some of the questions to address in this course include the following: Can computers and the internet do translations automatically and accurately? What kinds of language data are available on the Internet? How can they be used to make grammars and dictionaries? What tools are available on the Internet for the learning of languages and linguistics? Students who complete this course can go on to do courses such as LING2041 and many other Human Language Technology courses.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: This course is designated as an IT-integrated course, so, students can use it to fulfill the university's IT requirement.

---

**LING1003. Language, thought, and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course offers a survey of the study of language, with a focus on the relationship between language structure on the one hand and thought and culture on the other. It is designed as a complementary course to LING1001. 'Introduction to Linguistics', and covers topics which cannot be dealt with in the other course due to the limitation of time. Through reading and participation in regular discussions on a selection of topics, students will gain a deeper understanding of the ways in which language is structured, learned, processed and used.

Prerequisite: LING1001. Introduction to linguistics.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Note: This course is a prerequisite for the major in General Linguistics.

---

**Second and Third-year Courses****LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

How can the computer help us analyze sentences? Can a computer really understand language? These are some of the questions explored in this course. The course will introduce basic concepts and techniques of natural language understanding and Chinese language information processing.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

How is it that we manage to have conversations in which lots of different people take part and everyone has a chance to speak as well as to listen? At least, most of the time we manage that all right. What rules are followed when we have conversations? On this course you will discover what these rules are and learn how to describe the structure of conversations.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2003. Semantics: Meaning and grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on structural and cognitive aspects of meaning which are relevant to the description and theory of grammar. Examples will be drawn from Cantonese, Mandarin and English together with some other European and Asian languages.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2004. Phonetics: Describing sounds (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on articulatory phonetics; the speech mechanism; the description and classification of sounds of languages; sounds in context; prosodic features; tone and intonation; and practical work.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey of the world's languages covers how languages are classified into families and types as well as issues of linguistic diversity and endangered languages. The course involves regular practical work. The course satisfies the prerequisite for the advanced course, Language typology, and also provides useful background for all courses in linguistics.

Prerequisite: LING1001 and LING1003.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course you will learn about the difference between a standard language and a dialect, with particular reference to Modern Chinese and British English.

We shall study the writing systems of Modern Chinese and British English, and compare them with alternative systems which are used for Chinese and English dialects.

You will learn to distinguish between 'Chinese' and 'Putonghua', between 'Cantonese', 'Guangdong speech', and 'Yue dialects', and between *wenyan* and *baihua*; similar phenomena in British English will also be discussed.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at helping students gain an understanding of the role of language and literacy education in the socio-economic development of many societies. After the introduction of basic concepts in sociolinguistics and in literacy, we will compare linguistic situations in selected parts of the world and then take up major issues such as multilingualism, literacy education, including definitions and types of literacies, language planning policies, and how to integrate linguistic and educational issues in development projects.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2012. Experimental phonetics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The theoretical and instrumental study of the acoustic properties of speech sounds; classificatory criteria; speech analysis and synthesis; experimental techniques; and laboratory work.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2013. Language typology: The study of linguistic diversity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

A survey of the structural diversity of the world's languages. Topics covered include: notions of language type; morphological, case marking, and word order typology; diachronic and areal typology; universals of language and their explanation.

Prerequisite: LING1001 and LING2009.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2018. Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

An intensive introduction to the architecture of Lexical-Functional Grammar, with a discussion of how this syntactic theory addresses issues such as levels of representation, lexical integrity, complex predicates, serial verbs, optimality, and the syntax - semantics interface.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2022. Pragmatics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the study of Pragmatics. Topics include: linguistic meaning, speaker intention, interpretation and understanding, context, deixis, reference, conversational implicature, inference, presupposition, speech acts, politeness, relevance theory.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2023. Discourse analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers fundamental concepts and methods in Discourse Analysis. Several approaches that describe and explain the structure and function of spoken, written and other types of discourses will be presented (e.g. ethnomethodological approach, conversation analysis, and interactional sociolinguistics). Examples will be drawn from different discourse genres, such as everyday conversations and various professional encounters to investigate how language is used. Many examples for this course will come from the unique sociocultural context of Hong Kong. Data

collection and handling and practical applications of discourse analytic approaches will constitute an important part of the course as well as the assessment for the course.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Non-permissible combination: EDUC2204 or EDUC3202.

---

### **LING2024. Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Dictionaries have existed for hundreds of years. They are very helpful for travellers, language learners and teachers. In fact the study of word meanings and dictionary-making and dictionary analysis has given plenty of insights into language in general and vocabulary in particular. Over the past thirty years or so, advances in computer technology have revolutionised the field of lexical studies. The advent of computerised language corpora (i.e. principled collections of running text) makes it possible to retrieve and analyze lexical information in systematic ways. Now linguists and lexicographers are able to answer the following questions. (a) What types of dictionary entry can be found in a dictionary? (b) How do we account for polysemy in dictionaries? How do we discern different word senses? (c) What kinds of examples are most effective when trying to show how a word is typically used? (d) Should lexicographers invent their own examples or should they use authentic examples extracted from large bodies of textual data? (e) How do we make sure that the dictionaries really meet users' needs? (f) What kinds of navigation aid should be provided in learners' dictionaries? (g) Should a word be defined in a full sentence or in a telegraphic fashion? (h) What are collocations and how can they be identified in corpora and presented in a dictionary afterwards? (i) How should definitions be structured and written in a user-friendly way?

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING2025. Corpus linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Over the past two decades, corpus linguistics has offered a new research paradigm and become a prominent tool in different areas of linguistics, including lexical and grammatical studies, language variation and pedagogy. What are corpora? How could a (prospective) researcher investigate language-related issues with corpora? This course will present the foundations of corpus linguistics. To give you a flavour of the use of corpora (e.g. the British National Corpus) and corpus exploration tools (e.g. WordSmith) and the statistics package SPSS in language studies, it will take the form of unconventional lectures (with live demonstrations of online corpus-linguistic resources) along with practicals (your turn!). Of course, no familiarity with computing is assumed.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The goal of the course is to introduce students to the basic concepts in phonology and various phonological systems of human languages. Students acquire experience in analyzing language data and formulating phonological rules.

Prerequisite: LING1001 and LING2004.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**LING2030. Morphological theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to morphological theory. The course offers an introduction to some of the current models of morphology, including Paradigm Function Morphology, Prosodic Morphology and Optimality Theory, among others, and considers how morphology interacts with other fields of linguistics such as syntax, semantics and phonology.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2032. Syntactic theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course explores recent theoretical approaches to syntax, focusing on generative grammar.

Prerequisite: LING1001 and LING2050.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we will compare the grammar of English and Chinese. We will find some surprising similarities as well as interesting differences. You will have a firmer grasp of the structure of both languages by the end of the course. In addition, you will be in a better position to undertake bilingual research or to become effective language instructors or translators.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2034. Psycholinguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to psycholinguistics and will examine issues concerning how language is acquired and processed in the mind. Essential concepts of the mental processes involved in language comprehension and production and contemporary research will be covered in this course. There will also be practical laboratory classes.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2036. Child language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The focus of this course is on language acquisition, including a consideration of the stages of language development, biological basis, language disorders, dyslexia, and the differences in learning to speak and read in Chinese and English.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to provide a theoretical understanding of bilingualism from a psycholinguistic and neuropsycholinguistic perspective, with emphasis on bilingual language development and mental representations of the two languages. Various aspects of bilingual behavior such as code-switching and language mixing and various factors that may affect bilingual behavior such as age-related differences, the influence of the first language, the role of attitudes, motivation and learning contexts will be discussed and examined.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Not to be taken with PSYC0038.

---

**LING2040. Languages in contact (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

No language exists in isolation and all show some effect of contact with other languages. The course will introduce basic concepts in language contact such as code-mixing, lexical borrowing, language shift and language creation. We focus on contact languages – including pidgins and creoles – and the challenges and opportunities they present to linguistics. The course is especially relevant to students interested in East-West contacts and the pre-colonial and colonial linguistic ecologies of Monsoon Asia such as Sri Lanka, the Malay/Indonesian archipelago and the Pearl River Delta.

Prerequisite: LING1001 and LING1003.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues with major themes from LING1002. ‘Language.com: Language in the contemporary world’ and aims to create a greater awareness of the growing importance of language information processing methods. The objective of the course is to explore the interface between language, linguistics, and information technology.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2047. Optimality theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces current issues in Optimality Theory, with reference to phonology, morphology, and syntax.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2048. Language and cognition (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines various issues regarding cognition and language. Topics to be covered are:

- How is language processed and represented in the mind and the brain?
- Commonalities and particularities of cognitive and neuro-cognitive processing of different languages (e.g., English and Chinese).
- First and second language learning. What are the critical factors that facilitate language learning?
- The Chinese language and the brain; language and reading disorders.
- Applied cognitive psychology of language. Headline designs for newspaper, TV program, and advertisement. Cognitive basis of persuasion.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at giving the student a comprehensive introduction to basic concepts used in the description of morphology and syntax, independent of any model of grammar. Exercises accompany the topics introduced. Example analyzes are drawn from various languages. The following topics in morphology and syntax will be covered: words, morphemes and morphs, word classes, immediate constituents, phrase structure, functional relations, sentence structure.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2052. Swahili structure and universal grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

Swahili is the most widely spoken African language and one of the most intensively studied in many universities in Africa, Europe, and North America. In this course, an overview of the major aspects of Swahili and Bantu Linguistics will be provided. The basics of phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics will be covered, with emphasis on the morphosyntactic component of the language. Students will learn how to analyze basic Swahili sentence structures from formal perspectives, using the basics of grammatical frameworks such as Lexical Functional Grammar and the Minimalist approaches. Prior knowledge of introductory linguistics and spoken Swahili are helpful but not essential.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2053. Language and the brain (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to the representation and processing of language in the human brain, the systems and processes that enables us to speak, understand speech, learn languages, and read and write. Through attending the course, students will acquire in-depth knowledge of how language is developed, processed, and organized in the brain. Traditional as well as most recent research from linguistics, cognitive neuroscience (e.g. brain imaging) and the study of language disorders will be reviewed.

Prerequisite: LING1001 and LING2034.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2055. Reading development and reading disorders (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to provide a deep understanding of reading development and reading disorders in different written languages. Through attending the course, students should be able to understand how different cognitive processes contribute to the development of skilled word reading and text comprehension and what possible problems children may encounter during the course of reading development. Effective treatment and instruction approaches will also be discussed.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2056. Sociolinguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course introduces students to the study of the relationship between language and society. During the course we cover the following topics: fundamentals of language variation and change, multilingualism and language contact, language maintenance, shift and death, language planning, policy and education, and linguistic landscapes. The course has both theoretical and empirical content; in terms of the former, we focus in particular on evolutionary theories of language and usage-based approaches; as for the latter, we focus on the study of Asian contexts, in particular China, South and Southeast Asia through ethnographic methods. The course includes an active fieldwork component on sociolinguistic issues in Hong Kong. A good understanding of sociolinguistics is recommended for linguistics majors and is an important asset for anyone who seeks to competently engage in the field of language usage in society.

Prerequisite: LING1001 and LING1003.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Third-year Courses****LING3002. Extended essay (6 credits)**

This is a one-semester course for individual research on a topic chosen by the student in consultation with staff, in preparation for possible postgraduate work and is offered for third year majors only. Students intending to study this course are required to attend an interview at the beginning of their third year to give a short presentation on their proposed topic. The thesis which should normally be 5,000-6,000 words in length. There is no written examination but an oral examination will be required.

Prerequisite: LING1001 and LING1003.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: For General Linguistics majors only.

---

**LING3003. Linguistics field trip (6 credits)**

This is a required course for students majoring in General Linguistics or Human Language Technology. The field trip is technically designated as a Third year course but actually begins to be taught in the second year. Students majoring in General Linguistics should plan their courses with this in mind. The aim of the course is to provide an opportunity for students of linguistics to have first-hand experience with languages as they are spoken and used in particular settings, and to carry out an empirical investigation on some aspect of a language 'on-site' (e.g. structural, cognitive, socio-cultural, or technological aspects of a language). The field trip is the best way of putting knowledge about language structure and use into practice, and forms an essential part of a linguist's training.

To satisfy the requirements of the course, students should (1) participate in a two-week field trip outside Hong Kong (e.g. to China, Europe, or Africa), led and supervised by members of staff; (2) carry out an empirical investigation of a linguistics topic in consultation with their supervisors; and (3) write up and hand in a report upon return from the field trip.

Prerequisite: LING1001.

Assessment: Attendance in the pre-trip course, participation in the field trip and a written report.

---

## **(II) MINOR IN GENERAL LINGUISTICS**

A minor in General Linguistics shall consist of 30 credits of second/third year Linguistics courses. As a prerequisite, students are required to pass LING1001.

---

## **(III) MAJOR IN HUMAN LANGUAGE TECHNOLOGY**

### **What is Human Language Technology?**

Human Language Technology (HLT) is a relatively new discipline that investigates two main issues. On the one hand it explores the theoretical and practical issues surrounding the ability to get technology, especially modern information communications technology (ICT), to interact with humans using natural language capabilities. On the other hand, it is a discipline that investigates how technologies, especially ICTs, can serve as useful adjuncts to humans in language understanding, including analysis, processing, storage and retrieval. This investigation could lead to practical applications, including the design of online learning environments for language learning and multilingual retrieval for automatic translation.

### **Aims and Objectives:**

The following are some of the objectives of the proposed programme: (1) to give students a perspective of how technology relates to human language processing; (2) to understand how information communications technology has been applied to different aspects of Linguistics and human language processing and to what effect; (3) to critically evaluate the role of technology in human language processing; and (4) to examine the range of opportunities available to different professionals regarding the application of technology in human language processing.

### **Components of the Programme:**

Students majoring in HLT must take LING1001, and preferably also LING1002 or LING1003, in their first year.

Students are welcome to take the following Computer Science first-year courses, which complement with the HLT major:

CSIS1117. Computer programming I (6 credits)

CSIS1119. Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6 credits)

CSIS1122. Computer programming II (6 credits)

Students must also take LING2004 and LING2050 normally in their second year and LING3003 in their third year. In addition, they must take a minimum of 36 credits in their second and third year of study from the following list of courses:

**Second Year:**

- LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)
- LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)
- LING2012. Experimental phonetics (6 credits)
- LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)
- LING2030. Morphological theory (6 credits)
- LING2032. Syntactic theory (6 credits)

**Third Year:**

- LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2018. Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)
- LING2024. Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)

Students in the third year can take second-year courses, if necessary.

Should there be staffing or timetabling problems, students may seek permission to replace an HLT course with another relevant second/third year Linguistics course. The following Computer Science second/third year courses could also replace HLT courses:

- CSIS0270. Artificial intelligence (6 credits)
- CSIS0278. Introduction to database management systems (6 credits)
- CSIS0293. Introduction to theory of computation (6 credits)
- CSIS0297. Introduction to software engineering (6 credits)
- CSIS0315. Multimedia computing and applications (6 credits)
- CSIS0320. Electronic commerce technology (6 credits)
- CSIS0322. Internet and the World Wide Web (6 credits)
- CSIS0396. Object-oriented programming and Java (6 credits)

HLT students may not take more than 18 credits from the Department of Computer Science.

**MUSIC****First Year Requirements**

First year music specialists and intending majors must take:

- MUSI1004. Introduction to musics of the world (6 credits)
- MUSI1019. Fundamentals of tonal music I (6 credits)
- MUSI1021. Western music history 1: from ancient Greece to the Renaissance (6 credits)

Students who would like to seek exemption from the above courses should submit an application to the Department's Undergraduate Coordinator.

All Level 1000 courses are also open to BA students who are not music specialists or intending majors. These courses may also count as inter-Faculty broadening courses, if allowed by the student's home Faculty or department.

## First-year Courses

### Level 1000 courses

#### **MUSI1004. Introduction to musics of the world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, introduces a range of music from throughout the world including North America, Southeast Asia, West Africa, the Caribbean, and Europe. Genres such as *salsa* and *zydeco* (United States), *gamelan gong kebyar* (Bali), *bawa* and *highlife* (Ghana), *djembe* (Senegal), *son* and *rumba* (Cuba), *samba* (Brazil), *flamenco* (Spain), and *rembetika* (Greece) are examined in their social, cultural, and historical contexts. The course also discusses issues raised by cross-cultural research. Practical performance in a department ensemble may be included in the course. Assessment: 100% coursework.

#### **MUSI1018. Advanced music performance 1 (for students in their first year of study) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students prepare a recital of 30-40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the Department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced 20th-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

#### **MUSI1019. Fundamentals of tonal music I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course begins with fundamental music materials, such as scales and keys, and moves rapidly into diatonic functional harmony and voice-leading principles. Students completing this course are expected to have established a clear and solid understanding of rudiments of tonal music, and be able to make practical demonstrations of this knowledge.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

#### **MUSI1021. Western music history 1: from ancient Greece to the Renaissance (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course traces the development of European music from its earliest beginnings in ancient Greece and Rome through the flowering of sacred and secular music in the Middle Ages and the Renaissance. The course introduces students to a number of ideas, practices, and works representative of the period between ca. 800 AD and 1600. A strong focus is placed on the introduction of the fundamental aspects of music theory and the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which it was created.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

#### **MUSI1022. Performance study 1 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students taking this course have to enrol in two performance ensembles or workshops offered by the Music Department over two semesters. Ensembles include University Choir, University Gamelan, and Union Philharmonic Orchestra. Performance workshops offered vary from year to year and may include classes in voice, percussion, Chinese instruments, and choral conducting. Please check with the Music Department for details.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor/conductor assessment).

## **Second and Third-year Requirements**

Second and third year courses in the Department are divided into three categories: Thinking in Music, Technology and Composition, and Practical Applications. All Level 2000 courses can be taken in either the second or third year, except MUSI2037, MUSI2047, and MUSI2066, which are for students in their second year of study only. All Level 3000 courses can only be taken in the third year. Prerequisites, if required, are stated in the course descriptions. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived. All major and other course selections are subject to the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Department's Undergraduate Coordinator.

---

### **Second and Third Year Music Majors and Specialists**

A major in Music shall consist of 54 credit units of Level 2000 and 3000 courses from the music syllabus taken in the third to sixth semesters. As a prerequisite, second and third year music majors and specialists must take:

- MUSI2052. Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)
- MUSI2057. Western music history 2: from the rise of opera to Beethoven (6 credits)
- MUSI2058. Western music history 3: from Beethoven to the present (6 credits)
- MUSI2065. Fundamentals of tonal music II (6 credits)
- MUSI2068. University gamelan (6 credits)

and at least TWO of the following three courses. All three courses will be available over a two-year period. Please check with the Music Department for details:

- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)

The following courses are elective. All music majors and specialists must take at least 12 elective credits from Level 2000 or 3000 courses. Students are free to choose from any category.

#### **Thinking in Music**

- MUSI2009. Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)
- MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)
- MUSI2035. Love, sex, and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)
- MUSI2037. Directed study 1 (6 credits)
- MUSI2044. Film music (6 credits)
- MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)
- MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)
- MUSI2059. Music and the mind: introduction to the psychology of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2060. Red is the colour: music and politics in post-1949 China (6 credits)
- MUSI2063. The opera (6 credits)
- MUSI2064. Music and science: conjunctions in Western history (6 credits)
- MUSI3016. Directed study 2 (6 credits)
- MUSI3020. Music analysis (6 credits)



### Technology and Composition

- MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2026. Fundamentals of music composition (6 credits)
- MUSI2027. Composing for the concert world (6 credits)
- MUSI2030. Composing for the commercial world (6 credits)
- MUSI2043. Orchestration (6 credits)
- MUSI2053. Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)
- MUSI2061. Contrapuntal techniques 1: modal counterpoint (6 credits)
- MUSI2062. Contrapuntal techniques 2: tonal counterpoint (6 credits)
- MUSI2067. Introduction to electroacoustic music (6 credits)

### Practical Applications

- MUSI2028. The business of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2047. Advanced music performance 2 (6 credits)
- MUSI2066. Performance study 2 (6 credits)
- MUSI3019. Advanced music performance 3 (6 credits)
- MUSI3021. Performance study 3 (6 credits)

Students may enrol in the Department's 'English in the Discipline' course. This course provides a learning experience which combines English enhancement with the acquisition of disciplinary knowledge and skills.

### Courses for Non-Music Majors and Minors

Second and third year BA students who are not music majors, minors, or specialists may choose from the following courses:

- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI2028. The business of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)
- MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)
- MUSI2035. Love, sex, and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)
- MUSI2043. Orchestration (6 credits)
- MUSI2044. Film music (6 credits)
- MUSI2047. Advanced music performance (6 credits)
- MUSI2052. Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)
- MUSI2053. Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)
- MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)
- MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)
- MUSI2059. Music and the mind: introduction to the psychology of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2060. Red is the colour: music and politics in post-1949 China (6 credits)
- MUSI2063. The opera (6 credits)
- MUSI2064. Music and science: conjunctions in Western history (6 credits)
- MUSI2065. Fundamentals of tonal music 2 (6 credits)
- MUSI2066. Performance study 2 (6 credits)
- MUSI2067. Introduction to electroacoustic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2068. University gamelan (6 credits)
- MUSI3019. Advanced music performance (6 credits)
- MUSI3021. Performance study 3 (6 credits)

All of the above may also count as inter-Faculty broadening courses, if allowed by the student's home Faculty or department. Non-music majors may also choose any course or combination of courses not listed above with the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Department's Undergraduate Coordinator.

## Music Minors

A minor in Music shall consist of 36 credit units of Level 2000 and 3000 courses from the music syllabus taken in the third to sixth semesters, with no more than 12 credit units taken in performance courses (MUSI2004, MUSI2047, MUSI2066, MUSI3019, and MUSI3021). As a prerequisite, students must pass MUSI1004 Introduction to musics of the world and one of the following three music history courses: MUSI1021 Western music history 1: from ancient Greece to the Renaissance, MUSI2057 Western music history 2: from the rise of opera to Beethoven, and MUSI2058 Western music history 3: from Beethoven to the present.

To fulfill the credit requirements of the major/minor in Music, students may also take AFRI2006 African music. Please refer to the African Studies syllabus for details.

Third year students taking a major or minor in Music who fulfil the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years. Capstone courses which may be available to students include MUSI2037 and MUSI3016.

## Second and Third-years Courses

### Level 2000 courses

#### **MUSI2009. Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)**

Selected topics in the history of Asian musical cultures will be examined.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

#### **MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course presents the essential features of the music of China, its role in Chinese culture and history, and its position in world music. Subjects will include the *qin* and other musical instruments, theatrical genres such as *kunqu*, Peking opera and Cantonese opera, narrative songs such as Peking drum song, Suzhou *tanci*, and Cantonese *nanyin*, folk songs, and music in Confucian, Buddhist, and Taoist rituals. The course aims not only to introduce students to traditional Chinese music, but also to explore the nature of Chinese culture through its musical practices. Important works of Chinese music will be introduced, as well as issues such as change/stasis, politics/aesthetics, theory/practice, literati/masses, professional/amateur, ritual/entertainment, home-grown/foreign-influenced, and Han/Minority. The course is offered in alternate years with MUSI2029 Chinese music history.  
Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with a general knowledge of acoustics, sampling, sound design, sound editing, sound recording and mixing, audio-visual synchronization, synthesiser techniques, and MIDI sequencing. The course comprises lectures, workshops, and individual studio exercises. Students are required to produce various practical, creative projects using the Music Department's studio equipment and computer programs.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers a wide variety of popular musics ranging from the latest trends in the global market to locally produced music such as Hong Kong's Cantopop. The course surveys the development of key genres of popular music, in particular, those from the United States, such as blues, country, rock and roll, Motown, soul, hard rock, disco, hardcore, heavy metal, grunge, techno, and rap. In addition, the course examines themes and concepts that can be applied to the serious study of popular musics beyond those discussed. These themes and concepts concern the ways in which popular music is defined, produced, disseminated, and consumed across the world. Students will learn the basic critical tools to examine popular music from a scholarly perspective. Lectures are augmented with videos, film slides, and recordings.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, aims to promote an understanding of the various styles of music practised in contemporary Hong Kong. Through comparison with the musical landscapes of other modern societies (e.g., US, Japan, Singapore, Taiwan), we shall endeavour to understand music and ourselves better. Topics to be discussed may include technical analysis of selected musical works, procedures of musical production, and a look at radio programmes, the recording industry, film music, high-art, jazz, new-age, and alternative musics, as well as traditional local and popular idioms.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2026. Fundamentals of music composition (6 credits)**

This course seeks to provide an understanding of various musical techniques through writing music. It covers topics in notation, instrumentation, melodic writing, harmonization, timbral control, expansion and refinement of raw material, and structural design. The course comprises lectures, small-group tutorials, individual supervision, composer/performer workshops, and concert performances of student works.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2027. Composing for the concert world (6 credits)**

This course encourages students to write music using 20th-century techniques. It introduces students to organising and manipulating various musical parameters such as pitch, rhythm, meter, texture, colour, form, etc. It also helps students to experiment with the incorporation of extra-musical inspiration and alternative aesthetics. The course is offered in alternate years with MUSI2030 Composing for the commercial world.

Prerequisite: MUSI2026.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2028. The business of music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to basic arts administration concepts with a focus on the business of music. Topics to be discussed include strategic planning, organization, marketing, fundraising, financial management, arts law, as well as arts provision and arts policies in Hong Kong as compared to models in China, Europe, and the USA. The lectures provide the students with theoretical foundations of management for the performing arts, and various assignments help students to develop practical skills in writing, communication, critical thinking, and analysis.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces the history of China through an examination of selective source material including bells from the bronze period, the *Book of Music* attributed to Confucian philosophy, the earliest known musical notation of a composition from the sixth century A.D., major encyclopaedic compilations of musical sources from the Song dynasty, and Mao Zedong's Talks at the Yan'an Conference on Literature and Art in 1942. The course is offered in alternate years with MUSI2010 Music of China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2030. Composing for the commercial world (6 credits)**

This course helps students to write music that works for a given practical application such as film scores, theatre music, multimedia performances, radio and television commercials, web pages, New Age music, and popular songs. Students are required to work on topics that vary from year to year. The course is offered in alternate years with MUSI2027 Composing for the concert world.

Prerequisite: MUSI2026.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the history, genres, styles, innovations, and cultural contexts of music in America. Following an overview of its European and African roots and the development of American music up to World War I, intensive consideration will be given to jazz, rock, blues, musicals, classical, and avant-garde musics. This course is available to all students.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the study of *gamelan* music and its cultural context during a two-week field trip in Bali. Students will spend one week in intensive workshops at the Sekolah Tinggi Seni Indonesia (STSI), the principal institution for Indonesian performing arts in Bali, and another week participating in and observing *gamelan* performance in a traditional Balinese community. Students will be required to produce a fieldtrip report.

Prerequisite: MUSI2068.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2035. Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines cultural and historical representations of feelings, situations, and stories that focus on passion, romance, sexuality, tragedy, and death in music. We shall consider both semiotic and formal aspects of a number of works through which such expressions can be conveyed, and shall examine their resultant power and meaning. The course covers popular and art music from the late twelfth to the twenty-first century, drawing on an eclectic range of repertoires from the West and other parts of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2037. Directed study 1 (for students in their second year of study) (6 credits)**

In this course, the student works on a one-to-one basis with a supervisor throughout the year. During the first semester, the supervisor introduces theories and techniques of musical research through reading, discussion, and book reports. Towards the end of the semester, a research topic is to be agreed upon between the student and supervisor. The second semester is devoted to researching the topic and writing a thesis under the guidance of the supervisor. Entry to this course is at the discretion of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Department's Undergraduate Coordinator.

Assessment: 100% thesis.

---

**MUSI2043. Orchestration (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of orchestration. The characteristics of standard orchestral instruments will be studied, as well as the techniques of combining these instruments when writing for small and large orchestral forces. Aspects of psycho-acoustics will also be studied. Teaching materials will be derived from examples of the classical music repertoire and from film scores.

Prerequisite: MUSI2065.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2044. Film music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What does music contribute to a fiction film? When is it used? And why is it there in the first place? Directors use music with an effect in mind and it is music's force in the "here and now" of the movie-

going experience that we will try to describe. To do so, we will study films from various cinematic traditions through the various ways in which music functions within them as a powerful meaning-making element. Under the assumption that film is an *audio-visual* medium, we will examine individual works representative of different genres—musicals, horrors, dramas, comedies, and cartoons. Consideration will be given to the relationship between music and image as well as music and sound as they emerge from close readings of individual scenes. We will also look at how music is represented in the story world of the film, whether a character performs, listens to, or ignores it.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2047. Advanced music performance 2 (for students in their second year of study) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)* Students prepare a recital of 30-40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the Department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced 20th-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2052. Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of MUSI2065 Fundamentals of tonal music II, with emphases on chromatic harmonies, larger forms such as rondo and sonata, and contrapuntal genres such as canon and fugue. The basic concepts of Schenkerian theory will also be introduced. Students are required to complete a number of harmonic exercises and analytical projects.

Prerequisite: MUSI2065.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2053. Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will focus on the modern and post-tonal techniques such as modality, atonality, serialism, minimalism, aleatoric music, collage, neo-tonality, jazz harmony, etc. Analytic techniques of pitch-class set theory, transformational theory, and timbral analysis will also be introduced. Students are required to complete various analytical and technical projects.

Prerequisite: MUSI2052.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course is open to all students with either some experience with, or interest in, the piano. It offers an overview of the history of the piano through a montage of lectures that focus on the personalities that were involved with it, the repertoires they either composed for or performed on it, and the social and cultural milieus that provided the context for its extraordinary rise as arguably the most important instrument in the history of Western classical music. Students will be given the opportunity to study

the piano as a medium of musical exploration and expression, the occasion for the display of virtuosity, a staple of the 19th-century bourgeois home, and an object of almost maniacal veneration. The course will end with an overview of the dissemination of the piano in East Asia, with particular reference to the piano culture of Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course starts with an exploration of the structural and theoretical aspects of Chinese Opera, including the classification of tune types, text setting, and performance practice. While examples are mostly drawn from *kunqu*, Peking opera, and Cantonese opera, other regional derivatives will also be introduced for comparison and analysis. The second half of this course comprises a series of reading and examination of representative operas and their performances, through which the interplay between Chinese opera and its religious, social, cultural, and political contexts is investigated. The course is offered in alternate years with MUSI2060 Red is the colour: music and politics in post-1949 China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **MUSI2057. Western music history 2: from the rise of opera to Beethoven (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues from where MUSI1021 leaves off, covering the integrated instrumental and vocal idioms of the so-called Baroque and Classical periods (ca. 1600 to 1800). A strong focus is placed on the introduction of the fundamental aspects of music theory and the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which it was created.

Prerequisite: MUSI1021 (only applies to music majors).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **MUSI2058. Western music history 3: from Beethoven to the present (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the Western art music tradition from around 1800 to the present, moving from the apparent stylistic perfection of the Classical era to the revolutions and restless variety of the Romantic era, and finally working through the complex experiments of 20th-century music, the relationship between "high" (classical) and "low" (popular) repertoires, and the adoption of Western idioms on the part of composers in Asia. A strong focus is placed on the introduction of the fundamental aspects of music theory and the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which music was created.

Prerequisite: MUSI2057 (only applies to music majors).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MUSI2059. Music and the mind: introduction to the psychology of music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course considers music as a phenomenon of human behaviour and the human psyche, and examines issues concerning the relationship between music and the mind. We begin with an introduction to the psychoacoustical groundwork and auditory/musical perception, and move to issues in the cognitive psychology of music, such as how we represent the musical structure in the mind, and what roles expectation and memory play during the process of listening to music. Particular focus will be placed upon the psychological accounts of music-theoretical phenomena, such as consonance and dissonance, rhythm and meter, tonality, harmony, and voice-leading. Moreover, the significance of social and cultural contexts will be underlined, and ecological psychology of music and cross-cultural approaches to music perception will be introduced. The course will also touch upon more recent developments in the field of music psychology, including music and emotion, music performance, the social psychology of music, as well as neuro-scientific research.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2060. Red is the colour: music and politics in post-1949 China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the relationship between music and politics in post-1949 China. It aims to provide students with a critical perspective on the complex role that politics has played in shaping contemporary Chinese musical culture. Major issues explored include music and national identity in modern China, the conflict between Western-style conservatories and Chinese traditional genres, music as propaganda under the Maoist regime, music of the Red Guards and Jiang Qing's model works during the Cultural Revolution, music in post-Mao China, and the politics of globalization since the 1990s. The course is offered in alternate years with MUSI2055 Chinese opera.

Prerequisite: MUSI2010 or MUSI2029.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2061. Contrapuntal techniques 1: modal counterpoint (6 credits)**

This course is a study of the stylistic features of 16th-century vocal polyphony with special reference to the works of Palestrina and Lassus. Students are required to submit compositional projects using musical styles prevalent during the sixteenth century and analyses of selected polyphonic compositions. The course is offered in alternate years with MUSI2062 Contrapuntal technique 2: tonal counterpoint.

Prerequisite: MUSI2065.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2062. Contrapuntal techniques 2: tonal counterpoint (6 credits)**

This course investigates the contrapuntal styles of the eighteenth century with special reference to the works of J.S. Bach. Students are expected to develop a comprehensive understanding of the techniques and stylistic features of 18th-century counterpoint through score analysis and compositional projects. A substantial original work in 18th-century style is required as a final project. MUSI2061 Contrapuntal technique 1: modal counterpoint is not a prerequisite, and is offered in alternate years with this course.

Prerequisite: MUSI2065.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**MUSI2063. The opera (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will chart the history of opera in the Western world in both its relationship to social and political history and that of other major musical and theatrical genres. Through the close reading of the genre, students will learn about opera as the art of singing, poetry, and stagecraft, and make their acquaintance with some of the remarkable protagonists of its history, be they singers or composers, poets or designers, impresarios or monarchs. Attention will also be placed on the strength and resilience of local, as opposed to national or continental, traditions, such as the ones that flourished in Rome and London in the seventeenth century, Naples in the eighteenth, or St. Petersburg in the nineteenth, to name a few. The course will also provide students with an appealing and vivid demonstration of the diversity of musical and literary traditions in Europe during the period between ca. 1600 and 1900. The course will end with a reflection on the current state of Western opera as performed and consumed in East Asia, with particular reference to China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2064. Music and science: conjunctions in Western history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course investigates the link between music and science in Western history. Music has been frequently associated with science, but the way the two realms have been interconnected with each other varies throughout history. The following are some instances of the connection between music and science: Pythagorean mathematics and the study of musical scales, tuning, and temperament; the medieval *quadrivium* of arithmetic, geometry, astronomy, and music; the bond between music and magic in neo-platonic philosophy; the rise of acoustics and the sounding body (*corp sonore*) as the basis for the theory of harmony; psycho-acoustical explanation of consonance/dissonance; music as information; composing with numbers; and the 21st-century scientific findings on music and the brain. In exploring each case of scientific thoughts on music in history, students are expected to obtain a contextual understanding of music and science as socio-cultural products and to gain insight into the interdisciplinary nature of the study of music.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2065. Fundamentals of tonal music II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A continuation of MUSI1019 Fundamentals of tonal music I, this course explores further into tonal procedures. It begins with the use of seventh chords, and will progress to basic chromatic harmony. Contrapuntal gestures and simple formal structures such as binary and ternary forms will also be introduced. Students completing the course are expected to have attained a thorough understanding of the function and voice-leading principles of diatonic and simple chromatic harmonies, and be able to analyze simple forms and contrapuntal textures.

Prerequisite: MUSI1019.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**MUSI2066. Performance study 2 (for students in their second year of study) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students taking this course have to enrol in two performance ensembles or workshops offered by the Music Department over two semesters. Ensembles include University Choir and Union Philharmonic

Orchestra. Performance workshops offered vary from year to year and may include classes in voice, percussion, Chinese instruments, and choral conducting. Please check with the Music Department for details. Performance study 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor/conductor assessment).

---

### **MUSI2067. Introduction to electroacoustic music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a hands-on introduction to the use of music technology and the creation of electroacoustic music. Topics to cover include sound recording, digital audio mixing, music acoustics, synthesizer techniques, MIDI, MAX/MSP, interactive music making, score printing, and music database. Students are required to do laboratory projects as well as attending lectures.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

### **MUSI2068. University gamelan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all second and third year students, focuses on performance in the Balinese gong-chime orchestra called the *gamelan gong kebyar*. Students will participate in weekly workshops on the *gamelan* over two semesters and may also have the opportunity to participate in public performances.

Prerequisite: MUSI1022 (exemptions may be considered on a case-by-case basis).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

## **Level 3000 courses**

### **MUSI3016. Directed study 2 (for students in their third year of study) (6 credits)**

In this course, the student works on a one-to-one basis with a supervisor throughout the year. During the first semester, the supervisor introduces theories and techniques of musical research through reading, discussion, and book reports. Towards the end of the semester, a research topic is to be agreed upon between the student and supervisor. The second semester is devoted to researching the topic and writing a thesis under the guidance of the supervisor. Entry to this course is at the discretion of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Department's Undergraduate Coordinator. Directed study 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment: 100% thesis.

---

### **MUSI3019. Advanced music performance 3 (for students in their third year of study) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students prepare a recital of 30-40 minutes under the supervision of a vocal or instrumental teacher approved by the Department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument, or must use either period or advanced 20th-century techniques, as appropriate. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **MUSI3020. Music analysis (6 credits)**

This course endeavours to develop students' understanding of tonal procedures in the melodic and harmonic construction of music during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, focusing in particular on the music of the Classical period. Students are expected to develop skills in music analysis,

primarily through examining Schoenberg's ideas of motif, phrase, period, sentence, and developing variation, in order to understand the construction of tonal form.

Prerequisite: MUSI2065.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **MUSI3021. Performance study 3 (for students in their third year of study) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students taking this course have to enrol in two performance ensembles or workshops offered by the Music Department over two semesters. Ensembles include University Choir, University Gamelan, and Union Philharmonic Orchestra. Performance workshops offered vary from year to year and may include classes in voice, percussion, Chinese instruments, and choral conducting. Please check with the Music Department for details. Performance study 1 and Performance study 2 are not prerequisites.

Prerequisite: MUSI2004, only applies for students who would like to enrol in University Gamelan (exemptions may be considered on a case-by-case basis).

Assessment: 100% practical examination (and instructor/conductor assessment).

---

## **PHILOSOPHY**

Studying philosophy trains you to think critically, creatively, and independently. It provides excellent preparation for work in a variety of professions. Philosophy graduates hold important positions in government, business, education, journalism, and many other fields.

Our syllabus enables you to take a small amount of philosophy (in any year of study, without prerequisites), to major in philosophy, to take a double major, combining philosophy with another Arts or Social Sciences discipline, or to take a minor in philosophy. We recommend that students complete PHIL1001 or PHIL1002 or PHIL1003 or PHIL1004 before enrolling in upper-level courses, but students who have not done so may enroll with the permission of the instructor. Philosophy majors and minors are required to take one of the four courses as a prerequisite for the major and minor.

Courses are generally organized as lectures or seminars and typically include tutorials. Particular importance is attached to tutorial participation.

A distinctive part of a university education is developing the ability to formulate and defend one's own ideas. The philosophy syllabus and our approach to teaching is guided by this principle.

The HKU Philosophy Department is known around the world for its pioneering role over the last two decades in exploiting the advantages of information technology as a new instrument in learning. Though not a substitute for thought or for more traditional forms of learning, properly used, I.T. facilitates our teaching and helps students develop skills that can be useful more generally.

Our courses are divided into three levels and four groups. The three levels correspond to the three years of study for an undergraduate degree. But students in any Faculty may take, for instance, a first-year philosophy course in any year of study (provided that the regulations of their own degree programme permit it). The four groups are of courses related by subject. The four first-year courses correspond roughly to these groups.

---

### **First Year**

The department offers four general introductory courses in philosophy, one introductory course in critical thinking, and one introduction course in logic. There are no prerequisites. All these courses will normally be offered every year.

Students who intend to declare the major or minor in Philosophy are required to take PHIL1001, PHIL1002, PHIL1003, or PHIL1004. These courses are usually taken in the first year of study but may also be taken in other years. The four courses are also strongly recommended for students interested in taking individual second and third-year courses without majoring or minoring in philosophy.

**PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Human beings have always attempted to understand and control the world they live in by asking questions, and seeking effective answers, about that world. These attempts have taken many forms, but philosophy has always been a central part of this process of explanation and the progress of knowledge. The questions of what we can know, how we can know, and how we can use what we know, are prime examples of philosophical questions that have come down to us in a long history of inquiry – philosophy is a part of the natural and practical curiosity of mankind.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to philosophical issues about the mind. These include metaphysical questions about what minds are, whether the mind is something non-physical or whether it is some kind of a computer. Then there are the epistemological questions about the limitation of human knowledge, such as whether we can really know what other people's experiences are like, or whether there is a God.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL1003. Ethics and society: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

One of the founders of Western philosophy, Socrates, claimed that the most important philosophical question is "How is one to live?" How are we to live in our relations with others as individuals? And how are we to live together in communities and societies? This course will introduce some of the ways that key philosophers in the Western tradition have answered these questions. Reading texts by Plato and Aristotle in ancient Greece, and modern and contemporary writings by Locke, Kant, Mill, Rawls and contemporary theorists of democracy, we will explore questions about the way we relate to other people.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL1004. Chinese and Western thought: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course compares central themes in the philosophical dialogues of the Chinese and Western traditions. Topics may include Confucian intuition, Daoist paradox, Greek rationalism, British Empiricism, Existentialism, Pragmatism, Maoism, Zen Buddhism, and positivism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL1005. Critical thinking and logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Critical thinking is a matter of thinking clearly and rationally. It is important for solving problems, effective planning, and expressing ideas clearly and systematically. We shall study the basic principles of critical thinking, and see how they can be applied in everyday life.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% final examination.

Note: not taken YEDU0001.

**PHIL1068. Elementary logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a web-based self-study course on elementary formal logic. Formal logic uses special symbolic notations to study reasoning and arguments systematically. In this course we shall look at some basic concepts in logic, and learn how to use special logical symbols to construct and evaluate arguments. There are no lectures in this course, and all teaching material is available online for self-study. There are, however, optional tutorials for students to ask questions. Registered students should visit the philosophy department web site at the beginning of the semester to find out how they can obtain access to the learning material.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Students who have taken PHIL1006, PHIL1008, PHIL2006, PHIL2008, or PHIL2510 may not take this course.

**Second and Third Years**

Students wishing to take the courses listed below are strongly recommended to have taken PHIL1001 or PHIL1002 or PHIL1003 or PHIL1004. However, students who have not done so may enroll with the instructor's permission. Apart from PHIL3810 "Senior Seminar" and PHIL3910 "Senior Thesis", these courses are all second or third-year courses. Some of these courses are also available to students of other faculties as 'broadening courses'.

With the exception of PHIL3810 and PHIL3910, all second and third-year courses fall into one of four groups:

- Knowledge and reality
- Mind and language
- Moral and political philosophy
- History of philosophy

Of the second and third-year courses, twelve to sixteen will normally be offered each year. The specific courses offered each year are published on the Department's website in August. Not every course will be available in every two-year period. Some courses are likely to be offered every year, however, while some are offered at least once every two years to make sure that every student has an opportunity to take them. Details are indicated below.

**Major in Philosophy.** Students who major in philosophy must take PHIL1001, PHIL1002, PHIL1003, or PHIL1004 and not less than 54 credits worth of second and third-year courses in philosophy (that is, nine 6-credit courses). PHIL1001, PHIL1002, PHIL1003, or PHIL1004 is usually taken in the first year of study, but students may also take them in other years. Students are recommended to take at least one course from each of the four groups specified below. Third-year majors who qualify are recommended to take PHIL3810 "Senior Seminar" in their final year, especially if they are considering further study in philosophy. Students may also take a double major, combining philosophy with another Arts or Social Science discipline. (BA students taking a double major with a Social Science discipline must conform to the requirements determined by the Faculty of Social Sciences for majors in a Social Science discipline.)

**Minor in Philosophy.** Students who minor in philosophy must complete PHIL1001, PHIL1002, PHIL1003 or PHIL1004 and not less than 30 credits worth of second and third-year courses in philosophy (that is, five 6-credit courses). PHIL1001, PHIL1002, PHIL1003, or PHIL1004 is usually taken in the first year of study, but students may also take them in other years.

**“Capstone” courses.** Third-year majors or minors in philosophy who fulfill the enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional “capstone” course giving them the opportunity to apply disciplinary knowledge and methods learned in the first two years of study. The capstone courses available include PHIL3810 Senior Seminar and PHIL3910 Senior Thesis.

---

### ***Group I: Knowledge and Reality***

#### **PHIL2006. Logic for philosophers 1 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is the first part of a two web-based self-study course on elementary formal logic for philosophy majors. The courses may also be taken by non-majors with permission of their home department. Formal logic uses special symbolic notations to study reasoning and arguments systematically. In this course we shall look at some basic concepts in logic, and learn how to use special logical symbols to construct and evaluate arguments. There are no lectures in this course, and all teaching material is available online for self-study. There are, however, optional tutorials for students to ask questions. Registered students should visit the philosophy department web site at the beginning of the semester to find out how they can obtain access to the learning material.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Students who have completed PHIL1006, PHIL1068, or PHIL2510 may not take this course.

---

#### **PHIL2008. Logic for philosophers 2 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is the second part of a two web-based self-study course on elementary formal logic for philosophy majors. The courses may also be taken by non-majors with permission of their home department. Formal logic uses special symbolic notations to study reasoning and arguments systematically. In this course we shall look at some basic concepts in logic, and learn how to use special logical symbols to construct and evaluate arguments. There are no lectures in this course, and all teaching material is available online for self-study. There are, however, optional tutorials for students to ask questions. Registered students should visit the philosophy department web site at the beginning of the semester to find out how they can obtain access to the learning material.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: Students who have completed PHIL1008, PHIL1068, or PHIL2510 may not take this course.

---

#### **PHIL2110. Knowledge (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Theory of knowledge deals with the nature and possibility of knowledge and its limits. We shall address questions that include: Is Scepticism possible? Are some kinds of knowledge more basic than others? Are our views of the world really true or just elaborate stories that serve our purposes? Can philosophers learn about knowledge from psychology and physiology? What could philosophers add to their stories? Is there one concept of justification (reason) or many (social and cultural differences)? Is truth an important goal of knowledge?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **PHIL2120. Topics in analytic philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An advanced introduction to contemporary philosophy, this course will focus on three areas of lively current debate. Students will have an opportunity to critically examine a sample of the best recent work in analytic philosophy. Careful attention will be paid to the roots of these debates in the work of Frege, Russell, Moore and Wittgenstein. Topics will include: skepticism, vagueness, and causation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2130. Philosophy of the sciences (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

If we want to find out about the world around us, we look to science to provide the answers to our questions. But why? What justifies our faith in this enterprise? In this course, we shall investigate two related questions. First, what is scientific method? We shall examine answers ranging from the rigid prescriptions of Popper to the anarchism of Feyerabend. Second, what reason do we have to think that the explanations provided by science are true? Here the answers range from optimism based on the success of science, to pessimism based on our repeated rejection of past theories. Along the way, we shall critically consider notions such as progress, objectivity, and the difference between science and non-science. We shall examine how philosophical questions arise in actual scientific practice. What examples are selected for this purpose will, to some extent, be determined by the interests of students. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2140. Philosophy of social science (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How should we understand and explain human life and activities? This course will examine different models of explanation in the social sciences, and will proceed by case studies. Which cases are taken will depend on the interests and knowledge of those who enrol for the course. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2150. Philosophy and biology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Charles Darwin's theory of evolution had a huge impact on the way we think about mankind's place in the world. In this course we will discuss some of the philosophical consequences of this impact. No previous knowledge of the theory is required as we will begin with a critical introduction to its development and main features. Later in the course we will also consider the contemporary debate concerning the scope and limits of evolutionary theory. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2210. Metaphysics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers both the nature of reality and the nature of knowledge of it and treats the two questions as intrinsically connected. We shall examine a number of important theories of metaphysics, as well as anti-metaphysics, including those of Plato, Descartes, Hume, Kant, Nietzsche, Heidegger, and contemporary philosophers such as Habermas, Rorty and Putnam. We will treat these theories not only as representing different views on metaphysics but also as forming a logical order of development.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We study Chinese views of reality, human nature, language, wisdom and the relation of each to human society. Our main texts will be Daoist texts from the classical period, but we shall also discuss Neo-Daoism, Buddhism and Neo-Confucian metaphysics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**Group II: Mind and Language****PHIL2070. Pragmatism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is in two unequal parts. In the first and longer part, we shall study the writings of the classical pragmatists: Peirce, Dewey and James; in the second, we shall look more briefly at some of the so-called 'neo-pragmatists' such as Quine, Davidson and Putnam. We shall then consider the question of the relationship between these two schools, and think seriously about the recent suggestion that the earlier is in fact the better.

Topics to be discussed include: truth and knowledge; religion and science; and rationality, personality and aesthetics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

One of the central issues in contemporary philosophy of language and linguistics concerns whether and where one should draw the line between semantic meaning and pragmatic meaning, or the meanings had by the words and sentences a speaker uses, and what a speaker means in using those words and sentences. One reason the issue is central is that there are debates over the semantic meanings of certain expressions, e.g. names and definite descriptions. Without a general account of the difference between semantic and pragmatic meaning, these debates cannot be settled. Another reason the issue is central is that there are some who, in a roughly Wittgensteinian manner, deny that there is any real sense to be made of the notion of semantic, or literal, meaning. According to them, there is, therefore, no line between pragmatic and semantic meaning at all. In this course we will try to determine whether the distinction can be drawn, and, if so, where.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2220. The mind (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The human mind is the nexus of a number of great mysteries. What is the nature of self? Is the mind identical to the brain, or is it an immaterial substance? Is Artificial Intelligence possible, and can computers experience emotions and other feelings? Are our actions free, or are they determined by our genes and upbringing? We shall be exploring some of these issues and other related topics in this course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We shall look at some of the philosophical issues involved in studying minds and behaviour scientifically. We might discuss questions such as: Can we explain all mental phenomena in computational terms? What is consciousness? What is the role of language in thinking? How useful are neural networks in understanding the mind?

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**PHIL2260. Seminar in mind and language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The philosophy of mind and language occupies a central place within analytic philosophy. This course provides an advanced introduction to selected topics in the area, through intensive reading of recent publications. The course will be conducted mainly as a seminar, and students are required to give presentations and to participate in discussion. This format is intended to help students deepen their understanding of analytical and argumentative skills in philosophy. Topics might include: the semantics of natural language, philosophical foundation of linguistics, consciousness, philosophical issues relating to mental representation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2410. Mind and language in Chinese thought (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The philosophy of mind and language plays a crucial role in the philosophical dialectic of classical China. This course will guide students in reconstructing this dialectic and exploring its philosophical significance by interpreting and critically evaluating selected early Chinese philosophical texts that treat mind, language, and interrelated aspects of psychology. Issues to be discussed include the nature and functions of the heart-mind (*xīn*), its relation to other organs, the nature of perception and knowledge, semantic theories, and the role of language in knowledge and action. Texts may include the *Analects*, *Mozi*, *Mencius*, *Daodejing*, *Xunzi*, *Zhuangzi*, and *Lushi Chunqiu*. Students will be encouraged to read the original sources in Chinese, but translations will be made available for those without reading knowledge of classical Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course, we shall learn to analyze grammatically and semantically the language used in the classical texts of Chinese philosophy. The analysis will help us construct arguments in favour of or against various interpretations and translations. We briefly discuss texts from the *Analects* of Confucius, the *Mozi*, the *Zhuangzi* and then do a detailed analysis of the *Daode Jing*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2510. Logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an introduction to formal logic. We will review sentential and predicate logic. We will discuss theorems about formal systems of logic, including soundness and completeness. Time permitting, we will discuss advanced topics such as Gödel's incompleteness theorems, computability, Tarski's theorem, or modal logic. Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before enrolling in this course. In preparation, students can take PHIL1005, or PHIL2006, or else students can study the online material on logic produced by the department. For further details, please contact the department.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2511. Paradoxes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Paradoxes are arguments which proceed from highly plausible assumptions, through highly plausible and usually simple steps to highly implausible conclusions. Some examples: Zeno's paradoxes of motion, Kant's antinomies, the Liar and the paradox of the surprise examination. What such paradoxes show is that there is something deeply wrong with some of our most fundamental ways of thinking. We shall attempt to find solutions to certain of these paradoxes. Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before studying this course. To prepare for the course, they can either take PHIL2006, or study the online material on logic produced by the department. For further details, please contact the department.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

When thinking about inference, a number of concepts come to our attention, such as *truth*, *logical constants*, *propositions*, *necessity*, *consequence*, *logical form*. Various questions with which the course deals include: 'What is the relation of Logic to reasoning?'; 'What does the existence of paradoxes tell us about our accepted logical principles?'; 'What is the best way to represent arguments in ordinary language if we wish to study the validity of such arguments?' 'Are there types of discourse which are by nature fuzzy, demanding a fuzzy logic for their representation?'; 'Must logic fit empirical facts, or is it a 'pure' discipline?' Students are expected to know some elementary formal logic before studying this course. To prepare for the course, they can either take PHIL2006, or study the online material on logic produced by the department. For further details, please contact the department.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What is a language, and what is involved in knowing or understanding a language? In this course we will see how philosophers and linguists answer such questions as the following: What can logic tell us about the grammar of natural languages? Are human beings born with a universal grammar? What makes a word meaningful? What is the difference between what we mean and what we convey when we say something? How does a metaphor work? Can we learn something from slips of the tongue about the nature of language?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Group III: Moral and Political Philosophy****PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The world has changed a great deal since the time of Marx. But Marxism, duly updated and refined, still has a lot to teach us about the nature of human society and historical change, the capitalist organization of society, the foundation and limits of liberal democracy, the constitution of power and the political. These and other issues raised by Marxism are, or ought to be, among the central concerns of political philosophy or philosophy of history. We will examine how Marxism, especially contemporary Marxism, can serve as a useful critique of liberal political philosophy and liberal political institutions. We will also discuss how Marxism itself needs to be transformed or reconceived in order to create an appealing democratic vision of genuine contemporary relevance.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2310. Theories of morality (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers some of the main highlights of 20th century moral philosophy, with passing attention to some of the earlier, historical background as needed. Questions covered include: Is morality relative or absolute? Can a moral practice be right in one culture but wrong in another? Is morality basically a form of personal or social opinion, or is there any way it can be made objective or even scientific? If morality is not science, is there any rational way of resolving moral disputes? Perspectives considered include religious and nature-based theories, performative theories, rational intuitionism, utilitarianism and modern theories of justice.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2320. Happiness (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Happiness is something we all strive for, despite the fact that we have only hazy and inconsistent notions of what it would involve. Is it a psychological state or the condition of living a good life? Is it to be gained by withdrawing from the world, or engaging in it? Are we, in some sense, designed to be happy, or is it always an impossibility? This course will lead students through some of the most influential conceptualizations of happiness in the Western tradition. We will consider, in detail, the work of Aristotle (*Nicomachean Ethics*), J.S. Mill (*Utilitarianism*) and Freud (*Civilization and Its Discontents*). This focus will allow us to explore a range of ideas about the nature of happiness and the possibility (or impossibility) of our achieving it. Particular emphasis will be placed on the ongoing influence of these conflicting ideas in our contemporary world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2340. Moral problems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many practical problems give rise to moral controversies. Among the questions to be considered in this course are 'Should one person treat all others equally?'; 'Is abortion a type of killing, and is it acceptable?'; 'Should certain types of pornography be banned?'; 'Can capital punishment be justified?'; 'Is it right to take affirmative action in favour of groups who have been discriminated against in the past?'; 'Should old people be helped to die, if that is what they wish?'. These are all 'large-scale' questions, but we shall also be discussing less grand, but no less important moral dilemmas that we each confront from time to time.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2345. Social contract theories (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we study the major modern theories of social contract, starting with the seventeenth-century *Leviathan* of Thomas Hobbes, which places the state above its subjects. Later in the same century John Locke's *Second Treatise of Government* argued that the contracting parties to the state would seek protection of their property above all, and that they could dismiss a non-performing government, an inspiration for the American Revolution. Jean-Jacques Rousseau rejected the positions of Hobbes and Locke, basing his social contract on the will of all jointly to secure the common good, or 'general will'. John Rawls' *A Theory of Justice* in the twentieth century bases the democratic system on a conception of social justice grounded in equality of basic rights and regard for the least advantaged members of society.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2350.     Philosophy of law (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We shall set the scene by contrasting classical Western and Chinese views of law. Then we shall focus on what moral and political presuppositions are required to justify the rule of law. This will guide our view of how one ought to reason in interpreting the law, and finally see what the implications of theory of law are for our views of punishment, rights, justice, equality, responsibility, insanity, and negligence. This course should help you evaluate the arguments for the importance of the rule of law in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2355.     Theories of justice (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

All of us care about justice but perhaps you seldom pause to reflect on the nature of justice and the many difficult issues which justice raises. This course introduces you to these issues and systematic ways of thinking about them. In a nutshell, justice is concerned with the question, How should the benefits and burdens of social cooperation be distributed among members of society under conditions of scarcity and conflicting values? Or, as Serge-Christophe Kolm puts it, “What should be done when different people’s desires or interests oppose one another and cannot all be fully satisfied? Justice is the justified answer to this question and its science is the theory of justice.” We will think about this question at two levels: the distribution of fundamental rights and duties in the basic structure of society; and the distribution of goods in particular domains, such as health care. Since controversy abounds at both levels, we will discuss and compare a variety of positions, including those of John Rawls, Brian Barry, Amartya Sen, Ronald Dworkin, Robert Nozick, Serge-Christophe Kolm, Norman Daniels, and Francis Kamm. We will also consider whether, and to what degree, Western theories of justice such as these are useful for thinking about issues of justice in Hong Kong and the PRC at large.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2360.     Political philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey course addresses fundamental questions in the history of political philosophy. Questions about government, justice, property and rights will be addressed through the work of a range of historical and contemporary thinkers. Philosophers to be studied may include Aristotle, Hobbes, Marx, Rawls, and others.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2362.     Liberal democracy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Liberal democracy is the dominant political value and form of government in terms of power and influence in the world today. It is supposed to be a coherent combination of liberalism and democracy, and yet there are deep tensions between these two components. It is by identifying these tensions that we can best understand the workings of liberal democracy as a form of government and assess its plausibility and appeal as a political value. Within this context, such familiar topics as political agency, freedom, rights, and private life will be seen in a fresh light.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2365. Philosophical problems of modernity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will focus on responses to one of the key questions that is posed by twentieth century European philosophy: that is, what is the nature of this modernity in which we live? According to Marx, the experience of modernity is one in which 'all that is solid melts into air'; while according to some contemporary philosophers this is precisely the experience of *post*-modernity. In this course, we will examine the responses of key 20th century philosophers to the question of modernity and postmodernity (these may include, Benjamin, Adorno and Horkheimer, Habermas, Foucault, Lyotard and Bauman). Particular attention will be paid to the way this questioning has led to a reconceptualization of ethics and politics in contemporary societies.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2369. Philosophy of nature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we will develop an understanding of historically and philosophically significant approaches to the environment such as *anthropocentrism* (mainstream environmentalism) and *biocentrism* (deep ecology). We will read authors both from the history of philosophy (Bacon, Descartes and Locke) as well as modern philosophers. We will look at the implications of these philosophies in recent environmental controversies in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2375. Philosophy of art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the philosophical issues which arise when we consider the nature of aesthetic appreciation and judgement. These are some of the questions which will be discussed in the course: What is *mimesis*? Does art simply mirror nature? Is beauty merely 'in the eye of the beholder'? What differences might there be between aesthetic appreciation of art and aesthetic appreciation of nature? What is the relation between art and society? What is the difference between the sublime and the beautiful? These and other questions will be explored through the work of philosophers such as Plato, Aristotle, Hume, Kant, Dewey, Heidegger, Foucault and Lyotard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces two ways of studying philosophy and literature in relation to each other. On the one hand, we shall try to illuminate a range of philosophical, particularly ethical, problems through a close reading of literary texts (which may include the work of Dostoevsky, Henry James, Franz Kafka, and James Joyce). On the other hand, we shall bring the resources of philosophy to bear on questions of literary theory and interpretation (for example, the role of the reader, the position of the writer and the ethics of reading). Both philosophical essays and literary works will be used in the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2390. Philosophy of religion (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Topics discussed will include: the nature of religious experience, the existence of God, life after death, religion and morality, religion and reason.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: ethics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to comparative moral philosophy, with readings drawn from the classical Chinese tradition as well as from modern, analytical sources. Figures likely to be taken up include Confucius, Mencius, Mo Tzu and Han Fei Tzu. Attention will be given to the historical development of Chinese moral thinking through these key representatives. Questions to be taken up include the question of whether traditional Chinese thought can have relevance to us in the modern world, and how our beliefs about our nature may shape our beliefs about what is moral or immoral.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2480. Confucianism and the modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces some of the central ideas of Confucianism, particularly as they have been developed by Neo-Confucian thinkers, and considers the contemporary meaning and relevance of these ideas for societies with a Confucian tradition. The thematic focus of the course is on whether and how (Neo-)Confucianism promotes or hinders economic, political and cultural modernization. We shall also discuss how (Neo-)Confucianism interacts with Western ideas, and (in the case of the PRC) Marxism in the process of social transformation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Group IV: History of Philosophy****PHIL2001. The beginnings of philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to include important early thinkers like Plato and Aristotle in the West, and/or Confucius and Lao Tze in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2002. Early modern philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the works of early-modern philosophers writing on politics and science, stressing the interconnections between them. We will examine the claim by some of these philosophers that modern science and technology hold the key to what Francis Bacon called 'the relief of man's estate'. We will read Bacon, Descartes, Bossuet, Locke, La Mettrie, Diderot and Rousseau.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2010. Plato (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course offers a general introduction to the central concerns of Plato's philosophy. It focuses on Plato's early and middle dialogues in which the enigmatic character of Socrates is central. It addresses Plato's teachings on the role of philosophy in the life of the individual, the relation between knowledge and virtue, and his contribution to questions about the nature of love and desire.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2011. Aristotle (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The ancient Greek philosopher Aristotle (384-322 BCE) researched virtually every aspect of human knowledge, producing works that influence philosophy and many other fields down to the present. This course looks at his political and social philosophy; we will read his *Parts of Animals*, *Politics* and *Constitution of Athens*, examining his concepts of nature, human nature, slavery, property, citizenship, democracy, education and the ideal city.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2020. Descartes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The standard accounts of Descartes' philosophy have tended to focus on his late metaphysics and epistemology, but this course is intended as an introduction to many more of the interesting aspects of Descartes' thought. We shall, of course, discuss some of the standard issues in their rightful place (and discuss what that place might be), but we shall also consider Descartes' contributions to, and philosophical thoughts about, e.g. physics, mathematics, and medicine. (*N.B.* No specialist knowledge of these areas is required). The reading will be a combination of Descartes' primary texts (recently published in a very clear translation) and contemporary secondary material.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2025. Hume (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

David Hume (1711 – 1776) was one of the great founders of modern empiricism. This course will serve not only as an introduction to Hume's philosophy, but also as an introduction to modern empiricism as developed especially in the analytical tradition of modern philosophy. The course will appeal especially to students interested in the theory of knowledge, metaphysics and philosophy of mind, as well as to students interested primarily in the history of philosophy.

The course takes up key topics in Hume, such as: Hume's theory of ideas; the formation of reason and imagination; knowledge of the external world and skepticism with regard to the senses; induction; causation, probability and the idea of necessary connection; personal identity; freedom and determinism, reasoning in animals; miracles; virtue and vice in the context of Hume's naturalism. Readings will be drawn primarily from Hume's *A Treatise on Human Nature* and *An Enquiry Concerning Human Understanding*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2027. Rousseau (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Jean-Jacques Rousseau (1712-1778) was one of the most important philosophers of the French eighteenth century. He was critical of the Enlightenment's fascination with science, arguing that virtue, community and a kind of freedom, not technological 'progress', should be the goal of human striving. In this course we seek to understand Rousseau's thought in its historical context; we consider how he can be considered a philosopher for our own time, who respected the rights of nature as well as those of humanity. We read selections from his *Confessions*, and the entire texts of his *Discourse on the Sciences and the Arts*, and his *Discourse on the Origins of Inequality among Men*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2030. Kant's critical philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Two aspects of Kant's philosophy will be examined: first, topics in his theoretical philosophy such as objective knowledge, transcendental idealism and the thing-in-itself; second, topics in his practical philosophy such as moral duty, free will and rationality. Attempts will also be made to unify these two aspects of Kant's philosophy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2035. Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The eighteenth-century European philosophical movement known as 'The Enlightenment' called all previous philosophy into question, destabilizing conventional views of humanity, nature, society and the cosmos; the Enlightenment influences philosophy to this day. This course examines important European thinkers such as Francis Bacon, Bernard Mandeville, Denis Diderot, Jean le Rond D'Alembert, Julien Offray de La Mettrie, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Immanuel Kant from a historical as well as philosophical perspective.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Nietzsche occupies a special place in Western thought, both as a wholesale critic of the philosophical tradition that went before him (e.g. Socrates, Kant), and as a precursor of certain philosophical trends that are important today (e.g. Foucault, Derrida). This course offers an overview of Nietzsche's philosophy (including the will to power, perspectivism, nihilism, eternal return) and discusses Nietzsche's influence on contemporary thought.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2050. Philosophy of history (6 credits)**

This course looks at ideas of a universal, 'sacred history' stemming from Judaism and Christianity, as articulated by St. Augustine, and moves on to the secular idea of an underlying, universal pattern to the seeming chaos of human history expressed in the writings of thinkers from the eighteenth to the twentieth centuries. Readings will include excerpts from the writings of Herder, Kant, Condorcet, Hegel, Popper and Fukuyama.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2060. Wittgenstein (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Wittgenstein said that his aim in philosophy was 'to show the fly the way out of the fly bottle'. By this he meant that certain preconceptions, oversimplifications and poor analogies had led philosophers to construct misguided theories about such things as sensation, meaning, understanding and the nature of language, and that it was his task not to construct alternative theories but to point out the ways in which the theorists (including his earlier self) had become entrapped. This programme may appear modest, but Wittgenstein's approach has had far-reaching consequences and his work has received more discussion than that of any other twentieth century philosopher and has influenced philosophy and many other disciplines.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**PHIL2077. Habermas (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The important German philosopher Habermas, combining strengths of the Continental and Anglo-American philosophical traditions, has developed a highly influential theory on a wide range of moral, political and historical issues. This course is designed to provide a general introduction to Habermas's interdisciplinary, comprehensive, and politically engaged way of doing philosophy. Topics covered include discourse ethics, the public sphere, social action and rationality, technology and science as ideology, the nature of modernity, and legitimation problems in late capitalism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2085. Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to cover various important twentieth century thinkers (these may include Husserl, Heidegger, Sartre, Foucault, Derrida) and/or major movements in twentieth century European thought (such as phenomenology, existentialism, structuralism and poststructuralism). Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet '*Choices in Philosophy*'.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2090. Foucault (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The work of French philosopher Michel Foucault (1924-1984) has been enormously influential in many fields: from philosophy and politics to social theory and gender studies. This course offers a general introduction to this work, with particular focus on power, knowledge and sexuality. It will end with a consideration of Foucault's contribution to a contemporary re-thinking of subjectivity and ethics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2440. Confucius (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will look at modern interpretations of traditional Confucianism, primarily from the perspective of modern analytical philosophy, but with some attention also to the sociological literature, and to modern applications of Confucianism, for example in Singapore.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2442. Mencius (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Mencius, the most influential of Confucian philosophers, presents interesting challenges to interpretation. Does his philosophy provide a basis for a Chinese theory of human rights? Is his conception of human nature defensible today? Which tradition of interpretation (mind or principle) gives the most plausible interpretation? We shall discuss these questions while looking at some modern scholarly interpretations of Mencius in his ancient context.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PHIL2450. Zhuangzi (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we shall explore different lines of interpretation of Zhuangzi's Daoist philosophy. Students will participate in defending either relativist, sceptical or mystical readings of key passages. We shall start our analysis with the historical context and some textual theory. Then we shall discuss several chapters in some detail, including the historical account of the development of Daoism in 'Tianxia', the relativism in 'Autumn Floods' and 'Free and Easy Wandering', and finally the analytic scepticism and pluralism of the 'Essay on Making Things Equal'.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2451. Philosophers' views of China in early-modern Europe (6 credits)**

This course examines the varied views of China, its philosophy and government in the writings of seventeenth- and eighteenth-century ("early-modern") philosophers ranging from Leibniz to Rousseau. The debates broached at the time (e.g. is China a model for Europe or not?) resonate down to the present day.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL2470. Moral psychology in the Chinese tradition (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Issues pertaining to moral psychology played a central role in the philosophical discourse of ancient China. This course will guide students in reconstructing this role and exploring its philosophical significance by interpreting and critically evaluating selected early Chinese philosophical texts related to motivation, moral education, moral cultivation, moral reasoning, and action. Class time will be divided between lecture and discussion. Students will be asked to read primary source texts and participate actively in class discussion. They will be encouraged to read the original sources in Chinese, but translations will be available for those without knowledge of classical Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

***Courses of unspecified category*****PHIL3810. Senior seminar (6 credits)**

This course will focus each year on one or more different key philosophical texts. Presentations will be made by students and discussed according to a schedule worked out in advance between students and the course co-ordinator. Selected third-year students will be invited to enroll.

This is a third-year course and is normally offered every year. Permission to enroll will be given to students with outstanding second-year grades.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: by invitation; for third year students only.

---

**PHIL3910. Senior thesis (12 credits)**

A thesis may be prepared under supervision for submission not later than March 31 of the final year. Students have to decide a topic on which they would like to write, then select a teacher in the relevant field and discuss the project with him/her, before the end of their second year. If the teacher deems the project viable, then a thesis title must be agreed by the closing date of June 15. The student will then have to work on the thesis over the summer, and be able to demonstrate progress made. If the progress is adequate, work on the thesis may continue; if not, the student will have to take two courses instead. There are no word limits prescribed, but theses tend to be between 15,000 and 25,000 words in length. Assessment will be based entirely on the completed thesis. This course is only available to students majoring in Philosophy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Note: for third year Philosophy majors only; this is a whole year course.

## SCHOOL OF MODERN LANGUAGES AND CULTURES

### AMERICAN STUDIES PROGRAMME

The Programme in American Studies provides an interdisciplinary approach to the study of American culture and civilization. Students must gain admittance to the programme by taking **TWO OR MORE** of the first-year courses to qualify for a major or by taking **ONE OR MORE** of the first-year courses to qualify for a minor. These courses include: **AMER1009. Consuming culture: decoding American symbols**, **AMER1011. Born in the USA: U.S. youth cultures**, **AMER1015. Wall Street: issues in American business**, **AMER1017. Movieland: America on Hollywood's big screen** and **AMER1018. From crime fiction to social document: Introduction to 20th-century American literature**. Although students should make every effort to take these courses in their first year, they may take them in the second year as overload if they have not registered for them before. *(All first-year courses are available as 6-credit inter-Faculty electives.)*

---

#### First Year

#### **AMER1009. Consuming culture: decoding American symbols (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Images of America (as revealed in Hollywood films, television, advertisements, music and music videos, news media and consumer products) shape our vision of US culture. In a course specifically designed with Hong Kong students in mind, we will study and decode cultural products mediated to us by the increasingly global American media. We will approach national culture, including popular culture, as an extension and creation of national myths and propaganda and explore why American people are so attached to certain symbols, and what these symbols mean for the United States as a whole. In the course of our discussions we may touch on the symbolism and reality of the American Dream and the myth of "rags to riches," the notion of success, materialism and consumerist culture, as well as on the national and international symbols that for many define the image of America. We may also consider distinctions between high and low/popular cultures and see how class, gender and race affect notions of culture generally and how they shape the particular themes of US culture under discussion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AMER1011. Born in the USA: U.S. youth cultures (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Baby boomers, Beats, Hippies, Yuppies and Gen(eration) Xers are labels assigned to various generations of American youth. This first-year survey course explores the connection between historical change and adolescence/early adulthood in the United States during the second half of the 20th century. Throughout the term we will consider youth culture through the interdisciplinary mix of history, politics, literature and popular culture. From these diverse perspectives, we will discover how young people in America are defined and how they attempt to define themselves by their subcultures, fashion, leisure, music, use of the internet, slang, education and other expressions of identity. While teaching about American youth cultures, the course will offer students a chance to reflect on their own experiences as adolescents/young adults and focus on improving critical thinking, speaking and writing skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER1015. Wall Street: Issues in American business (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will draw on selected issues in American business in order to teach us about the essential characteristics of US society, including its character, values, as well as written (e.g. legal) and unwritten codes of behaviour. Every day, decisions are made on Wall Street which affect how business is conducted in America, Asia and everywhere else around the globe. How did one address become so influential in, and such an icon of, American business? This course seeks to examine the Wall Street phenomenon, as well as its culture, influence and impact on specific components of American business. Issues under discussion may involve the nature of American business, its place in the national life ("the business of America is business," affirmed President Coolidge), its code of ethics and failures to live by that code. Case studies will be drawn from the famous and infamous examples of American entrepreneurial spirit as they made headlines up to, and including, the 21st century. Furthermore, issues such as the rise of the Internet and the information age will be examined to explore the reverse—how they shape Wall Street and the way business is conducted in America. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER1017. Movieland: America on Hollywood's big screen (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Hollywood is known to spin dreams, visions and illusions but, caught in the big-screen experience, viewers often forget that these dreams and illusions are spun within particular social and cultural contexts. Films are woven into national myths, myths are woven into the society that builds them, and society is woven into the people that create and recreate America everyday as they live, work and go to the movies. This course will look at many of the biggest, most famous and most representative Hollywood blockbusters—films and their movie-star icons—that in many ways define American culture. Students will be introduced to various genres that have become synonymous with Hollywood, among them the action thriller, classic and revisionist western, MGM musical, film *noir* and police story, science fiction, romantic comedy, Disney animation and others. The experience of these films and their contexts will broaden our knowledge of American cultural values and help us critique these values, so that the reality of American life is explored alongside its ideals. The course will also aim to enhance critical and creative thinking as well as speaking and writing skills. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER1018. From crime fiction to social document: Introduction to 20th-century American literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Humphrey Bogart, Robert Mitchum, James Caan, Jack Nicholson, Robert Eliot Gould... all these Hollywood actors played him: the tired gumshoe, the hired dick, the hardboiled detective, the gun for hire, the private eye. If you've seen them in action and liked what you saw, now is your chance to study the original novels on which the films were based. In this course we will read and analyze some of the classic novels of the genre which at various points has been labelled hardboiled fiction, tough guy fiction, or even *noir*, and what they tell us about life in America in the 20th century. We will begin with a socio-economic look at the several decades in American history crucial to the development of modern crime, crime-fighting forces and crime fiction, laying the foundations for a better understanding of the novels and films in the course and the social issues they touch on. Building on these opening lectures, we will trace the rise of the hardboiled story from pulp fictions of the 1920s and the emergence of the classic hero (the private eye) and heroine (the femme fatale), to the contemporary examples of the genre, including the police procedural and the legal/lawyer procedural. We will try to identify what is specific and recurrent about American crime fiction in terms of its structure and themes, and try to understand its portrayal of America then and now. Assessment: 100% coursework.

## Second and Third Years

### The Major

In order to ensure reasonable coverage and interdisciplinary understanding, students who intend to pursue a major in American Studies must, in their second and third years, take a minimum of nine 6-credit courses (or the equivalent) from the list below. Only in exceptional cases may a waiver be granted for a core course.

Third year students taking a major or minor in American Studies who fulfill the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years.

#### 4 American Studies Core Courses (24 credits)

- AMER2030. Foundations of American studies, Part I (6-credit course in second year)**
- AMER2031. Foundations of American studies, Part II (6-credit course in second year)**
- AMER3004. Senior seminar in American studies: Part I (6-credit course in third year)**
- AMER3005. Senior seminar in American studies: Part II (6-credit course in third year)**

#### *5 Courses from the following list of American Studies and departmental offerings (30 credits)*

##### American Studies

- AMER2002. The road in American culture (6 credits)**
- AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)**
- AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)**
- AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)**
- AMER2021. On the road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)**
- AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)**
- AMER2029. Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)**
- AMER2033. Asia on America's screen (6 credits)**
- AMER2035. Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)**
- AMER2037. Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)**
- AMER3006. Dissertation (12 credits)**

##### Comparative Literature

- CLIT2092. Modern American poetry: Politics and aesthetics (6 credits)**

##### English

- ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)**
- ENGL2055. American gothic: Haunted homes (6 credits)**
- ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)**
- ENGL2099. Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)**
- ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)**

##### Fine Arts

- FINE2020. American art (6 credits)**
- FINE2031. The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)**

## History

- HIST2015.** The United States before 1900 (6 credits)  
**HIST2016.** The United States in the twentieth century (6 credits)  
**HIST2031.** History through film (6 credits)  
**HIST2032.** Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)  
**HIST2053.** The Cold War (6 credits)  
**HIST2069.** The history of American popular culture (6 credits)  
**HIST2092.** The United States and Asia (6 credits)  
**HIST2107.** The Second World War in Asia and the Pacific, 1931-1952 (6 credits)  
**HIST2118.** Chinese and Americans: A cultural and international history (6 credits)

## Music

- MUSI2031.** American music (6 credits)

## Politics and Public Administration

- POLI0044.** American democracy (6 credits)  
**POLI0047.** United States foreign policy (6 credits)  
**POLI0087.** Globalization and world order (6 credits)

*Not all of the above electives may be offered in a given year.*

## The Minor

Students may take American Studies as a minor by completing 30 credits of second and third-year courses. Of these courses, students must take:

*2 American Studies Core Courses (12 credits) drawn from the following:*

- AMER2030.** Foundations of American Studies, Part I (6-credit course in second year)  
**AMER2031.** Foundations of American Studies, Part II (6-credit course in second year)  
**AMER3004.** Senior Seminar in American Studies: Part I (6-credit course in third year)  
**AMER3005.** Senior Seminar in American Studies: Part II (6-credit course in third year)

The remaining 3 courses (18 credits) may be drawn from the following:

- AMER2002.** The road in American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2014.** A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2015.** The American city (6 credits)  
**AMER2018.** Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)  
**AMER2021.** On the road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)  
**AMER2022.** What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2029.** Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)  
**AMER2033.** Asia on America's screen (6 credits)  
**AMER2035.** Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)  
**AMER2037.** Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)  
**AMER3006.** Dissertation (12 credits)

## Second and Third Year

### *American Studies*

#### **AMER2002. The road in American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The popular hit song, “Hit the road, Jack,” is as much a part of American culture and slang as Jack Kerouac’s bestselling account of his life on the American highway, *On the Road*. For better or worse, North Americans have always been on the road, pushing westward towards California, Oregon and British Columbia, moving around the country in pursuit of the American Dream, or just driving along Route 66 to escape the mundane suburban life. This restlessness and the ease with which large segments of the population move and resettle characterizes many aspects of US and Canadian life, turning the road into one of the most powerful symbols in North American literature and culture. Through the analysis of various media forms, which may include film, fiction, music, material culture and architecture, this course will consider the road in America as reality and icon, extending it to the recent emergence of the Internet and the “information highway.”

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Like so many other immigrants to the United States, Asians – Chinese, Japanese, Filipinos, Vietnamese, Koreans, etc. – were also drawn by the dream of Golden Mountain. Yet once in America, they would confront not only promise and possibility but the dream’s betrayal: hostility, rejection and exclusion. This course will explore the varieties of Asian American cultures that emerge out of the painful, disruptive struggles between expectation and reality faced by these immigrants and their children, and the representation of their experiences in the arts, media, politics and popular culture. Asian Americans are frequently stereotyped as model minorities for striving after the American dream of education, wealth and political representation. We will examine and challenge this “model minority” idea in American life and politics, especially as it relates to inter-minority conflict and cooperation, as individual American minority groups attempt to achieve their own version of American success.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In 1800 only 6% of Americans lived in cities; in 2000 this number was more than 80%. As a center of growth, power and cultural diversity, the American city has always occupied a crucial place in America’s vision of itself as a new nation. “A cruel city, but a lovely one, a savage city, yet it had such tenderness”—this quote from Thomas Wolfe’s *A Vision of the City* is representative of the varied cultural representations of the American urban environment as a place where fortunes and lives are made or lost. Through an examination of literature, art, architecture, photography, film and music, this course will take a closer look at some of the greatest as well as the “baddest” American metropolises, looking for a way to understand the people who live, commute, work, create, govern, commit crime and conduct business in them.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designed to familiarize students with business practice in the United States and in American corporations operating in Hong Kong, laying foundations for a better understanding of the individuals and institutions driving the economy. Weekly sessions will include lectures and, whenever possible, discussions with members of the American business community in the Asia-Pacific region. Topics may include: U.S. business history and economic cycles, American entrepreneurs, the ethics and etiquette of U.S. corporate culture, government/business relationships, gender and business, glass ceilings and opportunities for advancement, and business and technological change.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2021. On the road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Concentrating on North American points of interest from cities to landscape to cultural sites—this course will explore the variety and complexity of American life. Throughout the semester students will conduct group research and deliver presentations on the cities and locations to be visited in the summer, which will typically vary in the years the course is offered.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Television has been a powerful force in US history and culture. American TV shows and programming styles have been exported globally, and are modified to suit diverse cultural settings, including Hong Kong. The United States exerts significant global influence, in part because of its success in marketing itself, both domestically and abroad, through media and entertainment. While many contest the content or perspective of American media, few are exempt from its impact. This course offers students a chance to consider the impact of television inside and outside of the US and explore how the American media-machine reaches into every facet of the nation's life as well as into the lives of people around the world. Topics to be discussed in the course may include the history of television, strategies for critical viewing, war and TV, educational television, television's domination of politics, youth culture and TV, the technology behind television programming, and finally TV programming in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2029. Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students in this course will be discussing current and past events as reported in newspapers, magazines, television, literature, films and on the internet. The course will focus on domestic issues facing Americans at home as well as on political, economic and cultural links between the United States and other nations. Pedagogy will be student-centered and require students to participate regularly in (and at times lead) discussions. Typical topics may include the analysis of the American political system and the presidency, the relationship between business and politics, the role of sports in American life, the fallout from September 11, the rise of rap and hip-hop, manufacturing media, regionalism, stand-up comedy and social satire, and the US university system. These and other issues will form the basis of the course taught, on occasion, with the help of representatives of various disciplines across the spectrum of the arts, humanities and social sciences.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**AMER2030. Foundations of American Studies: Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is normally open only to second-year students and is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course and its companion, Foundations in American Studies: Part 2 (offered in the second semester), are requisite for all Majors in the American Studies Programme. Building on the introductory material from the first year, the course provides a mosaic of perspectives on the United States between 1600 and 1900 through an intensive series of lectures and discussions. Following an overview of and a general introduction to the United States, a number of invited experts will trace the development of American society from pre-Columbian times to the beginning of the 20th century. The lectures will range over a diverse but complementary array of viewpoints, and may include geography, history, sociology, business, education, art, music, theatre, language and literature. This unique approach will allow students to sample and compare multidisciplinary perspectives on such foundational issues in US history as the settlement, expansion, the War of Independence, *laissez faire* capitalism, slavery, the Civil War, and the country's rising economic, political and military domination. The lectures will be enriched with discussions, film clips, music, and prints from this period in American life.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2031. Foundations of American Studies: Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is normally open only to second-year students and is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course and its companion, Foundations in American Studies: Part 1 (offered in the first semester), are requisite for all Majors in the American Studies Programme. In this course we will focus exclusively on the 20th and 21st centuries and on the internal problems and international conflicts that shape the face of America today. Among the topics for study and discussion may be the flood of immigration at the turn of the 20th century, the gangster-friendly Jazz Age, the Great Depression, World War II, the worldwide Cold War and the conformist '50s, the psychedelic flower-power '60s, and the post-Vietnam decades in which the US increasingly lost touch with its ideals. Through lectures and class debates we will attempt to compare our popular knowledge of America with the sometimes different historical reality behind it. From documentary sources and literary nonfiction, through film, novels, comic books and rap music, we will lay foundations for a better understanding of the country which for better or worse continues to make the world headlines today.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2033. Asia on America's screen (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

"The Orient" has always held a dual attraction of romance and danger outside Asia, and this tradition has since been reinforced by Hollywood. The allure of wealth, trade and exoticism that brought millions of Americans across the Pacific provided rich material for movie drama. This combination of geographical attraction and cultural appeal was further reinforced during the wars the United States fought in Asia. War, violence and romance fill America's movie screens, pulling in vast crowds and in the process shaping and mis-shaping America's view of Asia. Asking what is Asia and how far it extends, this course will explore cinematic representations of the continent and its people as constructed by Hollywood during more than a century of selling romantic myths to a public that often has no first-hand experience of Asian culture and no firm grasp of its history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER2035. Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The Vietnam War was the first war in the age of the television and the first war that America lost. The emotions aroused by the loss of American lives and the images of violence and brutality made TV and Hollywood important actors in the war for hearts and minds. This course will examine the multiple wars, police actions, military invasions, armed “liberations,” coups d’états, political assassinations, “regime changes” and other euphemisms for military aggression and intervention on an international scale. Among other issues discussed may be international weapons trade, the Cold War, the two World Wars, international peace keeping, “wars” on drugs and/or terrorism, and the state of civil liberties in the US. In the process we will also examine the role of movies, television and journalistic reportage in shaping public opinion and thus indirectly the American perception and misperception of the rest of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2037. Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes and to non-majors subject to the approval of the Programme Co-ordinator.)*

Institutions structure the lives of all Americans. While institutions can be thought of in terms of discreet organizations—Harvard University, the New York Stock Exchange, National Basketball Association, the Metropolitan Museum of Art—or even the buildings in which these organizations are housed, in the broader sense, institutions are the forms into which social activity is organized. Among the most fundamental institutions of this latter type are the family, school, business and leisure. Each of them is associated with values, beliefs and practices which, taken together, help to constitute American culture. The course will examine these and other types of institutions in order to understand the origins of the values, beliefs and practices which they embody. We will also study how these values, beliefs and practices may have been influenced by such factors as ethnicity, race, class, religion and geographic region, and how the institutions and the ideas they embody have persisted or changed over time. In the process, we will seek to identify common themes, and to consider how certain tensions—for example between individualism and community, democracy and excellence, service and profit—have shaped each of these institutions, and through them, American society. Finally, we will consider the extension of these institutions, and their values and practices, beyond the United States, asking how American ideas about home, school, work and play have impacted and interacted with other cultures, including Asian.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Third Year****AMER3004. Senior seminar in American Studies: Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also open to non-majors subject to the approval of the Programme Co-ordinator.)*

This course is required of all Majors in the American Studies Programme and is designed to cap students’ university careers with a rigorous, interdisciplinary and theme-based program of study. The specific area of study may vary from year to year depending on students’ background, interests and the expertise of the instructor. Students will deepen their research and writing skills, conduct discussion sessions, participate in intensive group work, get involved in a mentoring program and continue to hone the critical thinking skills nurtured during their education in American Studies. The seminar will seek ways to prepare students to make the transition from the university setting to a variety of employment settings.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER3005. Senior seminar in American Studies: Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also open to non-majors subject to the approval of the Programme Co-ordinator.)*

This course is required of all Majors in the American Studies Programme and is designed to cap students' university careers with a rigorous, interdisciplinary and theme-based program of study. The specific area of study may vary from year to year depending on students' background, interests and the expertise of the instructor. Students will deepen their research and writing skills, conduct discussion sessions, participate in intensive group work, get involved in a mentoring program and continue to hone the critical thinking skills nurtured during their education in American Studies. The seminar will seek ways to prepare students to make the transition from the university setting to a variety of employment settings.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER3006. Dissertation (12 credits)**

This is a directed reading course aimed at top students in American Studies who would like to pursue an individualized program of research under the supervision of a mentor, typically (though not necessarily) an American Studies Programme instructor or an American Studies Board member. The student is responsible for approaching the instructor in advance and obtaining consent for supervision. The coursework will normally consist of designing the project around a topic relevant to the Programme, compiling a bibliography, research and reading, and finally writing the dissertation. A project proposal consisting of a thesis statement, preliminary outline of research (typically 3-5 pages), timetable for completion, and working bibliography will be filed with the Programme Coordinator no later than November 30. The full dissertation (approximately 40-80 pages) shall be completed and presented for examination by April 30 of the academic year in which the course is taken.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Other courses, offered from time to time by the component departments and approved by the Board of Studies in American Studies in conjunction with the department concerned, may be used to fulfill programme requirements.

**EUROPEAN STUDIES PROGRAMME**

The Programme in European Studies provides an interdisciplinary approach to the study of European civilization. Rather than being based in a single department, the Programme is administered through the Faculty of Arts by a Board of Studies in European Studies comprised of representatives from ten departments and language programmes. Both rigorous and flexible, the Programme enables students to tailor their studies to suit their individual aims; students can develop the necessary skills for a wide range of pursuits related to the politics, history, culture and economy of Europe. Courses offered under the European Studies code are open to non-majors (except **EUST2020**).

To major in European Studies, a student must take four out of five European Studies Core Courses (**EUST1010**, **EUST2010** or **EUST2011**, **EUST2020** and **EUST3010**); complete the second and third years of a Core Language (either French, German, Greek, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, or Swedish); and take a minimum of twelve credits from an approved list of second and third-year optional courses, including courses from at least two disciplines/programmes (see below). In exceptional cases, a particular requirement may be waived.

Students should note that to enter the second year of a language course, one must normally pass the first year of that language (refer to the School of Modern Languages and Cultures for further information). Students should also note that many of the departmental courses have prerequisites set by participating departments.

Any European Studies student who successfully fulfills the requirements of the major in French, German, or Spanish or the minor in French, German, Greek, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, or Swedish will be deemed to have satisfied the language requirement of the European Studies major. In such a case, the student will be required to make up the 24 credits in language core courses by taking an additional 24 credits in optional courses, other language core courses, or a combination of the two.

A minor in European Studies shall consist of 30 credit units of second and third-year courses from the European Studies syllabus. As a pre-requisite, students must pass **EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits)**. The following two courses out of three are compulsory for the minor: **EUST2010. European identity (6 credits)** or **EUST2011. Modern European lifestyle: fashion, food, music and sex (6 credits)** and **EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)**. The following courses are optional but highly recommended: **EUST2012. Problem of contemporary European politics and society (6 credits)**, **EUST2014. Classical roots of European civilization (6 credits)**, **EUST2015. From cinema to society: Understanding Europe through film (6 credits)**, **EUST2030. The modern imagination in Europe (6 credits)**, **EUST3011. European values in conflict (6 credits)**, **EUST3012. The EU as a global actor and Sino-European relations (6 credits)**, **EUST3013. Linguistics of the European languages (6 credits)**, **EUST3014. Love in the European tradition (6 credits)** and **EUST3016. Europe and Scandinavia: Economies, business cultures, and social models (6 credits)**. Courses taken to fulfill the requirements of the student's major may not be counted towards a minor in European Studies.

Third year students taking a major or minor in European Studies who fulfill the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years. Capstone courses which may be available to students include **EUST3003 European Studies Dissertation**, and **EUST3004 European Studies Research Project**.

## EUROPEAN STUDIES COURSES

### First-year Course

#### **EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This first-year course serves as an introduction to European Studies. It is a core requirement for students wishing to major in European Studies, but it is also suitable for anyone seeking a broad understanding of European society and culture. The course examines the forces which have led to Europe becoming increasingly integrated (not the least being the sheer devastation of two world wars) as well as the subsequent tensions and objections to that process. We study the processes and structures of the specific institutions of the European Union and the Council of Europe as well as some of the major issues confronting the EU now, such as enlargement and the constitution. We will also look at some major European domestic concerns as well as divergent foreign policy issues between Europe and the USA.

The approach is multidisciplinary, embracing politics, economics, history, culture and religion.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

## Second and Third-year Courses

### **EUST2010. European identity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is required of all European Studies majors in their second year, will introduce students to the linkages between modern Europe, its historical foundations and its various national identities. Issues of identity will include history, politics, society, languages, religion and culture from the ancient to contemporary periods. Each week we will concentrate on one country. We will be asking the question 'What are the major characteristics of identity of a particular country?' That is not an easy or straightforward question and we will explore why the question is itself something of a problem.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

### **EUST2011. Modern European lifestyle: fashion, food, music and sex in Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with an in depth look at major issues surrounding some of the fundamentals of modern European lifestyle in Europe. The subject takes both a historical and contemporary approach, concentrating mainly, though not exclusively, on the change of habits that came out of the style revolution of the 1960s.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

### **EUST2012. Problems of contemporary European politics and society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an optional course aimed at second year undergraduate students. The course familiarises students with European political systems, examines current issues which shape public debate and illustrates the continent's different political cultures. The aim of the course is to analyze how and why different political systems and political cultures have formed in Europe and what implications this has for contemporary European societies.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

### **EUST2014. Classical roots of European civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course looks at how European society and thought has been shaped by the contributions of the classical age. Using an interdisciplinary approach, it examines the influence the Ancient Greeks and Romans have had on different aspects of European civilization, including philosophy, art, literature, science, politics, and language. The course is taught in lecture/small group format to allow students to develop critical analysis and communication skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **EUST2015. From cinema to society: Understanding Europe through film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey course is designed to give students an insight into key European issues as portrayed in a representative selection of European films by major directors. The course will be tackled in two ways. First, by reading a selection of films as representative of European culture and history, students will learn about issues and events that are instrumental for understanding contemporary European society such as the effects of immigration, the question of national identity, the role of women, the tolerance

to differences in sexual identity, the rise of fascism, the post war reconstruction and the fall of the Berlin Wall. Second, by focusing on the formal analysis of the films, students will develop their critical and analytical thinking skills.

---

The language of instruction is English, but tutorials may be conducted in English and any of the following languages, depending on students' linguistic abilities (French, German, Italian, Swedish and Spanish).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **EUST2020. European Studies in Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is offered to European Studies majors only.)*

This summer course, conducted for three weeks in Europe, is offered to European Studies majors between their second and third years of study. This course gives students a direct experience of the culture and politics of parts of Europe. In addition to visiting a number of European countries we will be visiting key political European institutions in Brussels and Strasburg, and attending lectures by their representatives. We will also be hearing lectures from political analysts, university lecturers and representatives of other organizations. There will also be a range of cultural activities including visiting historical sites, museums and art galleries.

Prerequisite: EUST 1010 Foundations of European Studies AND EUST 2010 European identity OR EUST 2011 Modern European Lifestyle: Fashion, Food, Music, and Sex in Europe.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **EUST2030. The modern imagination in Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to the modern imagination and changing aesthetic sensibility in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries in Europe. It emphasises some of the major stylistic innovations and intellectual currents that have transformed the way in which Europeans (and now increasingly the world at large) perceive and shape the world around them. The course combines examples from literature (including drama), visual art and film. We will explore how the styles, currents and works we are studying have emerged as creative responses to the great upheavals that have taken place in European society with the rise of modernity.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **EUST3003. European Studies dissertation (12 credits)**

Students in this course will be expected to submit a written dissertation based on research into an aspect of European politics, history, culture or economics. The dissertation must be supervised by a teacher, either in European Studies or in another department of the university. Students enrolled in this course may not enroll in EUST3004.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **EUST3004. European Studies research project (6 credits)**

Students in this course pursue independent research and produce a research paper under the supervision of a teacher, either in European Studies or in another department of the university. Students enrolled in this course may not enroll in EUST3003.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is required of all European Studies majors in their third year, will further familiarise students with the major international economic and political institutions in Europe such as the European Union and NATO. The organization of the institutions will be explored along with the processes by which decisions are made and changes can be introduced. Included in the syllabus will be an examination of Europe in the international setting. Taught within a seminar type framework, students will be encouraged to select, in consultation with a staff member, subject areas within the area of focus for deeper examination.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**EUST3011. European values in conflict (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

While Western Europe has presently experienced a rare if not completely unprecedented period of prolonged peace, that peace is far from being assured as it faces serious divisions along ethnic, religious, cultural and political lines. We will be examining the hot spots and flash points today in Europe by taking account of the deep historical roots of these problems.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**EUST3012. The EU as a global actor and Sino-European relations (6 credits)**

This is an optional course aimed at final year undergraduate students. The course sheds light on the history of the EU and the mechanisms and institutions through which it frames and administers its external relations. It also explores the problems and challenges the EU faces in making its voice heard in global affairs with particular attention being paid to the relations between the EU and China.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**EUST3013. Linguistics of the European languages (6 credits)**

The course is a comprehensive overview of comparative Indo-European linguistics and the branches of the Indo-European language family, covering both linguistic and cultural material. Major Indo-European branches covered: Germanic, Baltic, Slavic, Greek, Albanian, and Romance.

Prerequisite: EUST 2010 European identity.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**EUST3014. Love in the European tradition (6 credits)**

While it can be argued that in spite of variations of precisely what different peoples may mean by love and how they demonstrate it, it is as fundamental to human beings as the need to eat, sleep or procreate. In the European tradition love has been elevated by the Jewish and Christian faiths which worship a God of love, by philosophy which elevates love of wisdom to the highest pursuit of human beings, by poets, troubadours and folk and popular musicians who sing of the intoxicating and redemptive powers of love, as well as novelists and film makers who plot its various courses in our lives.

In this course we will explore these difference aspects of love in the European tradition from its philosophical and religious sides through the romantic idea of love in the troubadour tradition to more contemporary and literary explorations of its presence, absence and misdirection.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**EUST3016. Europe and Scandinavia: Economies, business cultures, and social models (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course analyzes the ideational foundations, structural conditions, and cultural contexts shaping the European and Scandinavian economy, its social welfare systems, and its diverse business cultures. It elucidates why and how European economies and companies have been successful in achieving a very high level of competitiveness while developing extensive welfare systems. By focusing specifically on Scandinavian countries, the course illustrates how cultural predilections and public attitudes influence the ways of organizing the economy and society. The course also explores major future challenges to these economic and social models (demographic decline, rising global competition, and economic fragility of some welfare systems) and asks what China and Hong Kong can learn from the Nordic experience.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

## **THE MAJOR IN EUROPEAN STUDIES**

### **First-year Requirements**

#### **1. EUROPEAN STUDIES CORE COURSE**

EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits)

#### **2. LANGUAGE CORE COURSES**

FREN1001. French I.1 (6 credits) and

FREN1002. French I.2 (6 credits)

or

GRMN1001. German I.1 (6 credits) and

GRMN1002. German I.2 (6 credits)

or

GREK1001. Greek I.1 (6 credits) and

GREK1002. Greek I.2 (6 credits)

or

ITAL1001. Italian I.1 (6 credits) and

ITAL1002. Italian I.2 (6 credits)

or

SPAN1001. Spanish I.1 (6 credits) and

SPAN1002. Spanish I.2 (6 credits)

or

SWED1001. Swedish I.1 (6 credits) and

SWED1002. Swedish I.2 (6 credits)

or

PORT1001. Portuguese I.1 (6 credits) and

PORT1002. Portuguese I.2 (6 credits)

### **Second and Third-year Requirements**

#### **A. COMPULSORY COURSES**

##### **1. EUROPEAN STUDIES CORE COURSES**

EUST2010. European identity (6 credits) OR

EUST2011. Modern European lifestyle: fashion, food, music and sex in Europe (6 credits)

EUST2020. European Studies in Europe (6 credits)

EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)



## 2. LANGUAGE CORE COURSES

FREN2001. French II.1 (6 credits) and

FREN2002. French II.2 (6 credits)

FREN3001. French III.1 (6 credits) and

FREN3002. French III.2 (6 credits)

or

GRMN2001. German II.1 (6 credits) and

GRMN2002. German II.2 (6 credits)

GRMN3001. German III.1 (6 credits) and

GRMN3002. German III.2 (6 credits)

or

GREK2001. Greek II.1 (6 credits) and

GREK2002. Greek II.2 (6 credits)

GREK3001. Greek III.1 (6 credits) and

GREK3002. Greek III.2 (6 credits)

or

ITAL2001. Italian II.1 (6 credits) and

ITAL2002. Italian II.2 (6 credits)

ITAL3001. Italian III.1 (6 credits) and

ITAL3002. Italian III.2 (6 credits)

or

PORT2001. Portuguese II.1 (6 credits) and

PORT2002. Portuguese II.2 (6 credits)

PORT3001. Portuguese III.1 (6 credits) and

PORT3002. Portuguese III.2 (6 credits)

or

SPAN2001. Spanish II.1 (6 credits) and

SPAN2002. Spanish II.2 (6 credits)

SPAN3001. Spanish III.1 (6 credits) and

SPAN3002. Spanish III.2 (6 credits)

or

SWED2001. Swedish II.1 (6 credits) and

SWED2002. Swedish II.2 (6 credits)

SWED3001. Swedish III.1 (6 credits) and

SWED3002. Swedish III.2 (6 credits)

B. OPTIONAL COURSES (European Studies majors must take twelve credits from the following lists, including courses from at least two disciplines/programmes as listed below)

### 1. EUROPEAN STUDIES COURSES

EUST2012. Problems of contemporary European politics and society (6 credits)

EUST2014. Classical roots of European civilization (6 credits)

EUST2015. From cinema to society: Understanding Europe through film (6 credits)

EUST2030. The modern imagination in Europe (6 credits)

EUST3003. European Studies dissertation (12 credits)

EUST3004. European Studies research project (6 credits)

EUST3011. European values in conflict (6 credits)

EUST3012. The EU as a global actor and Sino-European relations (6 credits)

EUST3013. Linguistics of the European Languages (6 credits)

EUST3014. Love in the European tradition (6 credits)

EUST3016. Europe and Scandinavia: Economies, business cultures, and social models (6 credits)

## 2. DEPARTMENTAL COURSES

### *Comparative Literature*

- CLIT2003. Modern European drama (6 credits)
  - CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)
  - CLIT2058. Histories of sexuality (6 credits)
  - CLIT2067. Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)
- 

### *Economics and Finance*

- ECON0107. History of economic thought (6 credits)
  - ECON0301. Theory of international trade (6 credits)
  - ECON0302. International finance (6 credits)
  - ECON0406. The economy and the state (6 credits)
- 

### *English*

- ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)
  - ENGL2010. English novel I (6 credits)
  - ENGL2011. English novel II (6 credits)
  - ENGL2012. Contemporary literary theory (6 credits)
  - ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)
  - ENGL2076. Romanticism (6 credits)
  - ENGL2078. The novel today (6 credits)
  - ENGL2079. Shakespeare (6 credits)
  - ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)
  - ENGL2082. Modern literary criticism (6 credits)
  - ENGL2128. Modernism (6 credits)
- 

### *Fine Arts*

- FINE2012. Italian Renaissance art (6 credits)
  - FINE2013. Northern Renaissance art (6 credits)
  - FINE2025. The art of the baroque (6 credits)
  - FINE2026. The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)
  - FINE2027. The formations of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)
  - FINE2028. Vision in crisis (6 credits)
  - FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)
  - FINE2032. Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)
  - FINE2035. Photography and the nineteenth century (6 credits)
  - FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)
- 

### *Geography*

- GEOG3404. Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)

## *History*

- HIST2011. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part I: 1780-1850 (6 credits)
  - HIST2012. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)
  - HIST2013. Twentieth-century Europe, Part I: the European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)
  - HIST2014. Twentieth-century Europe, Part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)
  - HIST2021. Nineteenth-century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)
  - HIST2038. Germany, 1871-1990: From unification to reunification (6 credits)
  - HIST2046. The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)
  - HIST2048. The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)
  - HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)
  - HIST2062. From empire to EU: Culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)
  - HIST2063. Europe and modernity: Cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)
  - HIST2072. A history of modern European warfare (6 credits)
  - HIST2073. Prussia in the age of absolutism and reform, 1648-1815 (6 credits)
  - HIST2076. Germany and the Cold War (6 credits)
  - HIST2078. Renaissance Europe 1453-1648 (6 credits)
  - HIST2079. Early modern Europe 1648-1789 (6 credits)
  - HIST2082. Europe and its others (6 credits)
  - HIST2084. Sexing the spirit: The history of modern feminist challenge to Christianity (6 credits)
  - HIST2085. The history of modern sexual identity and discourse (6 credits)
  - HIST2086. Bismarck: The Iron Chancellor (6 credits)
  - HIST2099. Themes in the history of the post-Cold War world (6 credits)
  - HIST2103. Russian state and society in the 20th century (6 credits)
  - HIST2108. Empire and the making of modern France (6 credits)
  - HIST2109. Modern France: Society, politics and culture (6 credits)
  - HIST2111. War and medicine in Europe, 1800-1950 (6 credits)
  - HIST2120. International trade and finance in the early-modern world (6 credits)
  - HIST2121. The rise and fall of Adolf Hitler (6 credits)
  - HIST2122. The history of sport in modern Europe (6 credits)
  - HIST3025. Hitler and the National Socialist ideology (6 credits)
- 

## *Language Programmes Optional Courses*

- FREN2027. French culture and society (6 credits)
- FREN2221. A profile of contemporary France (6 credits)
- FREN3021. Francophone literatures and identities (6 credits)
- FREN3022. French and Francophone cinema (6 credits)
- FREN3023. Media watch: Tracking French news (6 credits)
- FREN3024. Modern French literature (6 credits)
- FREN3025. French-speaking comic strip culture (6 credits)
- FREN3026. Conveying otherness: French imaginings of Asia (6 credits)
- FREN3027. Decoding commercials in French (6 credits)
- FREN3028. The art of brevity in French (6 credits)
- GRMN2023. Contemporary German society in the media (6 credits)
- GRMN2025. Understanding Germany and the Germans (6 credits)
- GRMN3022. German project (6 credits)
- GRMN3026. Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries – The German Romantics (6 credits)
- GRMN3028. Kino! Studies in German cinema (6 credits)
- GRMN3029. History of the German language and German linguistics (6 credits)
- ITAL2021. Italian reading course (6 credits)
- ITAL2022. Italian for business (6 credits)
- ITAL2023. Italian lifestyle and culture (6 credits)

- ITAL3021. Contemporary Italian literature (6 credits)  
 ITAL3022. Society and politics of modern Italy (6 credits)  
 PORT2221. Portuguese reading course (6 credits)  
 PORT3021. Big screen: Film in Portugal and Brazil (6 credits)  
 SPAN2023. Spanish culture and society (6 credits)  
 SPAN2024. Spanish for business I (6 credits)  
 SPAN2025. Spanish workshop I (6 credits)  
 SPAN2026. Spanish workshop II (6 credits)  
 SPAN3023. Hispanic film and literature (6 credits)  
 SPAN3024. Spanish for business II (6 credits)  
 SPAN3025. Spanish-American cultures and civilizations (6 credits)  
 SWED2221. Living in the land of the midnight sun – towards an understanding of contemporary Scandinavia (6 credits)
- 

### *Music*

- MUSI2035. Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)  
 MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)  
 MUSI2057. Western music history 2: from the rise of opera to Beethoven (6 credits)  
 MUSI2058. Western music history 3: from Beethoven to the present (6 credits)  
 MUSI2063. The opera (6 credits)
- 

### *Philosophy*

- PHIL2002. Early modern philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2010. Plato (6 credits)  
 PHIL2011. Aristotle (6 credits)  
 PHIL2020. Descartes (6 credits)  
 PHIL2025. Hume (6 credits)  
 PHIL2030. Kant's critical philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2035. Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)  
 PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)  
 PHIL2060. Wittgenstein (6 credits)  
 PHIL2077. Habermas (6 credits)  
 PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2085. Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2090. Foucault (6 credits)  
 PHIL2210. Metaphysics (6 credits)  
 PHIL2360. Political philosophy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature (6 credits)
- 

### *Politics and Public Administration*

- POLI0004. Bureaucracy and the public (6 credits)  
 POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)  
 POLI0009. Comparative politics (6 credits)  
 POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)  
 POLI0067. Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)  
 POLI0087. Globalization and world order (6 credits)  
 POLI0091. History of western political thoughts (6 credits)

## Sociology

- SOCI0001. A history of social theory (6 credits)  
 SOCI0024. Modern social theory (6 credits)
- 

## JAPANESE STUDIES

### First Year

To qualify for a major in Japanese Studies, students with no prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take a minimum of 18 credits of first-year courses from List A below, and students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take a minimum of 18 credits of first-year courses from List B below. As optional courses, **JAPN1009. Introduction to Japanese linguistics** is offered to students who wish to put greater emphasis on the study of the language itself, and **JAPN1013. Situational Japanese conversation** to students who wish to improve their conversational skills and Japanese pronunciation.

#### List A

- JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)**  
**JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (6 credits)**

#### List B

- JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)**  
**JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

First year students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language should contact the School's general office for information on the date and time of the qualification examination, usually held in early September.

---

### Compulsory Courses

#### **JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Introduction to Japanese studies aims to provide students with a broad-based description of Japanese society and culture. The course will cover various aspects of the country, such as its history, geography, politics and government, religion and literature. Students will be assigned to a tutorial group either in the first or second semester.

This course is targeted primarily at those Faculty of Arts' students who have enrolled in Japanese language courses, but students from other faculties may take the course subject to availability.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations, essay assignments, etc.).

---

#### **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This introductory course is designed for total beginners in the study of the Japanese language. The fundamentals of the language will be presented through a carefully graded syllabus. Equal emphasis will be placed on developing the four basic skills of speaking, listening, reading and writing, thereby enabling students to establish a solid foundation in the language.

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, assignments/class performance and final oral test).

**N.B. For pedagogical reasons, some of the classes in this course will be taught in Cantonese. Non-Cantonese speakers should ensure that they are enrolled in a class where the medium of instruction is English. Since Chinese characters are an integral part of this course and will be given no separate introduction by the course instructors, students with no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should ensure that they discuss this issue with their class teacher at the beginning of the semester.**

---

**JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This elementary Japanese course focuses on proficiency-based foreign language learning. While the emphasis is on a thorough understanding of basic Japanese grammar, it also aims to develop communicative competence in order to prepare students for a smooth transition to the study of Japanese at a more advanced level.

Prerequisite: **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1).**

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, assignments/class performance and final oral test).

**N.B. Since Chinese characters are an integral part of this course and will be given no separate introduction by the course instructors, students with no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should ensure that they discuss this issue with their class teacher at the beginning of the semester.**

---

**JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This course is open to first year students who have completed approximately 150 hours of Japanese language studies at other institutions prior to entering HKU, or who, at the time of their admission to HKU, have attained a level of Japanese proficiency equivalent to that of students who have successfully completed the course **JAPN1099. Japanese Language I (Part 2).**

This course covers elementary Japanese grammar, and aims to provide Japanese language students with a solid grounding in the four areas of reading, writing, speaking and listening.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1).** The course is open to first year students who have successfully completed **JAPN1188**, or first year students who can demonstrate that they have attained a comparable level of ability in the Japanese language.

It will provide students with a comprehensive understanding of basic Japanese grammar. Upon completion of the course, a successful learner should have acquired the necessary Japanese language abilities and study skills to progress to an intermediate level of Japanese proficiency, and show an increased aptitude for autonomous learning in the third year.

Prerequisite: **JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1).**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Optional Courses**

**JAPN1009. Introduction to Japanese linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introductory linguistics course with particular reference to the Japanese language. The language will be examined from both diachronic and synchronic perspectives and frequent cross linguistic comparisons will be made with Cantonese, Mandarin and English. The purpose of the

course is to stimulate interest in the Japanese language, and facilitate the acquisitional process while at the same time promoting a general understanding of human language behaviour, an issue of great relevance to students of a second language.

Assessment: 100% coursework (reading assignment summaries, test, presentation, midterm paper and term project).

---

### **JAPN1013. Situational Japanese conversation (6 credits)**

This course teaches basic Japanese conversational skills for use in such situations as may be encountered during short stays in Japan. The course also provides training in natural Japanese pronunciation to facilitate communication with native speakers.

Prerequisite: **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1).**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

## **Second and Third Years**

### **Japanese Studies Programme**

#### **1. The Japanese Studies Programme course structure**

The **Japanese Studies Programme** consists of 3 components:

- (i) *Japanese language* courses:  
Japanese language forms the backbone of the programme in Japanese Studies. The courses that make up this component are designed to provide balanced training in reading, writing, speaking and listening and to take students from an elementary to an advanced level of competence in each of these skills.
- (ii) *Japanese language-intensive* courses:  
Courses in this category are used to back up the core language courses and are designed to broaden students' knowledge of Japanese through the examination of a wide range of materials, including excerpts from novels, short stories, newspaper articles, essays, comic books, TV programmes, web pages and so on. The primary aim of these courses, however, is to make use of such materials to analyze and discuss various aspects of Japanese society and culture. All *language-intensive* courses require some knowledge of the Japanese language and are open to students who are taking Japanese language courses. Non-Japanese language course students who have attained a comparable level of proficiency in Japanese may also apply for admission to these courses.
- (iii) Japan-related *interdisciplinary content* courses:  
*Interdisciplinary content* courses are taught by members of the Japanese Studies programme along with members of other disciplines, such as Fine Arts, History, Music and Sociology, who employ different disciplinary approaches to aspects of Japanese Studies. The aim of these courses is to provide students with a deeper understanding of different facets of Japanese society and culture. *Interdisciplinary content* courses are open to all students in the Faculty of Arts as well as to students from other designated Faculties/Schools. Some courses are open to students from all faculties.

Third year students taking a major or minor in Japanese Studies Programme who fulfill the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years.

## 2. Major in Japanese Studies Programme

- 2A. A major in Japanese Studies consists of 54 credits in the **Japanese Studies programme** to be taken in the Second and Third years.

To major in Japanese Studies, students who have no prior qualifications in the Japanese language and have completed **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (6 credits)**, **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (6 credits)** and **JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)** in the first year must normally take the following language courses in their second year:

**JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who do not elect to participate in a one-year exchange programme to Japan must normally take the following courses in their third year.

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who do elect to participate in a one-year exchange programme to Japan must normally take the following courses in their third year:

**JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who have prior qualifications in the Japanese language and have completed **JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**, **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)** and **JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)** in the first year must normally take the following language courses in their second and/or third year in order to major in Japanese Studies.

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

However, students who have the applicable course instructor's permission to do so can take **JAPN3188** and **JAPN3199** instead of/in addition to **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** and **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)** as part of their requirement for a BA.

In addition, all students must complete at least one *Japanese language-intensive* course (6 credits) (to be selected from List F at the end of this section) in each of their second and third years, and must also complete three *interdisciplinary content* courses (6 credits each) (to be selected from List G at the end of this section) during the two-year period that comprises their second and third years (completing at least one in each of their second and third years).

## 2B. Special Honours (SH) in Japanese Studies

Goals and objectives of the SH programme

The SH provides students with opportunities to achieve upper-advanced levels of Japanese language proficiency, along with superior critical and analytical understanding in their study of Japanese culture and society. By the end of the programme, students will be able to:

- Use Japanese with high levels of accuracy and fluency in most formal and informal contexts and in the discussion of practical, social and abstract topics.



- Communicate effectively, express opinions, and hypothesize in oral/written communication.
- Read and fully comprehend a variety of literary texts and passage/pieces of expository prose.
- Follow the essentials of complex discourse in academic/professional settings, in lectures, speeches and reports.
- Attain a superior understanding of a range of fields within Japanese Studies, sufficient to create a sound basis for postgraduate research in either an English-medium or Japanese-medium programme.
- Display the ability to articulate a sophisticated level of critical and analytical argument about Japan in Japanese, sufficient to create a sound basis for postgraduate research in a Japanese-medium programme.

#### Eligibility

- Students who took part in a one-year exchange programme to Japan.
- Students who did not take part in a one-year exchange programme to Japan, but obtained grade A in **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)**, and have a recommendation from a Japanese Studies teacher.

#### Assessment for Special Honours

Exit assessment based on course grades: an average grade of B or above in Japanese Studies major courses is required for the award of a Special Honours.

#### Course/credit requirements

The SH consists of 60 credit units as follows.

##### ■ Core language courses

To obtain Special Honours in Japanese Studies, students must take one of the following five combinations of language courses.

##### A:

- Year 1: JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)  
JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)
- Year 2: JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)
- (with grade A in JAPN2099 and a teacher's recommendation)
- Year 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

##### B:

- Year 1: JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1)  
JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)
- Year 2: JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)
- (one-year exchange)
- Year 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

##### C:

- Year 1: JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)
- Year 2: JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)  
JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)
- (with grade A in JAPN2199 and a teacher's recommendation)
- Year 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

D:

Year 1: JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)

(one-year exchange)

Year 2 or 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

E:

Year 1: JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)

Year 2: JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)  
JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)

(one-year exchange)

Year 3: JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)

■ Language-intensive courses

12 credits including at least 6 credits from the following courses.

JAPN3016. Advanced business Japanese (6 credits)

JAPN3025. Advanced media Japanese (6 credits)

Non-SH students are normally not eligible to take the language intensive courses listed above. Exceptions can be made however, at the teacher's discretion, should non-SH students wish to take these courses.

■ Content courses

24 credits including at least 12 credits from the following courses.

JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)

JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (9 credits) (The essay must be written in Japanese)

JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)

JAPN3009. Japanese film (6 credits)

JAPN3021. Communication and society (6 credits)

Non-SH students are normally not eligible to take the content courses listed above, with the exception of JAPN3006. Exceptions can be made however, at the teacher's discretion, should non-SH students wish to take these courses.

Credit transfer

■ Core language courses

JAPN3188 (Part 1) and JAPN3199 (Part 2) are mandatory for SH students and credit transfer for these courses is not accepted.

■ Language intensive courses and content courses

Credit transfer can be considered in the case of students who have taken similar courses at other institutions. Students are required to submit detailed information about the course (ex: syllabus and course description, course materials, etc.) to programme coordinators in order to have their credit transfer request considered.

### 3. Minors in Japanese Studies Programme

The **Japanese Studies Programme** Minors require between 24 to 30 credit units of year two and year three courses.

### 3A. Minor in Japanese Language

A minor in Japanese Language shall consist of 24 credit units. Students with no prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take 24 credits from List C below.

#### List C

**JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

The pre-requisite courses are **JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (6 credits)** and **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (6 credits)**.

Students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take 12 credits from List D below.

#### List D

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

In addition, they must complete at least two third year *Japanese language-intensive* courses (6 credits each) (to be selected from List F at the end of this section) in the third year.

The pre-requisite courses are **JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)** and **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**.

Prerequisites may be waived if students can prove that they have attained elsewhere the requisite level.

### 3B. Minor in Japanese Culture

A minor in Japanese Culture shall consist of 30 credit units of second and third-year *interdisciplinary content* courses from the Japanese Studies syllabus. Students must complete at least one *interdisciplinary content* course (6 credits) (to be selected from List G at the end of this section) in each of the second and third years. As a pre-requisite, students must pass 6 credits of first-year courses in the first or second semester. The pre-requisite course is **JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)**. The following courses cannot count towards a minor in Japanese culture: core *language* courses and *language-intensive* courses.

### Second-year Courses

#### **JAPN2007. Modern Japanese short stories (6 credits)**

This is a tutorial-based *language-intensive* course for second year students. The course aims to introduce students to the richness of Japanese literature, through careful study of a number of modern short stories. Students will be required to read original Japanese texts written by authors representative of Japan's long literary tradition. The themes and ideas present in each story will be thoroughly discussed. Literary styles and the techniques of individual writers will be analyzed and contrasted in order to enhance students' analytical and critical thinking abilities. Another aim of the course is to improve students' reading and speaking skills through literary appreciation and discussion. Grammatical explanations will be provided during class in order to facilitate understanding.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) or JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework (tests, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

**JAPN2088. Translation I (Japanese into English) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *language-intensive* course aims to equip students with the skills necessary to translate Japanese texts into English. Students will be taught to analyze Japanese sentences in detail and translate them accurately into idiomatic English. The course starts with simple texts, carefully selected to demonstrate a variety of sentence structures, and gradually progresses to more complicated texts, dealing with topics studied in some of the *content* courses. Various types of specialized vocabulary and different writing styles will be introduced as the course progresses. Students will be expected to prepare for class by working on texts beforehand. There will be a number of written assignments for which students will be required to analyze sentence structures and prepare written translations of short texts.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)** and **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN2009. Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**

This *language-intensive* course aims to provide students with the basic skills required for translating Japanese texts into Chinese and vice versa. Students will translate short, simple texts, chosen to illustrate a range of sentence patterns in both Chinese and Japanese. Texts with more complex structures, that contain a wide variety of vocabulary and that typify different writing styles, will gradually be introduced to build up students' translation skills. Students will be familiarised with a number of reference tools useful in Chinese/Japanese translation and will learn to make use of them in their work.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)** and **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** and **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)**.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

---

**JAPN2032. The changing image of Hong Kong in Japanese writings (6 credits)**

This is a tutorial-based *language-intensive* course for second year students. Throughout the 19th and 20th centuries, a large number of Japanese travellers visited Hong Kong. The reasons behind their visits were numerous, but Hong Kong's unique blend of modernity and colonialism never failed to make a very strong impression on them; Japanese records and articles about Hong Kong are therefore abundant. In this course, representative passages will be selected and studied in their original versions. Through the examination of these materials, the course aims to enhance students' understanding of Hong Kong-Japan relations. The stereotypical images or views of Hong Kong apparent in many of these Japanese texts will be evaluated and discussed in light of the historical context in which they were written. Events such as the anti-Japan riots, the Diaoyutai issue and the phenomenal popularity of Japanese culture among local youngsters, all of which have had, and in some cases continue to have, a significant influence on Hong Kong-Japan relations, will be looked at and discussed.

As a *language-intensive* course, the aim is to further improve students' reading abilities by exposing them to a variety of writing styles. Differences in writing techniques and in how arguments are presented to the reader will also be dwelt upon in order to strengthen students' potential for analytical and critical thinking.

Assessment: 100% coursework (quizzes, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

**JAPN2041. Comprehensive basic grammar (6 credits)**

This course aims to consolidate and further expand students' grammatical knowledge. The course will start with a revision of basic grammar patterns taught in the first year, to ensure that they are fully understood. Following that, new patterns commonly used in daily life will be introduced. Though the course's focus will be on grammar, a wide range of vocabulary, listening and reading exercises will be incorporated to promote proficiency in these equally important areas.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1).**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN2042. Productive skills I (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who have completed approximately 150 hours of Japanese language studies, and thus have a basic knowledge of Japanese grammar. The course aims to develop/enhance students' proficiency in Japanese and previously acquired language skills through various activities and actual usage of the language. Upon completion of the course, successful students will have mastered the basic language skills necessary to effectively communicate in local (i.e. Hong Kong) situations that call for the application of Japanese language skills. Students will undergo language training designed to improve their Japanese oral production skills (which include pronunciation, conversation and speech presentation) as well as writing skills.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1).**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN2043. Productive skills II (6 credits)**

This course aims to enhance students' previously acquired Japanese language skills through various activities and tasks, assignments and exercises. In addition to providing further training in accurate pronunciation and intonation, the course will concentrate on improving students' listening, reading and speaking skills. Using various pedagogical approaches, students will be introduced to the characteristics of written and spoken Japanese, as well as given instruction in how to master different means of expression, and in how to present their ideas verbally and in writing.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)**, and covers elementary Japanese grammar. It is a balanced course that involves reading, writing, speaking and listening comprehension. The course aims to provide students with a strong grounding in the Japanese language.

Prerequisite: **JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2)** or equivalent.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**N.B. This course is designed for students who do not have a thorough grounding in elementary Japanese grammar. Students with a strong/pre-existing Japanese language background (e.g. students who have attended language courses outside the university, have lived in Japan, or have Japanese parents) should check with the applicable teachers as to their suitability for the course before enrolling in it. Students may be required to take a qualifying examination.**

**JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)**, and basic grammar will be covered in depth. Additional training will be provided to enable students to successfully use the fundamental grammatical patterns already acquired to express themselves in natural and fluent Japanese. Readily available everyday learning materials will be used to encourage independent study. Upon completion of the course, a successful learner should have acquired the necessary Japanese language abilities and study skills to progress to an intermediate level of Japanese proficiency, and show an increased aptitude for autonomous learning in the third year.

Prerequisite: **JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**N.B. This course is designed for students who do not have a thorough grounding in elementary Japanese grammar. Students with a strong/pre-existing Japanese language background (e.g. students who have attended language courses outside the university, have lived in Japan, or have Japanese parents) should check with the applicable teachers as to their suitability for the course before enrolling in it. Students may be required to take a qualifying examination.**

**Third-year Courses****JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)**

This *Japanese-medium interdisciplinary content* course looks at selected works of fiction by post-war Japanese writers. Students will be expected to read, understand and analyze these works in their original, Japanese-language, version, and required to write a long essay about one of them. The themes, literary techniques and styles of these various fictional works will be critically evaluated and discussed at length, in line with the course's aim to provide students with a greater understanding and enjoyment of Japanese literature.

Co-requisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework (essay assignment).

**JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (9 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course may be taken only by third year students who have accumulated at least 54 credits as part of their BA in Japanese Studies, and who wish to specialize in a particular topic. Students must obtain their supervisor's approval for their choice of topic, and the latter must be selected and discussed under their supervisor's tutorial guidance, before it is written up in either English or Japanese as an extended research essay. The length of the essay cannot be less than 8,000 words in English, or 10,000 characters in Japanese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**JAPN3007. Translation II - Japanese – English (6 credits)**

This advanced translation course aims to help students acquire the necessary skills and to render a variety of Japanese texts into English. The first objective of the course is to improve students' competence in both the original language (Japanese) and the target language (English). Students are expected to acquire the necessary grammatical and analytical tools to enable a grammatically and semantically correct understanding of the Japanese text. This objective will be attained through the completion of practical Japanese-into-English translation exercises, both in class and as homework. The second objective is to introduce students to a number of translation strategies and concepts which

can help them evaluate their own translations and those of others. Various approaches to translation and their appropriateness to different types of texts will be discussed. This objective will be accomplished through lectures, reading course handouts and completion of practical exercises aimed at evaluating particular translations in terms of the theories introduced during the course.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) and JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2), or JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) and JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)**

This *Japanese-medium interdisciplinary content* course looks at the contemporary Japanese popular music scene since World War Two. The main approach used will be anthropological rather than musicological or ethno-musicological. The course will take a close look at how the Japanese popular music industry was established and developed. It will also examine how the images of particular popular singers and their songs were constructed by the music industry, and then revised to take into account audience response. It will also explore the social and historical circumstances that led to the popularity of a particular singer or song.

Co-requisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignment, quiz and test).

---

### **JAPN3009. Japanese film (6 credits)**

This *Japanese-medium interdisciplinary content* course introduces students to contemporary Japanese filmmakers (e.g. Iwai Shunji, Furuhashi Yasuo, etc.) and their works. Students will watch carefully selected films (with Japanese, English and/or Chinese subtitles) and discuss them in Japanese. The course aims to enhance students' appreciation of Japanese films, to provide them with a general introduction to Japanese films and film directors, and to offer them the opportunity to discuss the content and style of these films in Japanese.

Co-requisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework (essay and discussions).

---

### **JAPN3010. Translation II (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**

This *language-intensive* course is a continuation of **JAPN2009. Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese)**. It aims to further develop students' skills through the translation of more complex passages from Japanese into Chinese and vice versa. Excerpts in both languages and covering a variety of topics and themes will be selected from established sources.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) and JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) or JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) and JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2).**

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester

---

### **JAPN3014. Project in Japanese business (9 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course is designed to provide students with an opportunity to apply their knowledge of Japanese language, society and culture to a project commissioned by a Japanese business organization. Through this project, students will gain real life experience in dealing with

Japanese organizations at a managerial level, while perfecting their communication and interpersonal skills. Upon completion of their projects, students will make use of various theoretical frameworks to analyze the problems encountered during their tasks and will write these up in the form of an essay. Enrolment in this course involves a selection process and requires the approval of the course instructor.

Co-requisite: Either **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** or **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework (report, project portfolio, presentation, etc.).

---

### **JAPN3016. Advanced business Japanese (6 credits)**

This is an *advanced language-intensive* course for students who are enrolled in **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**. Classes are held twice a week. The first class will concentrate on the reading and understanding of business correspondence and other business documents. Students will learn the formats required for proper Japanese business correspondence, and how to tailor business correspondence to a variety of topics. They will increase their knowledge of formal honorific written Japanese, as well as of specialized business vocabulary, allowing them to fully understand the format of these documents and draft their own. The second class will go beyond the basics of spoken business Japanese and focus on more advanced interactive skills. Students will learn with the appropriate language styles, vocabulary and phraseology to deal with a variety of business situations.

Co-requisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)** or **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignments, written/ oral quizzes, discussions and presentations).

---

### **JAPN3017. Business Japanese (6 credits)**

This is a language-intensive course for third-year Japanese language students. The course will concentrate on basic concepts of 'positive face' and 'negative face' as proposed under the 'Politeness theory' and will enable students to understand the underlying reasons why some behaviours are acceptable in Japanese society and others are not. Emphasis will be placed on the differences between Japanese and Hong Kong behaviours and practices. Students will also acquire basic spoken and written business Japanese skills and the behaviours appropriate to a Japanese business context with a focus on the language styles, vocabulary and phraseology needed to deal with a variety of business situations. By the end of the course, students are expected to effectively employ the concepts in Politeness theory and business language, as well as other knowledge acquired throughout the course, in the presentation of a short skit.

Students enrolled in JAPN3188 Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199 Japanese language IV (Part 2) are not eligible to take this course.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignments, quizzes and oral interview test).

---

### **JAPN3020. Advanced translation, Japanese to Chinese (6 credits)**

This *language-intensive* course aims to promote students' skills in translating Japanese texts into Chinese. Through discussions and regular practice, students will learn about the subtleties and complexities of Japanese expressions, and how to render them into fluent Chinese. To familiarize students with different genres of writings, newspaper articles, literary works and other kinds of Japanese texts will be introduced. A small translation project will be carried out during the course to enhance students' language competence and translation skills.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** and **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)** or **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part1)** and **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part2)**.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.



**JAPN3021. Communication and society (6 credits)**

This *Japanese-medium interdisciplinary content* course explores the social behaviour of Japanese people embedded in their language use. A sociolinguistic approach to Japanese culture is promoted through students' active participation in the empirical analyzes of language variations such as dialects, gender differences and age markers. Coursework also includes the examination of problems that frequently occur in cross-cultural communication.

Co-requisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework (project, presentation, journal writing and essays).

---

**JAPN3025. Advanced media Japanese (6 credits)**

This *advanced language-intensive* course is designed for students who are enrolled in **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**. The course aims to help students acquire the knowledge and skills necessary to evaluate information drawn from a variety of media sources. It will also provide them with the training necessary to extract factual information from both oral and written texts and increase their understanding of the ideas these texts convey.

Co-requisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) or JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework (quizzes, project and presentation).

---

**JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This *language* course is designed for students who have taken part in a one-year exchange programme to Japan or who have a similar level of proficiency in Japanese. Students in the Japanese Studies Special Honours stream are required to complete this course. The course focuses evenly on all four language skills, i.e. listening, speaking, reading and writing, and aims to help students achieve upper-advanced levels of Japanese proficiency. **JAPN3188's** main focus is to provide students with the language skills necessary for them to carry out the course assignments required by **JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2)**. Credit transfer for this course is not accepted.

Prerequisite: Course instructors' approval.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This *language* course is designed for students who took part in a one-year exchange programme to Japan or who have a similar level of proficiency in Japanese. Students in the Japanese Studies Special Honours stream are required to complete the course. The course introduces hands-on activities that allow students to put what they learned in **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)** to practical use. Credit transfer for this course is not accepted.

Prerequisite: **JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1)** and the course instructors' approval

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second and Third-year Courses****JAPN2003. Introduction to Japanese literature (6 credits)**

This general *interdisciplinary content* course offers an overview of Japanese novels, poems and plays. The aim of this course is to provide students with a strong foundation in the historical development of Japanese literature. The course will cover Japanese myth, *monogatari*, *waka*, *renga* and *haiku*.

Prerequisite: Basic Japanese language knowledge is required.

Assessment: 100% coursework (tests, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

**JAPN2010. Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by means of lectures and tutorials - focuses on various aspects of Japanese business. It is particularly concerned with the social organization and culture of the Japanese salaryman, and deals with such varied topics as company socialization, decision-making, management procedures, gender relations, leisure activities, sake drinking and so on. The course is open to both second and third-year Japanese Studies students, as well as to students from other departments and faculties who may have an academic interest in its contents.

Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects and final essays).

---

**JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by means of lectures and tutorials - is designed to provide undergraduate students specializing in Japanese Studies with a comprehensive introduction to, and understanding of, certain aspects of contemporary Japanese society. As such it will focus on such themes as comics, tourism, sexuality and TV dramas.

Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects and final essays).

---

**JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)**

This interdisciplinary course introduces students to the study of the history and politics of Sino-Japanese relations in the context of the East Asia world order up to the early twentieth-first century. The course is divided into two parts: The first part of the course takes on a macro-historical approach, and examines the modernization process of Japan and China in a comparative perspective, and in the process dissects the complicated relationship that China and Japan had with each other up to end of the Cold War. The second part of the course examines post Cold War Sino-Japanese relations. Students are introduced to topics by means of two broad survey lectures, and are invited to examine in greater detail the various controversial issues within this set of bilateral relations. The course will examine the following themes from the perspective of Sino-Japanese relations: historical legacy, nationalism and identity, the Pinnacles (Senkaku/Diaoyutai) Islands dispute, the Taiwan issue, the Korean Peninsula crisis and the competition for energy sources. By the end of the course, students will hopefully be able to reach some sort of understanding as to whether China and Japan are destined to be rivals, or whether they can actually co-exist as great powers and promote peace and prosperity in the Asia-Pacific region.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations and essays).

---

**JAPN2015. Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by means of lectures and tutorials - concentrates on the study of Japanese enterprise groupings. It will start by introducing three major theoretical perspectives on economic organizations - structural, strategic and institutional - so as to provide students with a theoretical understanding of these groupings. The histories of different enterprise groupings, their operation and the function they serve will then be examined. Analysis will focus on the roles played by major Japanese banks, general trading firms, insurance companies, core member corporations of the groupings, and on the so-called preferential trading between core large corporations and their peripheral companies. Finally, the discussion of these topics will be looked at in the context of Japanese and American trade disputes.

Assessment: 100% coursework (group projects and final essays).

**JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I**  
**Comparative phonology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course will detail the phonological components of Japanese and Cantonese through the extensive examination of current theories and the application of contrastive analysis. Besides introducing both features commonly found in all human language sound systems and characteristics specific to a select few, the course will help students familiarize themselves with the most common forms of transcription used in language teaching, including the most important of all, the International Phonetic Alphabets (IPA).

Assessment: 100% coursework (a series of transcription tests and a final project on comparative studies).

---

**JAPN2024. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese III**  
**Syntactic features and pedagogical implications (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course initially focuses on a theoretical discussion of the grammatical peculiarities of the languages in question, from the perspective of two natural world languages with their own distinctive features. Next, these languages are examined and contrasted in relation to the potential problem areas that arise when they are considered either as the source language or the target language in the course of acquisition, i.e. the learning of Japanese by Cantonese native speakers or of Cantonese by Japanese native speakers.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assessment portfolio including lecture and reading summaries, tests, presentation and term paper).

---

**JAPN2027. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II**  
**Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course will highlight potential areas of native language interference in the acquisition of a second or third language's pronunciation system using the difficulties encountered by native Cantonese and Japanese speakers when learning another language as an example. The course will use theoretical discussions and knowledge gained from **JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I** as a basis for training students to predict these areas of interference. Languages such as English, Mandarin, French and Korean will serve as references.

Prerequisite: **JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I - Comparative phonology.**

Assessment: 100% coursework (tutorial tasks, test and a final project on pedagogy).

---

**JAPN2029. Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course examines the way in which Japanese popular music was integrated into the Hong Kong music scene in the 1980s, a time when Japanese popular music was at its most influential. To understand this phenomenon, the course will first take a close look at the popular music scene in Japan in the 1970s and the 1980s. Then, it will examine how socio-political developments in Hong Kong shaped the local popular music industry and affected the selection, import, and distribution of Japanese popular music in the territory. Lastly, the course will look at changes in the way Japanese popular music has been consumed in Hong Kong from the 1990s to the

present. In so doing, it aims to provide students with an introduction to the contemporary popular music scene in both Hong Kong and Japan. The main approach used will be social scientific rather than musicological.

Assessment: 100% coursework (quiz, test and essay).

---

### **JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This interdisciplinary content course focuses on intercultural communication involving Japanese professionals. The course will explore how and why members of different groups misunderstand each other in spoken, written and electronically mediated communication. It will consider the ways in which people use language to claim and display complex and often multiple identities. Rather than adopting a one-size-fits-all approach and applying it to both Japanese and Chinese professionals, the course will take a situation-based approach to the examination of professional communication across cultures.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays).

---

### **JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This interdisciplinary content course introduces students to the workings of the electronic media in Japan. The course will focus on the following three areas: coverage of the Hong Kong handover; TV documentary features on international affairs; and Japanese TV entertainment programmes available in Hong Kong. It will examine how the Japanese media covered the 1997 handover and will contrast its coverage of the event with that of other international media organizations. Students will watch and analyze feature-length documentaries whose broadcasting subsequently influenced the decisions of high-ranking Japanese Government officials. The course will also look at the distribution and consumption of Japanese cartoons, dramas and entertainment shows amongst the local Hong Kong Chinese population from the 1970s onwards.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays).

---

### **JAPN2039. Negotiation and conflict resolution: a cross-cultural perspective (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to some powerful frameworks for analyzing and preparing for negotiations and for resolving conflicts. Students will practice applying these frameworks through in-class simulations and role plays. The course will make use of numerous cross-cultural cases and readings (particularly relating to Japan and mainland China) to help students develop an awareness of how the cultural contexts and the cultural backgrounds of negotiators could influence negotiations.

Assessment: 100% coursework (class participation, negotiation planning documents, class diary and research paper or book review).

---

### **JAPN2040. Understanding Japanese business through novels (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce students to a number of Japanese-language economic or business novels that have been translated into English. By understanding the feelings, attitudes and personalities of a wide variety of literary characters, students will be able to gain insights into the drama of working life

from a Japanese perspective. They will also gain a deeper understanding of how certain significant economic events have impacted companies and their employees.

Prerequisite: none, although **JAPN2010** or a prior knowledge of Japanese business or the Japanese economy would be helpful.

Assessment: 100% coursework (class participation and two analytical essays).

---

#### **JAPN2045. Sex, gender, and technology in Japan and East Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This class will explore the social and material structures that have shaped understandings of sex and gender in East Asia, focusing on Japan, with some exploration of the Chinese and Korean situations. “Technology” is taken to be the sum of the techniques and practices that shape material, social, and cultural production and reproduction. This deliberately broad definition allows us to trace the interactions between social norms, political structures, and cultural change. Our source materials are similarly interdisciplinary: they are drawn from literature, memoirs, and anthropology as well as history.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations, essay assignments, etc.).

---

#### **JAPN2046. Critical inquiries into Japanese and East Asian modernities (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar will examine the role of “Japan” in “Asia,” beginning with an “Area Studies” inquiry to investigate the boundaries and purposes of “Japanese Studies” and “Asian Studies.” This inquiry will lead to a further examination of how the modern experiences of “Japan” and “Asia” were seen by both non-Asians and Asian. What does it mean to be the first “modern” nation of Asia? What is the significance of Japan’s modern experience for “Asia?” The topic covered will include (but are not limited to): Japan, Orientalism, colonialism and decolonization, inventions of traditions, modernity, nationalism and identity.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations, essay assignments, etc.).

---

#### **JAPN2047. Japan and China as great powers in international security and global affairs (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to provide students with a theoretical as well as a policy-oriented introduction to the study of International Security and Global Affairs, paying special attention to the role of Japan and China as strategic and security actors in the world. The ascendancy of China and Japan in the post Cold War era has major repercussions as their economic clout, diplomatic stature and political influence are already felt way beyond the Asia-Pacific region. Their rise not only signifies the emergence of new global Great Powers, but heralds a new period in the history of both Japanese and Chinese foreign relations. For the first time in history, we witness a strong China co-existing next to a strong Japan. As both Japan and China seek to carve out new roles for themselves worldwide, this course invites students to re-examine how China and Japan could and should contribute to global affairs. In particular, this course examines how China and Japan are making their presence felt in various parts in the world. At the same time, students are invited to consider regional and international security through the study of Japanese and Chinese foreign relations by looking at their record of direct military and political participation, and also through their multilateral diplomacy and institution-building activities.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**JAPN2048. Selected readings in Japanese Studies (6 credits)**

This tutorial-based language-intensive course provides students with an opportunity to read and discuss Japanese-language texts related to specific aspects of Japanese language. It is open to second, third and fourth year students who have successfully completed JAPN1199 OR at least one 2000-level language intensive course.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** or approval from the instructor.

Assessment: 100% coursework (short quizzes, presentation(s) and essay assignment).

---

**JAPN2049. Media Japanese (6 credits)**

This language-intensive course enhances students' listening and reading capabilities in the Japanese language through the watching of Japanese TV programmes (primarily internet broadcasts), and the reading of Japanese newspapers and current affairs publications. It also introduces students to the most prominent Japanese media outlets.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)** or **JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework (quizzes, project and presentation).

---

**JAPN2050. Creative industries in East Asia (Hong Kong, Taiwan, Korea and Japan) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Previously, research in media or cultural studies has paid much attention to the consumption of cultural and media texts. This course, however, calls for their production to be examined, by focusing on the creative industries in East Asia including Hong Kong, Japan, Korea, and Taiwan. While it is important to examine the inter-relation between production, circulation, consumption, regulation, and representation when we study the meaning of a cultural text, production remains a primary and vital moment in creating the meaning of a cultural text. Furthermore, while there are studies on the creative industries outside East Asia, the production of media and cultural texts within the region has been little studied. Given the fact that media and cultural texts in East Asia, such as Japanese comics, animation and pornography, Korean and Hong Kong movies, and the Taiwanese performing arts, have spread and had tremendous impact globally, an understanding of their production is increasingly important.

In this course, we shall explore how the recent trends in the political economies in East Asia have influenced the production of media and cultural texts in the region; several important sectors within the creative industries, including comics and animation, pornography, movie, popular music, and performing arts in East Asia; the production and marketing strategies of several major corporations in the region such as TVB in Hong Kong, Sony in Japan; and the manufacture of idols in the creative industries.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN2051. Interpretation I (6 credits)**

This elementary course in interpretation is skill-oriented (listening and speaking) with a focus on rendering Cantonese/English into Japanese and vice versa. Students are introduced to different practical and theoretical aspects of interpreting, modes of interpretation, as well as the skills necessary to provide consecutive interpretation in a variety of settings. Emphasis is placed on generating equivalent messages in Japanese and the target language(s) and on correctly interpreting the nuances

arising from the cultural differences that exist between Hong Kong and Japan. Students are to be given opportunities to undertake practical training/ Interpreter Internships at selected Japanese institutions in Hong Kong.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) and JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2), or JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) and JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **JAPN2052. Business strategy in Asia: Japan and China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course starts with an overview of the various business strategies adopted by Asian companies, with a focus on those favoured by Japanese and Chinese corporations in a variety of industries. It then examines the organizational behaviour and business philosophy of selected companies in Japan and China from a comparative perspective before moving onto a cross-cultural analysis of Western and Eastern management practices.

This course is taught using a combination of lecture, tutorial, small group discussion, and case analysis. Practical business applications and case studies of Japanese and Chinese corporations are integrated into the lectures and tutorials throughout the course. The course also requires students to work effectively as a team (4-6 persons) in the preparation of their group presentation. This exercise is designed to enable students to develop practical presentation skills, as well as to enhance their interpersonal, leadership, negotiation and organizational capabilities.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **JAPN2053. International marketing strategy: Focus on Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course looks at the marketing strategies and innovative solutions that have made Japanese corporations successful in the global arena and asks whether these are sufficient to face the competitive threat posed by Chinese and Korean companies in the 21st century.

This course is taught using a combination of lecture, tutorial, small group discussion, and case analysis. Practical business applications and scenario analyzes of Japanese, Chinese and Korean business models are integrated into the lectures and tutorials throughout the course. The course requires students to work effectively as a team (4-6 persons) in the preparation of their group presentation. This exercise is designed to enable students to develop practical presentation skills, as well as to enhance their interpersonal, leadership, negotiation and organizational capabilities.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **JAPN2054. Strategy management: Focus on Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides a detailed examination of various aspects of the Japanese management system, including the formulating of vision and mission statements, the setting of objectives, as well as the implementation of corporate strategies and adoption of organizational frameworks that have distinguished Japanese corporations from those of other countries around the world.

This course is taught using a combination of lecture, tutorial, small group discussion, and case analysis. Practical business applications and scenario analyzes of Japanese corporations are integrated into the lectures and tutorials throughout the course. The course requires students to work effectively as a team (4-6 persons) in the preparation of their group presentation. This exercise is designed to enable students to develop practical presentation skills, as well as to enhance their interpersonal, leadership, negotiation and organizational capabilities.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **JAPN2056. Traditional stories in Japanese (6 credits)**

This is a language-intensive course designed to give students opportunities to further enhance their reading and writing skills through close reading of Japanese traditional stories. Students will read Japanese traditional stories for text/grammatical analysis and narrate them to improve their oral skills. They will also improve their writing skills by choosing a non-Japanese story and reproduce it in a written form and an oral form in Japanese.

Co-requisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) or JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2).**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **JAPN2057. Multi-cultural advertising (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines how the cultures of different countries or regions, more specifically those of the United States, Europe, Japan, Hong Kong and China, impact on product advertising, marketing and consumer behaviour at both a local and global level.

This course is taught using a combination of lecture, tutorial, small group discussion, and case analysis. Practical business applications and scenario analyzes of American, European, Japanese, Chinese and Hong Kong marketing models are integrated into the lectures and tutorials throughout the course. The course requires students to work effectively as a team (4-6 persons) in the preparation of their group presentation. This exercise is designed to enable students to develop practical presentation skills, as well as to enhance their interpersonal, leadership, negotiation and organizational capabilities.

Prerequisite: **JAPN2053. International marketing strategy: Focus on Japan.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **JAPN2058. Understanding popular culture in Japan and Greater China (Hong Kong, Taiwan, and mainland China) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course begins with an introduction of various socio-cultural theories on popular culture. It then examines the development of popular culture including comics, shopping culture, TV dramas, movies, pornographic culture, food, magazines, fan culture and popular music in post-war Japan and Greater China. Lastly, it investigates the transfer and reception of Japanese popular culture in, and the impact on, Chinese societies in Hong Kong, Taiwan, and Mainland China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**JAPN2059. Family and social institutions in Japan and Greater China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course starts with an examination of traditional Chinese families and introduces the basic concepts of "chi" (breath), "hsing" (form), and "fang/jia-zu" which are fundamental to an understanding of Chinese family life and kinship. The course critically reviews current understandings of the traditional Japanese family before moving onto an analysis of the social institution of marriage and the social expectations it engenders in Chinese and Japanese societies. The final part of the course focuses on how traditional Chinese and Japanese family systems impact on non-kinship organizations, the running of family firms, and post-war nation-building in Hong Kong, Taiwan, Mainland China and Japan. It also examines how the traditional family system orders the concepts of "public" and "private" in contemporary Chinese and Japanese society.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

This *language* course is a continuation of JAPN2099. **Japanese language II (Part 2)**, and continues to focus on developing a balanced range of language skills, but with additional emphasis on the applications of linguistic principles and methodology, as well as on reading skills, both general and specialized. Students who took part in a one-year exchange programme to Japan are not eligible to take this course. Credit transfer for this course is not accepted.

Prerequisite: **JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2)** or equivalent.

Assessment: 100% coursework (test, quizzes, presentation and homework/portfolio).

---

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

This *language* course is a continuation of JAPN2188. **Japanese language III (Part 1)** and again focuses on developing a balanced range of language skills, but with additional emphasis on the applications of linguistic principles and methodology, as well as on reading skills, both general and specialized. Students who have taken part in a one-year exchange programme to Japan are not eligible to take this course. Credit transfer for this course is not accepted.

Prerequisite: **JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1)**.

Assessment: 100% coursework (test, quizzes, presentation and homework/portfolio).

---

**List E Japanese Language Courses***Second Year*

**JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

*Second and Third Years*

**JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

*Third Year*

**JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2) (6 credits)**

**List F      Language-Intensive Courses***Second Year*

- JAPN2007.** Modern Japanese short stories (6 credits)  
**JAPN2008.** Translation I (Japanese into English) (6 credits)  
**JAPN2009.** Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)  
**JAPN2032.** The changing image of Hong Kong in Japanese writings (6 credits)  
**JAPN2041.** Comprehensive basic grammar (6 credits)  
**JAPN2042.** Productive skills I (6 credits)  
**JAPN2043.** Productive skills II (6 credits)

*Second and Third Years*

- JAPN2048.** Selected readings in Japanese Studies (6 credits)  
**JAPN2049.** Media Japanese (6 credits)  
**JAPN2051.** Interpretation I (6 credits)  
**JAPN2056.** Traditional stories in Japanese (6 credits)

*Third Year*

- JAPN3007.** Translation II - Japanese – English (6 credits)  
**JAPN3010.** Translation II (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)  
**JAPN3016.** Advanced business Japanese (6 credits)  
**JAPN3017.** Business Japanese (6 credits)  
**JAPN3020.** Advanced translation, Japanese to Chinese (6 credits)  
**JAPN3025.** Advanced media Japanese (6 credits)

**List G      Interdisciplinary Content Courses***Second and Third Years*

- JAPN2003.** Introduction to Japanese literature (6 credits)  
**JAPN2010.** Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)  
**JAPN2011.** Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)  
**JAPN2014.** China and Japan (6 credits)  
**JAPN2015.** Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)  
**JAPN2016.** Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I  
Comparative phonology (6 credits)  
**JAPN2024.** Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese III  
Syntactic features and pedagogical implications (6 credits)  
**JAPN2027.** Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II  
Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)  
**JAPN2029.** Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)  
**JAPN2030.** Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)  
**JAPN2031.** The media and Japan (6 credits)  
**JAPN2039.** Negotiation and conflict resolution: a cross-cultural perspective (6 credits)  
**JAPN2040.** Understanding Japanese business through novels (6 credits)  
**JAPN2045.** Sex, gender, and technology in Japan and East Asia (6 credits)  
**JAPN2046.** Critical inquiries into Japanese and East Asian modernities (6 credits)  
**JAPN2047.** Japan and China as great powers in international security and global affairs (6 credits)  
**JAPN2050.** Creative industries in East Asia (Hong Kong, Taiwan, Korea and Japan) (6 credits)  
**JAPN2052.** Business strategy in Asia: Japan and China (6 credits)  
**JAPN2053.** International marketing strategy: Focus on Japan (6 credits)

- JAPN2054. Strategy management: Focus on Japan (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2057. Multi-cultural advertising (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2058. Understanding popular culture in Japan and Greater China (Hong Kong, Taiwan, and mainland China) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2059. Family and social institutions in Japan and Greater China (6 credits)**

*Third Year*

- JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (9 credits)**  
**JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3009. Japanese film (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3014. Project in Japanese business (9 credits)**  
**JAPN3021. Communication and society (6 credits)**

The following *interdisciplinary content* courses are available in other disciplines (although not all may be offered each year).

*Second and Third Years*

Fine Arts

- FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan (6 credits)**  
**FINE2048. Arts of Japan (6 credits)**  
**FINE2054. Visual culture of modern Japan (6 credits)**  
**FINE2063. Ink painting in Muromachi Japan (1392-1564) (6 credits)**

History

- HIST2099. Themes in the history of the post-Cold War world (6 credits)**  
**HIST2105. The rise of modern Japan, 1830s to the 1950s (6 credits)**  
**HIST2106. Imperial Japan: Its modern wars and colonial empire (6 credits)**  
**HIST2107. The Second World War in Asia and the Pacific, 1931-1952 (6 credits)**  
**HIST2123. Meiji Japan, challenges and transformations, 1853-1912 (6 credits)**  
**HIST2124. Taishō and Shōwa Japan: Perfecting state, society and nation, 1912 to 1989 (6credits)**

Department of Sociology

- SOCI0017. Japanese economic institutions (6 credits)**  
**SOCI0018. Japanese society (6 credits)**

**LANGUAGES**

The School of Modern Languages and Cultures, through its Arabic, French, German, Greek, Italian, Korean, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish, and Thai sections, provides BA degree courses in Arabic, French, German, Greek, Italian, Korean, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish, and Thai for the Arts Faculty. The School of Modern Languages and Cultures also offers some certificate and voluntary courses to students of all Faculties. The number of places in each group is limited in order to ensure an appropriate environment for language learning.

### ***Major in French***

Students enrolled in French courses in their first year may choose to major in French in their second and third years. The objective of the programme is to bring participants to a high level of proficiency in the language and to provide them with a sound knowledge of French society and culture as well as of the French-speaking world.

In order to declare a major in French, applicants must initially complete two foundation courses in their first year (**French I.1** and **French I.2**, first and second semesters, 12 credits in all) and achieve grade C- minimum in **French I.2** in order to declare a major in French.

In their second and third years of study, students pursuing a major in French must take a total of 54 credits of French courses which should normally be distributed as follows: in the Second Year, 24 credits from courses at Level 200 (except **FREN2221**), of which 12 credits must be from the core language courses, i.e., **FREN2001. French II.1** and **FREN2002. French II.2**; in the Third Year, 30 credits from courses at Level 300 (except **FREN2221**), of which 12 credits must be from the core language courses, i.e., **FREN3001. French III.1** and **FREN3002. French III.2** (See list of French courses below). In addition, students will be strongly encouraged to participate in a 3 to 4-week linguistic stay in France during the summer between their second and third year.

Third year students taking a major or minor in French who fulfill the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years.

### ***Major in German***

The B.A. Major in German provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of both spoken and written German. In addition to the acquisition of these linguistic skills students will be introduced to a wide range of aspects of contemporary German society and culture through the study of numerous multimedia materials and documents in the target language that will be included in courses in area studies, translation and literature in the Second and Third Year.

All German Major Students are encouraged to attend an intensive summer language course (German in Germany) of 4 weeks duration at a university in Germany during the summer between their 2nd and 3rd year and successful completion of such a course at the appropriate level will count as 3 credits towards their major requirements. Longer stays of one to two semesters are also encouraged and can be arranged through the German Section.

The BA in German combines well with all other majors in the Faculty of Arts and in particular with courses and programmes on linguistics, literature, translation and area studies such as European Studies.

### **Programme Requirements**

#### **First Year**

In the First Year students will have to successfully complete a total of 12 credits in German language by enrolling in the courses **GRMN1001. German I.1** (6 credits/1st Semester) and **GRMN1002. German I.2** (6 credits/2nd Semester).

## Second Year

In the Second Year students will have to complete a total of 24 credits of courses taught in German: **GRMN2001. German II.1** (6 credits), **GRMN2002. German II.2** (6 credits), and a total of 12 credits from the following courses: **GRMN2021. Chinese-German translation** (6 credits), **GRMN2023. Contemporary German society in the media** (6 credits), **GRMN2024. Producing German texts** (6 credits), **GRMN2025. Understanding Germany and the Germans** (6 credits).

During the summer between Second and Third Years students are strongly encouraged to attend one of the summer language courses offered by universities in Germany. Successful completion of such a four-week's course at late beginners/early intermediate level (based on the terminology used in Germany) can be counted as 3 credits towards the requirements for the German Major.

## Third Year

In their final year BA majors will have to complete a total of 30 credits from the following courses taught in German: **GRMN3001. German III.1** (6 credits), **GRMN3002. German III.2** (6 credits), **GRMN3022. German project** (6 credits) and a total of 12 credits from the following courses: **GRMN3118. German in Germany** (3 credits/taught during the summer between Year II and III), **GRMN3023. English-German translation** (6 credits), **GRMN3026. Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries – The German Romantics** (6 credits) **GRMN3027. German for business** (6 credits), **GRMN3028. Kino! Studies in German cinema** (6 credits) and **GRMN3029. History of the German language and German linguistics** (6 credits).

Third year students taking a major or minor in German who fulfill the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years. Capstone course which may be available to students include **GRMN3022 German Project**.

## *Major in Spanish*

Students enrolled in Spanish courses in their first year may choose to major in Spanish in their second and third years. The objective of the programme is to bring participants to a high level of proficiency in the language as well as to provide them with a sound knowledge of the society and culture of Spanish-speaking countries.

In order to declare a major in Spanish, applicants must initially complete two foundation courses in their first year (**SPAN1001. Spanish I.1** and **SPAN1002. Spanish I.2**, first and second semesters, 12 credits in all).

In their second and third years of study, students pursuing a major in Spanish must take a total of 54 credits of Spanish courses which should normally be distributed as follows: in the Second Year, 24 credits from courses at level 200, of which 12 must be from the core language courses, i.e. **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1** and **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2**; in the Third Year, 30 credits from courses at level 300, of which 12 must be from the core language courses, i.e. **SPAN3001. Spanish III.1** and **SPAN3002. Spanish III.2** (see the list of Spanish courses below). In addition, students will be strongly encouraged to participate in a 3 to 4 week linguistic stay in Spain during the summer between their second and third year of study.

### Second-year Elective Courses

- SPAN2021. The sounds of Spanish: An introduction to Spanish phonetics and pronunciation (6 credits, 1st semester)  
 SPAN2023. Spanish culture and society (6 credits, 2nd semester)  
 SPAN2024. Spanish for business I (6 credits, 2nd semester)  
 SPAN2025. Spanish-writing workshop I (6 credits, 1st semester)  
 SPAN2026. Spanish-writing workshop II (6 credits, 2nd semester)

### Third-year Elective Courses

- SPAN3021. The art of translation: From Spanish to English I (6 credits, 1st semester)  
 SPAN3023. Hispanic film and literature (6 credits, 2nd semester)  
 SPAN3024. Spanish for business II (6 credits, 1st semester)  
 SPAN3025. Spanish-American cultures and civilizations (6 credits, 1st semester)  
 SPAN3118. Spanish in Spain (3 credits, 2nd semester)

Third year students taking a major or minor in Spanish who fulfill the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional 'capstone' course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years.

### Language Minors

A language minor will provide students with a good command of the four different language skills: speaking, listening, reading, and writing. A language minor will also allow students to gain a deeper insight into the contemporary life and culture of the respective country. Languages combine well with all major programmes offered within the Arts Faculty and they also provide students with additional opportunities to pursue further studies overseas.

In order to qualify for a Minor in a language, students must complete a total of 24 credits in their second (12 credits) and third (12 credits) years of studies in one of the languages listed below:

*Arabic, French, German, Greek, Italian, Korean, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish and Thai.*

The recommended courses for a language minor: (All these courses have prerequisites.)

- |         |           |                          |
|---------|-----------|--------------------------|
| Arabic: | ARAB2001. | Arabic II.1 (6 credits)  |
|         | ARAB2002. | Arabic II.2 (6 credits)  |
|         | ARAB3001. | Arabic III.1 (6 credits) |
|         | ARAB3002. | Arabic III.2 (6 credits) |
| French: | FREN2001. | French II.1 (6 credits)  |
|         | FREN2002. | French II.2 (6 credits)  |
|         | FREN3001. | French III.1 (6 credits) |
|         | FREN3002. | French III.2 (6 credits) |
| German: | GRMN2001. | German II.1 (6 credits)  |
|         | GRMN2002. | German II.2 (6 credits)  |
|         | GRMN3001. | German III.1 (6 credits) |
|         | GRMN3002. | German III.2 (6 credits) |
| Greek:  | GREK2001. | Greek II.1 (6 credits)   |
|         | GREK2002. | Greek II.2 (6 credits)   |
|         | GREK3001. | Greek III.1 (6 credits)  |
|         | GREK3002. | Greek III.2 (6 credits)  |

Italian:	ITAL2001.	Italian II.1 (6 credits)
	ITAL2002.	Italian II.2 (6 credits)
	ITAL3001.	Italian III.1 (6 credits)
	ITAL3002.	Italian III.2 (6 credits)
Korean:	KORE2001.	Korean II.1 (6 credits)
	KORE2002.	Korean II.2 (6 credits)
	KORE3001.	Korean III.1 (6 credits)
	KORE3002.	Korean III.2 (6 credits)
Portuguese:	PORT2001.	Portuguese II.1 (6 credits)
	PORT2002.	Portuguese II.2 (6 credits)
	PORT3001.	Portuguese III.1 (6 credits)
	PORT3002.	Portuguese III.2 (6 credits)
Spanish:	SPAN2001.	Spanish II.1 (6 credits)
	SPAN2002.	Spanish II.2 (6 credits)
	SPAN3001.	Spanish III.1 (6 credits)
	SPAN3002.	Spanish III.2 (6 credits)
Swedish:	SWED2001.	Swedish II.1 (6 credits)
	SWED2002.	Swedish II.2 (6 credits)
	SWED3001.	Swedish III.1 (6 credits)
	SWED3002.	Swedish III.2 (6 credits)
Thai:	THIA2001.	Thai II.1 (6 credits)
	THAI2002.	Thai II.2 (6 credits)
	THAI3001.	Thai III.1 (6 credits)
	THAI3002.	Thai III.2 (6 credits)

## Arabic Courses

### First Year

#### **ARAB1001. Arabic I.1 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is intended for students with little or no previous knowledge of Arabic. Participants will acquire basic skills in listening, speaking, reading and writing Arabic. Small tutorial groups will be conducted in order to facilitate interaction among participants. Special attention will be given to pronunciation and building a base of core vocabulary. This course is a pre-requisite for students wishing to pursue a minor in Arabic.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

#### **ARAB1002. Arabic I.2 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of **ARAB1001 Arabic I. 1**. Vocabulary and grammar will be presented in context covering a variety of situations. The emphasis will continue to be on the spoken language, as well as on providing a solid foundation in written Arabic. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the semester to optimise opportunities for interactive practice. This course is a pre-requisite for students wishing to pursue a minor in Arabic.

Prerequisite: Students wishing to be admitted to **ARAB1002** without having previously completed **ARAB1001. Arabic I.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

## Second Year

### **ARAB2001. Arabic II.1 (6 credits)**

This course further develops students' overall Arabic language ability established in **Arabic I. 2**. On completion of the course, students will have mastered basic grammar and the vocabulary needed to write short essays. Students will also be able to carry out conversations in Arabic to deal with a variety of everyday situation at a higher level than Arabic I.2. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the semester to optimise opportunities for interactive practice.

Prerequisite: Students wishing to be admitted to **ARAB2001** without having previously completed **ARAB1002. Arabic I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **ARAB2002. Arabic II.2 (6 credits)**

This course builds on **Arabic II. 1** and further develops students' overall Arabic language skills through further syntax acquisition: reading and text analysis, listening comprehension, composition, translation, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques is used. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the semester to optimise opportunities for interactive practice.

Prerequisite: Students wishing to be admitted to **ARAB2002** without having previously completed **ARAB2001. Arabic II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **ARAB2021. Introduction to Islam (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course gives a general introduction on the formation and development of Islam. Historical and socio-political, as well as literary, judicial, and religious aspects of Islam will be analyzed.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Medium of instruction: English

No previous knowledge of Arabic is required.

Texts and materials are in English and/or with facing English translations.

---

## Third Year

### **ARAB3001. Arabic III.1 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **ARAB2002. Arabic II.2**. It continues to build on the first and second year's work. The intention is to lead students towards an in-depth understanding of the Arabic language through the study of various materials provided in class. A wide variety of teaching techniques is used. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the semester to optimise opportunities for interactive practice.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **ARAB3001** without having previously completed **ARAB2002. Arabic II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**ARAB3002. Arabic III.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **ARAB3001. Arabic III.1**. It offers a balanced range of language skills and further explores the various linguistic aspects of the language. Special attention will be given to language registers and patterns, specific terminology and structures used in a variety of fields (literature, media, etc) to enable students to communicate at an advanced level in Arabic. Small tutorial groups will be arranged to optimise opportunities for interactive practice.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **ARAB3002** without having previously completed **ARAB3001. Arabic III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ARAB3118. Arabic in an Arabic-speaking country (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Middle Eastern universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Arabic B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **ARAB2002. Arabic II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **ARAB3118** without having previously completed **ARAB2002. Arabic II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

**French Courses****First Year****FREN1001. French I.1 (6 credits)**

This course is intended for complete beginners in French and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading, and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills in contextual situations. In this process, participants will also get progressively acquainted with French and Francophone societies and cultures. Classes will be conducted in small groups in order to ensure a high degree of interactivity between participants and teachers. Conversation groups and laboratory groups will also be arranged separately on a regular basis.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**FREN1002. French I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **French I.1** and continues to build on the previous work. Participants will consolidate and develop their knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading, and writing), with a particular emphasis on communicative skills in contextual situations. In this process, participants will also get progressively acquainted with French and Francophone societies and cultures. As in **French I.1**, separate conversation and laboratory groups will be arranged to complement classroom tuition. In addition, participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the School's self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as take advantage of resources accessible through various Internet websites.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN1002** without having previously completed **FREN1001. French I.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## Second Year

### **FREN2001. French II.1 (6 credits)**

This course continues to build on work done in the First Year. The intention is to develop students' proficiency and the functional use of language in the areas of speaking, listening, reading, and writing. Class lectures are based on communicative methods and approaches whereby participants are encouraged to be creative, problem-solving users of the language at basic level. Literary and non-literary French texts selected from various sources will be used, with the aim of stimulating critical reading and discussion. Linguistic activities will also be supported by audio-visual and web-based materials which will help students to familiarize themselves further with French and francophone cultures.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2001** without having previously completed **FREN1002. French. I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **FREN2002. French II.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **FREN2001. French II.1**. The intention is to develop students' proficiency in the functional use of language, i.e. in the areas of speaking and listening, reading and writing. Class lectures are based on communicative methods and approaches whereby participants are encouraged to use the language creatively to solve basic problems. Literary and non-literary French texts selected from various sources will be used, with the aim of stimulating critical reading and discussion. Linguistic activities will also be supported by audio-visual and web-based materials which will help students to familiarize themselves further with French and francophone cultures.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2002** without having previously completed **FREN2001. French II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **FREN2021. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I (3 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to the task of translating French into Chinese and, to a lesser extent, Chinese into French. Particular attention will be paid to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, especially at grammatical and syntactical levels, between French and Chinese. One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants' knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with Chinese on key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into Chinese and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide the students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2021** without having previously completed **FREN1002. French I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN2022. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part II (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **FREN2021. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I** taught in the first semester. The objective is to build on the initial work and to widen the scope of investigation regarding the task of translating French into Chinese and, to a lesser extent, Chinese into French. Particular attention will be paid again to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, especially at grammatical and syntactical levels, between French and Chinese. One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants' knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with Chinese in key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into Chinese and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide the students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2022** without having previously completed **FREN2021. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN2023. Introduction to French/English translation – Part I (3 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to the task of translating French into English and, to a lesser extent, English into French. Particular attention will be paid to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, at grammatical and lexical levels, between French and English. One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants' knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with English on key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into English and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2023** without having previously completed **FREN1002. French I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN2024. Introduction to French/English translation – Part II (3 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **FREN2023. Introduction to French/English translation – Part I** taught in the first semester. The objective is to build on the initial work and to widen the scope of investigation regarding the task of translating French into English and, to a lesser extent, English into French. Particular attention will be paid again to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, at grammatical and lexical levels, between French and English. One important aim of this course is to consolidate and expand the participants' knowledge of the grammar of French through a comparative study with English in key areas, such as verbs and tenses, syntactic placement, pronouns and prepositions. This will be done through a large array of practical exercises focused on translating selected materials from French into English and vice versa. Another important objective of this course is to provide students with good skills in basic translation techniques.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2024** without having previously completed **FREN2023. Introduction to French/English translation – Part I** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN2025. French speech and sounds – Part I (3 credits)**

The general objectives of this course are as follows: i. to introduce the fundamental notions of French phonetics; ii. to account for typical pronunciation difficulties encountered by students due to the interference of French, Chinese, and English, and iii. to improve students' perception and production of French sounds so as to step up their proficiency in spoken French. Class activities and tutorials will be organized in small groups. The course material will be in French, and French will be used as the medium of instruction.

Prerequisites: **FREN2025** is open to students who have successfully completed **FREN1001. French I.1** and **FREN1002. French I.2**. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2025** without having previously completed **FREN1002** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN2026. French speech and sounds – Part II (3 credits)**

The general objectives of this course are as follows: i. to discuss important phonological aspects of the French language which generally cause difficulties of perception among students; ii. to improve students' proficiency in French with respect to the spoken and aural dimensions; and iii. to prepare students for the period of time they are advised to spend in France during the summer. Discussion topics will cover various phonological phenomena in French connected speech, such as elision and assimilation, *liaison* and *enchaînement*, as well as prosodic features and their paralinguistic implications. Class activities and tutorials will be organized in small groups. The course material will be in French, and French will be the medium of instruction.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2026** without having previously completed **FREN2025. French speech and sounds - Part I** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN2027. French culture and society (6 credits)**

This course is designed to review key aspects of France's society and culture as well as to offer a concise introduction to the main stages of the country's historical and territorial development. Topics will include institutions and society (government, education, politics, economy, labour, media, etc.) and essential cultural features (festivals, customs, traditions, etiquette, colloquialisms, way of life, leisure, etc.). Major events that have contributed to the shaping of the country will also be presented and their significance discussed. The role and place of the regions within this historical process will be examined, so as to understand the correlation of distinct regional characteristics with related historical developments. The teaching material and resources used for this course will be in French, and the main medium of instruction will be French.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN2027** without having previously completed **FREN1002. French I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

## Second/Third Year

### **FREN2221. A profile of contemporary France (6 credits)**

This course is intended to investigate current issues and debates taking place in France today, and to examine the way these issues are presented in the French and international media. The notions of French cultural identity and national citizenship will be looked at, as well as France's relations with its European neighbors and with the rest of the world. To provide essential references in support of the discussions, the course will bring in background information on various aspects of France; its national iconography, its government and its political, social, demographic environment. At the same time, the course will relate these facts to significant moments of the country's recent history, such as the post-war period of recovery, the decolonization process, the construction of the Francophone community, the European Union project, students' and workers' upheavals and the current debates related to immigration and integration.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Medium of instruction: English

---

## Third Year

### **FREN3001. French III.1 (6 credits)**

In this course students continue to build upon work done in the First and Second Year. The intention is to develop students' proficiency in speaking, listening, reading, and writing in French. Class lectures will be based on communicative methods and approaches designed to encourage participants to be creative, problem-solving, and independent users of the language. Various literary and non-literary texts from France and other French-speaking countries will be used, with the aim of stimulating critical reading and discussion. Linguistic activities will also be supported by audio-visual and web-based materials which will help students to familiarize themselves further with French and francophone cultures.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3001** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **FREN3002. French III.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **French III.1**. The intention is to develop students' proficiency in speaking, listening, reading, and writing in French. Class lectures will be based on communicative methods and approaches designed to encourage participants to be creative, problem-solving, and independent users of the language. Various literary and non-literary texts from France and other French-speaking countries will be used, with the aim of stimulating critical reading and discussion. Linguistic activities will also be supported by audio-visual and web-based materials which will help students to familiarize themselves further with French and francophone cultures.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3002. French III.2** without having previously completed **FREN3001. French III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **FREN3021. Francophone literatures and identities (6 credits)**

This course offers a broad introduction to leading authors from the French-speaking world outside France, with a special emphasis on Quebec, the Caribbean, the Maghreb, West Africa, and Vietnam. The discussions will be based on a selection of works involving the issues of race and minorities, identity and nationality, colonization and self-determination, native land and exile, as well as multilingualism and universality, modernity and tradition. In investigating the way these various themes appear in Francophone literary texts and essays, students shall aim to gain a better understanding of how the use of the French language as a medium of expression may facilitate creativity and reception or, on the contrary, distort or hinder cultural distinctiveness. The medium of discussion will be French, and the supporting material will be in French.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3021** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN3022. French and Francophone cinema (6 credits)**

This course offers an introduction to French and Francophone cinema through a range of topics, such as its historical, cultural, economic development, popular genres, and major trends. These aspects will be discussed in relation to important issues in France and the rest of the Francophone world such as the question of identity, cultural policy and globalization. Additionally, students will analyze the position of French-speaking cinema and its standing in today's broader international context. The medium of instruction and most of the materials used will be in French.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3022** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN3023. Media watch: Tracking French news (6 credits)**

This course focuses on the media industry in France and the management of information in relation to news and current affairs on the national scene. There will be a detailed scrutiny of the French press in its various forms: newspapers, periodicals, radio, TV, and Internet. Students shall compare and contrast how the different media process information and target their audience according to political, social or gender affiliation, commercial interest, and intended readership. By doing so they will also be keeping abreast with the country's current affairs. The medium of instruction and all the materials used will be in French.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3023** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FREN3024. Modern French literature (6 credits)**

This course offers a broad survey of French authors and literary movements from the 19th century to the present day. Emphasis will be placed on the literary ideas and styles that emerged during this period. The discussions will also cover the most important moments in French recent history as imagined and rendered by writers. In addition, through the close reading of selected passages of major works, the participants will be introduced to methods of textual analysis and critical appraisal of literary texts in various genres (novel and prose, poetry and drama). The medium of discussion will be French, and the supporting material (excerpts, press articles, films, iconography and notes) will be in French or, where appropriate, provided in translation.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3024** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FREN3025. French-speaking comic strip culture (6 credits)**

This course offers a broad introduction to comic strip culture in the French language, known as BD (*bande dessinée*). Students will learn about key aspects of its history, its various formats and its status in France, as well as in other French-speaking societies. In this process, students will become familiar with major authors, stories, and characters that have had an impact upon the consciousness of several generations of readers. Through a range of selected readings, the course will also focus on some of the important language features found in the BD and the links that can be established between the textual content and the drawings. The medium of discussion will be French, and the supporting material will be in French.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3025** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FREN3026. Conveying otherness: French imaginings of Asia (6 credits)**

This course discusses the way French travelers, writers, and artists from the Renaissance to the 20th century have represented in their works countries such as India, China, Vietnam, and Japan — commonly regrouped under the Euro-centered term of “Extreme-Orient.” Students shall investigate a selection of key novels, narratives, essays, travel logs, memoirs, journalistic reports, films, as well as works of art that depict discoveries, encounters, and experiences with the view of identifying underlying trends and recurrent themes. While the question of the construction of the Far East as Other and its subsequent orientalizing by Western visitors will come into play in our readings, the extent to which these various accounts have inspired and influenced the aesthetics and the literary production in France will also be examined. The medium of discussion will be French, as well as all the material under investigation.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3026** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FREN3027. Decoding commercials in French (6 credits)**

Commercial advertising is often regarded as an art form, to the point that some advertisement campaigns have earned cult status. This course will examine a wide range of contemporary advertisements and commercials from France as well as from other French-speaking societies in the form of print materials, posters, and film footages. In this process, students shall be exposed to some of the basic techniques used in advertisements and commercials (iconography, narratives, design and layout, puns and humor, catch lines and rhetorical devices) as well as to the various messages and constructs one finds subsumed in these creations: social mythologies and representations, gender-based stereotyping and characterization, racial *exoticization*, and class politics, among others. The medium of discussion will be French.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3027** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FREN3028. The art of brevity in French (6 credits)**

This course focuses on the study of various forms of textual brevity in the French language, literary as well as non-literary. While short textual forms include a large range of distinct genres (e.g. poems, maxims, witticisms, aphorisms, proverbs, adages, idioms, idiomatic expressions, slogans, graffiti, telegrams, titles, catch phrases), they still share common goals: to achieve optimal impact upon the reader and to convey meaning concisely. In examining many examples from a large historical corpus, from Chamfort's aphorisms to May 68 situationist graffiti, students shall also review some of the common rhetorical devices that support or reinforce condensed expression, such as ellipsis, brachylogy, zeugma, paradox, antanacsis, euphemism, and alliteration, to name some of the most important forms. The medium of instruction and all the materials used will be in French.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3028** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FREN3029. French-Canadian culture and civilization (6 credits)**

The course is designed to provide students with an understanding of French-Canadian civilization and culture from early presence in the 16th century to the present, with particular attention paid to Quebec. Students will explore four major concepts: biculturalism, bilingualism, self-identity, and sovereignty within the realm of Francophone Canada.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3029** without having previously completed **FREN2002. French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FREN3030. Guided writing in French (6 credits)**

In this course, participants will receive tuition and guidance to complete a 3500-4000 words piece of writing in French based on a topic of their choice related to France and/or the French speaking world. Discussions with tutors will focus on developing students' organization skills, and ability to use discourse markers and text grammar to present their composition in a sequenced and coherent way.



Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3030** without having previously completed **FREN2002, French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **FREN3118. French in France (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several French universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the French B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **FREN3118** without having previously completed **FREN2002, French II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

## **German Courses**

### **First Year**

#### **GRMN1001. German I.1 (6 credits)**

This beginners' course does not require any previous knowledge of German. Students will acquire basic linguistic and communicative skills in German in speaking, listening, reading, and writing. Apart from their regular language classes, students will be taught in small tutorial groups to further enhance their language skills.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **GRMN1002. German I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **German I.1**. It combines linguistic and communicative skills in German with a balanced emphasis on speaking, listening, reading and writing. Small tutorial groups, which will be arranged in addition to the regular language classes, will provide the students with an environment highly conducive to practicing their language skills. The course will also encourage students to exploit resources available on the *Internet* and in the SMLC's self-practice facilities (the *Language Resource Centre* and *Practice Lab*) which provide a wide range of materials for language practice, such as audio and video discs, CD-ROMs and computer programmes.

Prerequisite: **GRMN1001. German I.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN1002.** without having enrolled in **GRMN1001. German I.1** previously will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**Second Year****GRMN2001. German II.1 (6 credits)**

This course builds on the first-year work. It offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition: reading and text analysis, listening comprehension, composition, translation, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques is used. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the semester to optimise opportunities for interactive practice. All students continuing their studies in the third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in Germany.

Prerequisites: **GRMN1002. German I.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN2001** without having enrolled for **GRMN1002. German I.2** previously will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GRMN2002. German II.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **GRMN2001. German II.1**. It offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition: reading and text analysis, listening comprehension, composition, translation, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques is used. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the semester to optimise opportunities for interactive practice. All students continuing their studies in the third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in Germany.

Prerequisites: **GRMN2001. German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN2002.** without having enrolled for **GRMN2001. German II.1** previously will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GRMN2021. Chinese-German translation (6 credits)**

This course is an introduction to translating texts from German to Chinese and from Chinese to German using a variety of texts written in different styles. It will provide students with intermediate level translation skills, a further understanding of German grammar and additional information on contemporary German topics. Special attention will be given to the particular problems or common errors arising from differences in grammar and other influences from the students' mother tongue. Students will practise additional structures and texts gradually. This is a practical rather than a theoretical course for translation. Students will be expected to do practical work in class as well as at home.

Prerequisite: **GRMN1002. German I.2**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GRMN2023. Contemporary German society in the media (6 credits)**

This course will provide students with background information on various aspects of post war Germany. Students will be asked to analyze significant issues in German society over the past 60 years, such as the American influence on German society, the changing role of women, or the impact of foreign immigrants on German society, by studying authentic materials in German (advertisements, TV commercials, newspaper texts, songs, film clips and movies).

Prerequisite: **GRMN1002 German I.2.**

Co-requisites: **GRMN2001. German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN2023** without having enrolled in **GRMN2001. German II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **GRMN2024. Producing German texts (6 credits)**

This course will provide students with the skills needed to produce texts of different styles in German such as postcards, personal letters, formal letters, short essays (descriptive / argumentative), or short stories. The focus will be strongly on practical work. Students are expected to submit a piece of writing (150 - 300 words, depending on the type of writing) on a weekly or biweekly basis.

Each session will be divided into two parts:

Part I will be a discussion and analysis of texts prepared by the students following the introduction of the topic in the previous session. The discussion will focus both on the structure of the writings and as well as on grammatical and lexical correctness.

Part II will introduce the topic of the following session. Students will be given advice on how to approach the topic and how to structure their texts.

This course is taught in German supplemented by English.

Prerequisite: **GRMN1002. German I.2.**

Co-requisites: **GRMN2001. German II.1** or **GRMN2002. German II.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN2024** without having enrolled in **GRMN2001. German II.1** or **GRMN2002. German II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **GRMN2025. Understanding Germany and the Germans (6 credits)**

The course is designed to give students a better understanding of Germany by providing students with an introduction to topics that relate to major current events and developments in Germany from the diversified political and social to cultural aspects. Topics covered include Germany's political system, contemporary life in unified Germany, family and social life, German customs and traditions, and multicultural aspects of German society. Students will work individually, in pairs and in groups. They will present the result of their work to their fellow students for peer review. This involves project work and class work. They will be instructed on the use of new media to allow practice and improvement of both oral and reading skills.

During the course, students will be required to complete two in-class tests, submit a research paper and conduct a presentation on a topic of their choice written in German from the list of topics. This course will also give an overview of other German speaking countries. Classes will be conducted in German and English. Guest lecturers will be invited to give talks on selected topics. Students will be given the opportunity to discuss and raise in-depth questions during the talks.

Prerequisite: **GRMN2001. German II.1.**

Co-requisites: **GRMN2002. German II.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students may not enroll in **GRMN2025** without enrolling in **GRMN2002. German II.2** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

### Third Year

#### **GRMN3001. German III.1 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **GRMN2002. German II.2**. It offers a balanced range of language skills and furthers exploration of the various linguistic aspects of the language. Special attention will be given to language registers and patterns, specific terminology and structures used in a variety of fields (literature, press, business documents, etc.) to enable students to communicate at an advanced level in German. As in **German II.2**, small tutorial groups will be arranged to optimise opportunities for interactive practice.

Prerequisites: **GRMN2002. German II.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3001** without having enrolled in **GRMN2002. German II.2** previously will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **GRMN3002. German III.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **GRMN3001. German III.1**. It offers a balanced range of language skills and furthers exploration of the various linguistic aspects of the language. Special attention will be given to language registers and patterns, specific terminology and structures used in a variety of fields (literature, press, business documents, etc.) to enable students to communicate at an advanced level in German. As in **German III.1**, small tutorial groups will be arranged to optimise opportunities for interactive practice.

Prerequisites: **GRMN3001. German III.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3002** without having enrolled in **GRMN3001. German III.1** previously will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

#### **GRMN3022. German project (6 credits)**

In this course students will study in-depth an approved topic of their choice in German. They will present their findings to their peers and teachers and submit a written project of around 4,000 words in German at the end of the course. Students wishing to enroll in this course are encouraged to make use of their stay in Germany to collect materials for their project and are strongly advised to attend the pre-course meeting.

Prerequisites: **GRMN3001. German III.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3022** without having enrolled in **GRMN3001. German III.1** previously will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Students may not enrol in **GRMN3022** without enrolling in **GRMN3002. German III.2** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 100% of the grade awarded for **German project**.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**GRMN3023. English-German translation (6 credits)**

In this course, students practice translating from English to German using a variety of texts written in different genres. These texts refer to contemporary life in Germany, other German-speaking countries and Hong Kong and usually deal with topics like culture, politics, and social life. The course will be divided into two parts: Part I will focus on the analysis of the major structural, lexical and semantic differences between German and English. Part II will concentrate on translating a variety of text genres from English to German in order to provide students with information on contemporary German topics and life-style.

Students will work individually, in pairs and in groups. They will take an active role in class by presenting the result of their work to their fellow students for peer review.

Prerequisite: **GRMN3001. German III.1.**

Co-requisites: **GRMN3002. German III.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3023** without having enrolled in **GRMN3002. German III.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GRMN3026. Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries – The German Romantics (6 credits)**

This course explores one of the most popular periods in German literature - German Romanticism. While this period is well known for its emotional and imaginative descriptions of nature and expressions of feelings, many of its writers also had been deeply affected by the historical, political and social events of their times. The course begins with providing a short overview over the literary and historical developments leading up to and following this period, followed by an in-depth study of authentic texts from various authors representing the two main streams of German Romanticism and it concludes by tracing Romantic influences in modern society.

Prerequisite: **GRMN2002. German II.2.**

Co-requisites: **GRMN3001.** or **GRMN3002.** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3026** without having enrolled in **GRMN3001. German III.1** or **GRMN3002. German III.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GRMN3027. German for business (6 credits)**

This course is designed to prepare students for their future career at a German-speaking company or institution. It will be divided in two parts: Part I will equip students with the necessary communication, reading and writing skills in order to apply for a job/internship. Visits to German, Austrian or Swiss companies and institutions will be organized. During the reading week, students will gain an insight into the day-to-day work activities of a visited company. Part II will focus on the students' sharing experiences on the business entity. This includes analysis of company profiles. In addition, students will design a personal portfolio which will include a selection of their business writing. Guests will be invited to give students a deeper understanding of the differences between the working cultures of German and Chinese speakers. Classes will be conducted in German.

Prerequisite: **GRMN2002 German II.2.**

Co-requisites: **GRMN3001. German III.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3027** without having enrolled in **GRMN3001. German III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the requisite standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester only.

**GRMN3028. Kino! Studies in German cinema (6 credits)**

The goal of this course is to analyze German cinema from the first major German expressionist film *The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari* (*Das Kabinett des Dr. Caligari*) to the present time within a cultural and social framework so as to gain insight into some of the major shifts in life and culture in Germany.

Prerequisites: **GRMN2002. German II.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3028** without having passed **GRMN2002. German II.2** previously will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained the required standard elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GRMN3029. History of the German language and German linguistics (6 credits)**

This course is designed to provide students with an overview of the major fields of history of the German language and German linguistics as they apply to Standard German. It will introduce students to the broad outlines of the historical development of the German language from the earliest times until the modern period. It will look at some of the key sound changes and at the grammatical developments which give the modern language its distinctive features. There will also be discussions on regional variation within the German-speaking world. The linguistic aspect of this course will cover the traditional branches of linguistic theory: phonology, the study of the sounds and sound systems; morphology, the study of word structure, and syntax, as well as the study of sentence structure.

Prerequisites: **GRMN2001. German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3029** without having previously completed in **GRMN2001. German II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GRMN3118. German in Germany (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several German universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the German B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **GRMN2002. German II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **GRMN3118** without having previously completed **GRMN2002. German II** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

**Greek Courses****First Year****GREK1001. Greek I.1 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course students will acquire basic linguistic and communicative skills in speaking, listening, reading, and writing in Greek. Beginning with the Greek alphabet and grammar, the lessons will

provide students with the ability to handle basic communication in a Greek-speaking environment. Through the study of this language at a basic level, students will also gain an insight into some aspects of Greek and Cypriot culture.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **GREK1002. Greek I.2 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Building on **Greek I.1**, students will continue to expand their knowledge of Greek grammar and vocabulary. Through readings focusing on the cultural and linguistic heritage of the Greek-speaking world, students will continue to develop some insight into aspects of Greek and Cypriot culture.

Prerequisite: **GREK1001. Greek I.1**. Students must have satisfactorily completed **GREK1001. Greek I.1**. Students wishing to be admitted to **GREK1002** without having enrolled in **GREK1001 Greek I.1** previously will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **GREK1021. Introduction to Greek culture and society (6 credits)**

*(This course is offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides an orientation for students of diverse backgrounds across the vast and immensely rich panorama of Greek and Hellenic/Hellenistic cultures. Beginning with art and religion, the course will then move onto literature: e.g., Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, as well as archaic poetry and Athenian tragedy and comedy, among the others. (Topics, within this genre, will vary annually). The course combines detailed literary and artistic appreciation with an understanding of the cultural contexts in which Greek and Hellenic/Hellenistic art and literature flourished from ancient times to the present. Topics will include aspects such as: myth and religion, heroic values, the archaic world, the artistic and intellectual life of classical Athens and other Greek-speaking areas, the theatre, education, the transformations of Greek culture under Rome, the Hellenic/Hellenistic World, present-day Greece and Cyprus, and the Greek-speaking Diaspora in the world.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Medium of instruction: English. Knowledge of Greek is not necessary.

---

## **Second Year**

### **GREK2001. Greek II.1 (6 credits)**

**Greek II.1** is a continuation of **Greek I.1** and **Greek I.2**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the Greek language. The course offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition: reading and text analysis, listening comprehension, composition, translation, oral expression, and communicative skill. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video and Internet. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of the Greek language and to further develop their production and reception skills. Small tutorial groups will be arranged throughout the semester to ensure maximum opportunities for interactive practice. Through continuing to study this language, students will gain further insight into aspects of Greek and Cypriot culture.

Prerequisites: **GREK1002. Greek I.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **GREK2001** without having previously completed **GREK1002. Greek I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **GREK2002. Greek II.2 (6 credits)**

**Greek II.2** is a continuation of **Greek II.1**. Students will begin the semester by briefly reviewing material from the previous semester, and will then build upon skills learned in semester 1, while adding new vocabulary and grammar fundamental to basic communication and writing skills and techniques. Speaking, listening and writing skills will be emphasized, and readings will be assigned as well. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the semester to ensure maximum opportunities for interactive practice. Students will continue to gain an insight into aspects of Greek and Cypriot culture. All students continuing their studies in the third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in a Greek-speaking country.

Prerequisites: **GREK2001. Greek II.1.** Students wishing to be admitted to **GREK2002** without having previously completed **GREK2001. Greek II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## **Third Year**

### **GREK3001. Greek III.1 (6 credits)**

This course enables students to build on the two previous years' work to reach a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Greek language through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio, and video). The course emphasizes the use of correct spoken and written Greek at an advanced level with the aim of further stimulating reading abilities. Through readings focusing on the cultural and linguistic heritage of the Greek-speaking world, students will have an opportunity to develop their mastery of grammar, vocabulary, and the Greek language more generally. Students will also be introduced to "culture-specific" components of the Greek language and, through the study of the language, will continue to gain an insight into aspects of Greek and Cypriot culture.

Prerequisites: **GREK2002. Greek II.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **GREK3001** without having previously completed **GREK2002. Greek II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **GREK3002. Greek III.2 (6 credits)**

**Greek III.2** is a continuation of **Greek III.1**. The emphasis of the second part of this third-year course is on the use of correct spoken and written Greek on an advanced level. As in **Greek III.1**, in **Greek III.2** students will expand and develop their abilities to use Greek grammar and vocabulary, as well as will broaden their knowledge of the Greek language further. Students will continue to concentrate on speaking and writing Greek. Students will also be introduced to "culture-specific" components of the Greek language and, through the study of the language, will continue to gain an insight into aspects of Greek and Cypriot culture.



Prerequisites: **GREK3001. Greek III.1.** Students wishing to be admitted to **GREK3002** without having previously completed **GREK3001. Greek III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## Italian Courses

### First Year

#### **ITAL1001. Italian I.1 (6 credits)**

This course is intended for complete beginners in Italian and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading, and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **ITAL1002. Italian I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **ITAL1001. Italian I.1.** It will further develop the four areas of competence with the view of expanding students' linguistic, pronunciation, and communicative skills. Participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the School's self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as to take advantage of resources accessible through Internet.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **ITAL1001. Italian I.1.** Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL1002** without having previously completed **ITAL1001. Italian I.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the requisite standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### Second Year

#### **ITAL2001. Italian II.1 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **ITAL1002. Italian I.2.** and continues to develop students' skills in speaking, listening, reading and writing Italian. It introduces new syntactic and morphological structures and provides students with opportunities to practice those learnt previously in a variety of contexts. The course also examines aspects of Italian society and culture. Audio visual materials are used throughout the course and small group tutorials are arranged on a weekly basis.

Prerequisites: **ITAL1002** or Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL2001** without having previously completed **ITAL1002** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ITAL2002. Italian II.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **ITAL2001. Italian II.1** and further develops students' skills in speaking, listening, reading and writing Italian to an intermediate level of proficiency. It introduces more complex syntactic and morphological structures and provides students with opportunities to practice those learnt previously in a variety of contexts. The course also examines aspects of Italian society and culture. Audio visual materials are used throughout the course and small group tutorials are arranged on a weekly basis.

Prerequisites: **ITAL2001. Italian II.1.** Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL2002** without having previously completed **ITAL2001** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ITAL2021. Italian reading course (6 credits)**

This course is designed to expand students' knowledge of the Italian language through the analysis of authentic texts related to different aspects of Italian culture. The texts studied include literary excerpts, newspaper and magazine articles, and song lyrics. Every week, students are asked to analyze specific texts prior to each lesson for further discussion in class. The main medium of instruction is Italian.

Prerequisites: **ITAL1002. Italian I.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL2021** without having previously completed **ITAL1002** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ITAL2022. Italian for business (6 credits)**

This course introduces the vocabulary and phraseology – for both oral and written communication – typical of business and commercial fields in Italy. It also provides insight into various aspects of the Italian economy and Italian business culture and explores how they differ from those of other cultures. As part of the course students are required to liaise with locally based Italian companies, set up a short-term work placement shadowing a specific member of staff, and write a report on their experience, in Italian.

Prerequisites: **ITAL1002. Italian I.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL2022** without having previously completed **ITAL1002** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ITAL2023. Italian lifestyle and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.).*

This course provides a literary, social, and historical outline of Italian civilization and contemporary culture, with a particular emphasis on youth culture. Topics covered range from the visual arts, music, customs and traditions in different regions and cities, to cinema, cultural tourism, food, fashion, and education. The course examines what it means to be “Italian” in the world today and encourages students to reflect on the elements that contribute to the construction of a national identity. The course is taught in English.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ITAL3001. Italian III.1 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of Italian II.2. It further explores the different linguistic aspects of the language and continues to develop students' skills in speaking, listening, reading and writing Italian to an advanced level of proficiency. It introduces new syntactic and morphological structures and provides students with opportunities to practice those learnt previously in a variety of contexts. The course also examines aspects of Italian society and culture, including the North/South divide, organized crime and the media. Audio visual materials are used throughout the course and small group tutorials are arranged on a weekly basis.

Prerequisites: **ITAL2002 Italian II.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL3001** without having previously completed **ITAL2002** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ITAL3002. Italian III.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **ITAL3001. Italian III.1.** It further explores the different linguistic aspects of the language and continues to develop students' skills in speaking, listening, reading and writing Italian to an advanced level of proficiency. It introduces new syntactic and morphological structures and provides students with opportunities to practice those learnt previously in a variety of contexts. The course also examines aspects of Italian society and culture, including the North/South divide, organized crime and the media. Audio visual materials are used throughout the course and small group tutorials are arranged on a weekly basis.

Prerequisites: **ITAL3001. Italian III.1.** Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL3002** without having previously completed **ITAL3001** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ITAL3021. Contemporary Italian literature (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to some of the most prominent Italian writers of the 20th century and their literary masterpieces. These include Primo Levi, Alberto Moravia, Cesare Pavese, Italo Calvino and Pier Paolo Pasolini. The works of contemporary writers, such as Antonio Tabucchi, Susanna Tamaro, and Andrea Camilleri are considered. The selection of texts will also serve as a basis for discussion of various aspects of Italian culture and society. Students are required to read excerpts from these texts in their original language.

Prerequisites: **ITAL2002. Italian II.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL3021** without having previously completed **ITAL2002** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ITAL3022. Society and politics of modern Italy (6 credits)**

This course provides an overview of Italian contemporary society and culture in its manifold aspects with particular emphasis on politics. The course explores how various issues that existed prior to Italy's unification approximately 150 years ago have endured and continue to impact the country today, including the economic gap between the North and the South. It will also examine the existence of organized crime – the Mafia and the Camorra – as well as other legal and illegal organizations that are active players in Italian politics and society. This course is taught in English.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**ITAL3118. Italian in Italy (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Italian universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Italian B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **ITAL2002. Italian II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **ITAL3118** without having previously completed **ITAL2002. Italian II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

**Korean Courses****First Year****KORE1001. Korean I.1 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This introductory course is the First Part of Korean I, which is designed for complete beginners (ab initio) who are interested in learning the Korean language and learning about Korean culture. On completion of the course, students will be able to participate in simple conversations related to daily life, and will have acquired a basic knowledge of the written forms of the Korean language.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**KORE1002. Korean I.2 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This elementary Korean course continues to focus on proficiency-based Korean learning, further developing students' overall Korean language ability established in **Korean I.1**. On completion of the course, students will be able to participate in simple conversations related to daily life, and will have acquired a general knowledge of the written forms of the Korean language.

Prerequisites: **KORE1001. Korean I.1**. Students wishing to be admitted to **KORE1002** without having previously completed **KORE1001. Korean I.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**KORE1021. Introduction to Korean culture and society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course provides students with a broad-based description of Korean culture and society. It will include a brief historical overview on the country, examine various socio-cultural issues in traditional and modern Korea, and compare them to those of the other East Asian countries.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## Second Year

### **KORE2001. Korean II.1 (6 credits)**

This course continues to focus on proficiency-based Korean learning, further developing students' overall Korean language ability established in Korean I. 2. On completion of the course, students will have mastered basic grammar and the vocabulary needed to write short essays. Students will also be able to carry out daily conversations at a more advanced level than Korean I.1 and I.2.

Prerequisites: **KORE1002. Korean I.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **KORE2001** without having previously completed **KORE1002. Korean I. 2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **KORE2002. Korean II.2 (6 credits)**

This course continues to focus on proficiency-based Korean learning, further developing students' overall Korean language ability established in Korean II. 1. On completion of the course, students will be able to write short essays with an appropriate grammatical structure, and have acquired the essential vocabulary and expressions to participate in situational conversations on topics related to daily life, entertainment and social activities.

Prerequisites: **KORE2001. Korean II.1.** Students wishing to be admitted to **KORE2002. Korean II. 2** without having previously completed **KORE2001. Korean II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **KORE2021. Korean reading course (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is offered to students who have attained an intermediate level of Korean in order to further enhance their language skills and extend their knowledge of Korean society through an analysis of Korean texts. Students will analyze and discuss various contemporary texts and documents written in different styles such as newspapers, magazines and song lyrics related to current Korean society. The teaching materials and the main medium of instruction will be Korean.

Co-requisites: **KORE2002. Korean II.2.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **KORE2022. Korean through Chinese poems (6 credits)**

This course provides students with basic skills in translating Chinese poems into Korean. Students will be exposed to a wide variety of texts which describe the lives, the cultures, and the societies of Chinese and Korean peoples. A variety of vocabulary and different writing styles will be gradually introduced to build up students' skills. Upon completion of the course, students will be equipped with the basic ability to translate Chinese into Korean and, at the same time, enjoy a variety of expressions uniquely used in poems. Students will learn to appreciate the differences and commonalities of Chinese and Korean languages and cultures.

Prerequisites: **KORE1001. Korean I.1 and KORE1002. Korean I.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **KORE2022** without having previously completed **KORE1001. Korean I.1 and KORE1002. Korean I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### Third Year

#### **KORE3001. Korean III.1 (6 credits)**

This course continues to build on the first and second year's work. The intention is to lead students towards an in-depth understanding of Korean language through the study of various materials provided in class. On completion of the course, students will be able to write essays with complex grammatical structures, and participate in situational conversations on social and cultural issues at an advanced level.

Prerequisites: **KORE2002. Korean II.2.** Students wishing to be admitted to **KORE3001** without having previously completed **KORE2002. Korean II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **KORE3002. Korean III.2 (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who have completed Korean III. 1 or who have attained a comparable level of proficiency in Korean. On completion of the course, students will be able to write essays with complex grammatical structures, and participate in situational conversations relating to topics in current affairs, social and cultural issues at an advanced level of Korean.

Prerequisites: **KORE3001. Korean III.1.** Students wishing to be admitted to **KORE3002** without having previously completed **KORE3001. Korean III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

#### **KORE3021. Contemporary Korean society (6 credits)**

This course is for advanced learners of Korean who wish to continue to develop their communication skills by examining various topics relating to contemporary Korean society and culture. Emphasis will be placed on the expansion of their proficiency in listening, speaking, reading, and writing. The course includes lectures on various aspects of Korean society and culture including education, politics, the economy, the environment and entertainment. Course materials will include authentic texts selected from newspapers, literature and magazines as well as movies, radio programmes and documentary films. The teaching materials and the main medium of instruction will be Korean.

Co-requisites: **KORE3001. Korean III. 1or KORE3002. Korean III.2.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

## Portuguese Courses

### First Year

#### **PORT1001. Portuguese I.1 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is intended for students with little or no previous knowledge of Portuguese. Participants will acquire basic skills in listening, speaking, reading and writing Portuguese. Classes will be conducted in small groups in order to facilitate interaction among participants. Special attention will be given to pronunciation and building a base of core vocabulary. This course is a pre-requisite for students wishing to pursue a minor in Portuguese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **PORT1002. Portuguese I.2 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of **PORT1001. Portuguese I.1**. It aims to extend the written and oral skills acquired by students in their first semester of studies. Students develop the ability to express ideas and opinions in Portuguese and learn about life in Lusophone countries through the analysis of selected written and oral texts.

This course is a pre-requisite for students wishing to pursue a minor in Portuguese.

Prerequisite: **PORT1001. Portuguese I.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### Second Year

#### **PORT2001. Portuguese II.1 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **PORT1002. Portuguese I.2**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **PORT2001** without having previously completed **PORT1002. Portuguese I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **PORT2002. Portuguese II.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **PORT2001. Portuguese II.1**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Portuguese language. All students continuing their studies in the third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in a Portuguese-speaking country.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **PORT2002** without having previously completed **PORT2001. Portuguese II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## Second/Third Year

### **PORT2221. Portuguese reading course (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce students to the literature of the Portuguese-speaking countries through reading, analysis and discussion of a selection of texts from late twentieth-century and contemporary authors. The course will be conducted in Portuguese and it is recommended for students with good basic knowledge of the language who wish to improve their ability to read, speak and write. Passages from novels and plays, short stories and poems will enable the students to perceive the writer's skills and aims, while practicing a wide range of language tasks.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **PORT2221** without having previously completed **PORT10002. Portuguese I.2** or **PORT2001. Portuguese II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **PORT2222. Portugal on the move (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will focus on contemporary Portuguese life and popular culture. Lectures will cover a variety of aspects including music, food, fashion, architecture, sports, work and leisure, traditions and festivals. Students will be encouraged to draw comparisons with their own society and to reflect on the nature of popular culture. The course will be taught in English, no knowledge of Portuguese is required.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

## Third Year

### **PORT3001. Portuguese III.1 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **PORT2002. Portuguese II. 2**. Participants develop their ability to deal with non-routine information using lexical inference and compensating strategies such as restructuring, circumlocution and substitution in order to successfully accomplish communicative tasks. A variety of written, audio and video materials will serve as a basis for study and discussion on issues pertinent to life in Portugal and in other Lusophone areas.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **PORT3001** without having previously completed **PORT2002. Portuguese II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.



**PORT3002. Portuguese III.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **PORT3001. Portuguese III.1**. Participants are expected to further develop their ability to deal with non-routine information as well as their awareness of language registers and social conventions. The intention is to lead participants towards an advanced understanding of the Portuguese language. Learning activities include the study of articles and reports about contemporary issues expressing a particular viewpoint and production of a variety of text types, including small research projects and essays with a written output of no more than 4,000 words.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **PORT3002** without having previously completed **PORT3001. Portuguese III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**PORT3021. The Big screen: Film in Portugal and Brazil (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce students to contemporary Portuguese and Brazilian cinema paying close attention to the social and intellectual currents in which the films were produced. We will view, analyze and discuss a selection of the most acclaimed films to emerge in the last 20 years from Portugal and Brazil. Though classes will be conducted in English and films will have English subtitles, students may choose to write their essays in English or Portuguese.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**PORT3118. Portuguese in Portugal (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Portuguese universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Portuguese B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **PORT2002. Portuguese II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **PORT3118** without having previously completed **PORT2002. Portuguese II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

**Spanish Courses****First Year****SPAN1001. Spanish I.1 (6 credits)**

This course is intended for students who have no previous knowledge of Spanish. The main objective of the course is to teach students the basics of Spanish grammar and to provide the participants with a firm foundation in the four language skills (reading, writing, listening and speaking) as well as to offer insights into Spanish culture. Through a communicative approach this course should quickly enable participants to engage in simple conversations and understand a variety of interactive situations. By the end of the course, students should be able to use the Spanish language at a level of elementary

proficiency where they can understand and use familiar everyday expressions and very basic phrases. They should also be able to introduce themselves and others, ask and answer questions about personal details and interact in a simple way. Classes will be conducted in small groups in order to ensure a high degree of interaction between students and teachers. Tutorial groups will also be arranged separately to further practice language skills.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) progress tests, ii) other assignments and iii) participation in class.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **SPAN1002. Spanish I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **SPAN1001. Spanish I.1**. The objective of the course is to build on the work completed in the first semester so as to consolidate and broaden participants' foundation in the four language skills (reading, writing, listening and speaking). By the end of the course, students should be able to use the Spanish language at a level of basic user proficiency where they can understand sentences and expressions related to familiar topics. They should also be able to communicate in simple and routine tasks and describe in simple terms aspects of their background and immediate environment. As in the first semester, tutorial groups will be arranged in addition to the classroom hours to further practice language skills. Students will be encouraged to become independent learners by making use of the various resources available on the *Internet* and in the School's self-access facilities which provide a wide range of materials for language learning and practice, including audio and videotapes, CD-ROMs and reading materials.

Prerequisite: Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN1002** without having previously completed **SPAN1001. Spanish I.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) progress tests, ii) participation in class, iii) a brief oral test and iv) other assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **SPAN1021. Introduction to the culture of Spain (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a general introduction to the culture of Spain. Through a series of lectures and talks, students will learn about the history, economy and geography of Spain. The history of the Spanish Civil War and its consequences, and the political evolution of Spain from the 20th century to the present will be covered. The course will also explore different aspects of Spanish customs, traditions and festivals.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Medium of Instruction: English

---

### **SPAN1022. Introduction to the cultures of Spanish America (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to give students an insight into the cultures and traditions of the Spanish-speaking countries of America, from Mexico and the Caribbean to Chile and Argentina. Through a series of lectures and talks, students will learn about the history and geography, the societies (politics, economy, education, etc.) and cultures (customs, festivals, family, etc.) of Spanish-speaking America.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Medium of Instruction: English

## Second Year

### **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1 (6 credits)**

This course continues to build on the previous years' work by helping students to develop Spanish speaking, reading and writing to an intermediate level. The intention is to lead participants towards the acquisition of the Spanish language at a level that allows them to communicate effectively in tasks requiring a direct exchange of information on familiar and routine matters encountered in work, school, leisure, etc. through the study of a variety of documents (written and audiovisual) and the development of a series of communicative activities. This course follows a task-based approach with explicit attention to the formal aspects of language.

**Prerequisites:** Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1** must have completed **SPAN1002. Spanish I.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2001** without having previously completed **SPAN1002. Spanish I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) progress tests, ii) other assignments, and iii) participation in class.

---

### **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of SPAN2001. Spanish II.1. The course builds further on the first semester's work allowing students to develop a more independent approach to learning the language through the study of a variety of documents (written and audiovisual) and the development of a series of communicative activities that integrate the different skills (reading, writing, listening, speaking) and competences (cultural and strategic) involved in effective communication. This course follows a task-based approach with explicit attention to the formal aspects of language.

**Prerequisites:** Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2** must have completed **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2002.** without having previously completed **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) progress tests, ii) other assignments iii) an oral examination at the end of the semester and iv) participation in class.

---

### **SPAN2021. The sounds of Spanish: An introduction to Spanish phonetics and pronunciation (6 credits)**

The Sounds of Spanish is a multimedia-based course that emphasizes the practice of pronunciation through activities created to develop speech reception and production skills. Students will be asked to work with audio materials and recording facilities in class, using the language lab, and at home, using the Internet. Class activities will be organized in small groups thus allowing the teacher to work closely on a one to one basis with each student.

The general objective of this course is to improve students' oral skills, focusing on the particular pronunciation difficulties encountered by Cantonese speakers when learning Spanish. This course covers an introductory theoretical study of the basic concepts of Spanish phonetics and phonology and it also explores the main differences between Cantonese, English and Spanish in order to detect and correct interferences between the three languages.

This is mainly a practical course and no previous knowledge of Linguistics is required. Teaching materials and medium of instruction will be Spanish.

Prerequisites: (i) **SPAN2021. The sounds of Spanish: An introduction to Spanish phonetics and pronunciation** is open to students who have successfully completed **SPAN1002. Spanish I.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2021** without having previously completed **SPAN1002. Spanish I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

(ii) Students may not enroll in **SPAN2021**, without enrolling in **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes the following: progress tests (written and oral) and assignments such as internet based tasks (WebQuests) and blogs (podcasts) as well as class participation.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **SPAN2023. Spanish culture and society (6 credits)**

The objective of this course is to give an introduction to contemporary Spain. Through a series of lectures and talks, students will learn about the history and geography of Spain. The history of the Spanish Civil War and its consequences, the political evolution of Spain in the 20th century, with a special emphasis on the transition from a dictatorship to a democracy, and the economic development of the country will be covered. The course will also look at the challenges that Spain faces in the 21st century, in particular problems regarding changes in society (family, religion, youth issues, unemployment, immigration). Students will also learn about the cultural diversity of Spain (customs, festivals, traditions, etc.) as well as important aspects of the Spanish language. This course can help students intending to go to Spain in the summer to learn more about the country. Teaching materials and medium of instruction will be Spanish.

Prerequisites: (i) **SPAN2023** is open to students who have successfully completed **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2023** without having previously completed **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

(ii) Students may not enroll in **SPAN2023** without also enrolling in **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) progress tests, ii) other assignments, and iii) participation in class.

---

### **SPAN2024. Spanish for business I (6 credits)**

This is a Spanish for Specific Purposes course which aims to prepare students to interact effectively with Spanish-speaking commercial or governmental institutions. The course covers topics such as job applications and interviews, structure and organization of companies, cultural differences between Spanish-speaking and Chinese business environments, business meetings, international fairs and international commerce organizations. The topics are addressed in several ways: with topical readings from manuals used in business schools, as well as analyzes of letters, office documents, and newspaper, magazine and Internet articles about business. Audiovisual materials are also used throughout the course. Guest speakers from Spanish-speaking institutions and companies located in Hong Kong are invited to visit the classes.

Prerequisite: **SPAN2024. Spanish for business I** is open to students who have successfully completed **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1** and are currently enrolled in **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2024** without having previously completed **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**SPAN2025. Spanish-writing workshop I (6 credits)**

The aim of the course is to familiarize students with different writing genres (“biographies”, “decalogues”, etc.) to lead them to an understanding about how different purposes are commonly expressed. Another objective is to provide the students with good strategies when reading and writing in Spanish. This course is very practical and students are expected to work in class and also at home. Course materials will be selected according to the progress made by students in the core course (**SPAN2001**) in order to further consolidate the students’ reception and production skills. Teaching materials are in Spanish and medium of instruction will be Spanish.

Prerequisites: (i) Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2025. Spanish writing workshop I** must have completed **SPAN1002. Spanish I.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2025** without having previously completed **SPAN1002. Spanish I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.  
(ii) Students may not enroll in **SPAN2025** without also enrolling in **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**SPAN2026. Spanish-writing workshop II (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of Spanish Writing Workshop I. The aim of this course is to further develop students’ reading and writing skills and being able to distinguish different genres (literary and film) and to analyze how they are written. Students will be taught how to work with the target language in order to achieve a specific objective in their writing. Course materials will be selected according to the progress made by students in the core course (**SPAN2002**) in order to further consolidate the students’ reception and production skills. This course has a distinct “hands on” approach which will require students to work in class as well as at home. Teaching materials are in Spanish and the medium of instruction will be Spanish.

Prerequisites: (i) Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2026. Spanish writing workshop II** must have completed **SPAN2001. Spanish II.1** and **SPAN2025. Spanish writing workshop I**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN2026**, without having previously completed **SPAN2025. Spanish writing workshop I** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.  
(ii) Students may not enroll in **SPAN2026** without also enrolling in **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Third Year****SPAN3001. Spanish III.1 (6 credits)**

This course is taught in the first semester and it continues to build on the two previous years’ work at a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a more independent use of the Spanish language. Students will be exposed to a variety of texts from different media (written, audio and video) from the Hispanic world. This course aims to develop students’ language proficiency through a more in-depth study of important grammatical topics as well as to increase their vocabulary acquisition. By the end of this course students should be able to understand the main ideas of relatively complex standard texts. They should also be able to interact with native speakers with a certain degree of fluency, produce clear, detailed texts on familiar topics, and give reasons and explanations for their own opinions and plans.

**Prerequisites:** Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN3001. Spanish III.1** must have completed **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN3001** without having previously completed **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) progress tests, ii) other assignments and iii) participation in class.

---

### **SPAN3002. Spanish III.2 (6 credits)**

This course is taught in the second semester and its aim is to build on the work done in the previous semester with **SPAN3001**. The intention is to continue leading participants towards a more independent use of the Spanish language. Students will be exposed to a variety of texts from different media (written, audio and video) from the Hispanic world. The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on social issues related to contemporary Spain and Spanish-speaking countries. This course aims at further developing students' language proficiency through a more in-depth study of important grammatical topics. It also aims to increase students' vocabulary acquisition so as to facilitate oral and written expression and comprehension of the Spanish language. By the end of this course students should have reached a stage where they are able to use the language independently and understand the main ideas of complex texts dealing with concrete and abstract topics. They should also be able to interact with native speakers with a degree of fluency and spontaneity, produce clear, detailed texts on a wide range of subjects and explain a viewpoint in detail giving the advantages and disadvantages of various options.

**Prerequisites:** Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN3002** without having previously completed **SPAN3001. Spanish III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) progress tests, ii) other assignments, and iii) an oral examination at the end of the semester and iv) participation in class.

---

### **SPAN3021. The art of translation: From Spanish to English (6 credits)**

This course is an introduction to the art of translating texts from Spanish to English and to a lesser extent from English to Spanish. Special attention will be paid to the particular problems created by differences in grammar and other common errors such as "false friends" and influences from the mother tongue.

The aim of this course is to provide students with basic translation skills and to develop their understanding of Spanish grammar and syntax. Special attention will be paid to the differences in verb tenses in English and Spanish. Students will also learn about the stylistic differences of various genres (newspaper articles, novels, business letters) and how to translate these different types of texts.

Course materials will be selected according to the topics covered in the core course (Spanish III.1) in order to further consolidate the students' knowledge of Spanish grammar and sentence structure. The course focuses mainly on acquiring practical translation skills rather than the theoretical background and students will be expected to do extensive practical work in class as well as at home.

**Prerequisite:** (i) This course is open to students who have successfully completed **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2** and are currently enrolled in **SPAN3001. Spanish III.1**.

(ii) Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN3021** without having previously completed **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework. Coursework includes the following: in-class tests, translation assignments and class participation.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**SPAN3023. Hispanic film and literature (6 credits)**

This course aims to introduce key literary texts and films of Spain and Latin America, as well as to improve the students' level of Spanish and their critical-thinking skills through the analysis of written and visual texts. The course objectives will be tackled in two ways: a) by analyzing a selection of representative films and literary texts; and b) by focusing on Film and Literature as a representation of Spanish-speaking cultures. A selection of films and literary texts will be presented by the teacher for analysis and discussion. The texts and their authors will be studied in their historical context, in order for the students to understand, not only the specific features of an individual author or work, but also of a generation, genre or movement. Throughout the course, students will have to interact with the lecturer and classmates. Guest speakers will be invited to complement the lectures.

Prerequisite: (i) This course is open to students who have successfully completed **SPAN3001. Spanish III.1** and are currently enrolled in **SPAN3002. Spanish III.2**.

(ii) Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN3023** without having previously completed **SPAN3001. Spanish III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: i) written assignments (70%), ii) class attendance and participation (10%) and iii) an oral presentation (20%).

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**SPAN3024. Spanish for business II (6 credits)**

This course builds on the subjects and skills covered in the course Spanish for Business I at a more advanced level. It aims to further prepare students to interact effectively with Spanish-speaking commercial or governmental institutions. It also introduces new topics such as product promotion and publicity, oral and written business transactions (offers, requests, complaints, etc.), banking transactions, major Spanish and Latin American companies, natural resources and existing forums for conducting business exchanges with the Spanish-speaking world. Audiovisual materials are used throughout the course. A number of short internships in Spanish-speaking companies and institutions are arranged, to give students the opportunity to learn outside the classroom environment. Guest speakers from Spanish-speaking institutions and companies located in Hong Kong are regularly invited to visit the classes.

Prerequisite: **SPAN3024** is open to students who have successfully completed **SPAN2024. Spanish for business I**, or equivalent and are currently enrolled in **SPAN3001. Spanish III.1**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN3024** without having previously completed **SPAN2024. Spanish for business I**, or equivalent, will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**SPAN3025. Spanish-American cultures and civilizations (6 credits)**

This course adds a New World dimension to the already existing courses on Spanish language and culture currently on offer. It focuses on the Spanish-speaking countries of Latin America (México, Guatemala, Nicaragua, El Salvador, Costa Rica, Honduras, Panamá, República Dominicana, Puerto Rico, Cuba, Venezuela, Colombia, Ecuador, Perú, Bolivia, Paraguay, Uruguay, Argentina and Chile) where Spanish is also the official language (19 of the 21 Spanish-speaking countries in the world are located in central and south America). The course will explore different aspects of their cultures and civilizations, from the discovery of America and the establishment of colonies to the fight for independence and the development of the different nations. Topics will include history (from Pre-Columbian civilizations up to contemporary developments), geography, politics, economy, society, art and traditions of a selected number of countries. These will be examined with a view towards understanding contemporary cultural patterns and their historical antecedents.

Teaching materials will be in Spanish and medium of instruction will be Spanish.

**Prerequisite:** This course is open to students who have successfully completed **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2** and are currently enrolled in **SPAN3001.Spanish III.1**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN3025** without having previously completed **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework.

---

### **SPAN3118. Spanish in Spain (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Spanish universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Spanish B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

**Prerequisite:** Students must have completed **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SPAN3118** without having previously completed **SPAN2002. Spanish II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

## **Swedish Courses**

### **First Year**

#### **SWED1001. Swedish I.1 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is for beginners of Swedish and will introduce the students to the essentials of the Swedish language. The course will cover speaking, listening, reading and writing with a special emphasis on speaking. Students will learn how to interact in everyday situations and describe their personal circumstances, such as family, profession and hobbies. Apart from using textbooks, additional classroom materials, such as videos and other audio-visuals will be used. The course will also give students an insight to Swedish culture and society. Since Sweden, Norway, and Denmark are closely related in culture and language, the course will also enable students to develop an understanding of Scandinavia.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **SWED1002. Swedish I.2 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of **SWED1001. Swedish I.1** and will further introduce the students to the essentials of the Swedish language. Students will be able to engage in short conversations about everyday situations such as shopping, means of transport, asking for directions, making a phone call, etc. Apart from using textbooks, additional classroom materials, such as videos and other audio-visuals will be used.

**Prerequisite:** **SWED1001. Swedish I.1**

**Assessment:** 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.



## Second Year

### **LANG2001. Swedish II.1 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **SWED1002. Swedish I.2**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Swedish language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **SWED2001** without having previously completed **SWED1002. Swedish I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **LANG2002. Swedish II.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **SWED2001. Swedish II.1**. The intention is to build further on the previous level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The modes of teaching adopted will diversify, and more elaborate material will be used. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Swedish language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **SWED2002** without having previously completed **SWED2001. Swedish II.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

## Second/Third Year

### **SWED2221. Living in the land of the midnight sun – towards an understanding of contemporary Scandinavia (6 credits)**

This course will introduce the region of Scandinavia, which includes Sweden, Denmark, Norway, Finland, and Iceland, through the main themes of its history and culture. It will explore features common to Scandinavia as a whole as well as aspects unique to each country. It will also take a look at Sino-Scandinavian relations and draw comparisons between the contrasting lifestyles of Scandinavians and Hong Kongers. Students can expect to gain an understanding of a region famous for balancing the demands of an advanced and highly competitive economy with one of the world's most comprehensive social welfare systems.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Medium of instruction: English

---

## Third Year

### **SWED3001. Swedish III.1 (6 credits)**

This course continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to allow students to develop a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Swedish language through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Sweden, as well as its history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **SWED3001** without having previously completed **SWED2002. Swedish II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **SWED3002. Swedish III.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **SWED3001. Swedish III.1** and the students are expected to be able to use the spoken and written language on an increasingly advanced level. The students will continue to develop their language skills and simultaneously actively apply their acquired knowledge within different contexts of the course. The selection of documents will serve as a basis for discussions pertaining Swedish society as well as the students own experiences of Hong Kong society.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **SWED3002** without having previously completed **SWED3001. Swedish III.1** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **SWED3118. Swedish in Sweden (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Swedish universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Swedish B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

Prerequisite: Students must have completed **SWED2002. Swedish II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **SWED3118** without having previously completed **SWED2002. Swedish II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

---

## **Thai Courses**

### **First Year**

#### **THAI1001. Thai I.1 (6 credits)**

This course aims to teach complete beginners the basics of Thai with respect to the four linguistic skills of listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Students will also be introduced to Thai culture and society. Vocabulary and grammar will be presented in a communicative way for a variety of situations, e.g. making introductions, leave-taking, giving directions, shopping, making telephone calls and so on. The emphasis will be on spoken Thai.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**THAI1002. Thai I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **Thai I.1**. It combines linguistic and communicative skills in Thai with a balanced emphasis on speaking, listening, reading and writing. Small classes will provide the students with an environment highly conducive to practicing their language skills. The course will also encourage students to exploit resources available on the Internet and in the SMLC's self-practice facilities (the Language Resources Centre and Practice Lab) which provide a wide range of materials for language practice such as audio and video discs.

Prerequisite: **THAI1001. Thai I.1.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**Second Year****THAI2001. Thai II.1 (6 credits)**

This course continues to build on the First Year's work. The intention is to develop students' proficiency in the areas of speaking and listening, reading and writing. Class lectures are based on communicative methods.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **THAI2001** without having previously completed **THAI1002. Thai I.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**THAI2002. Thai II.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **Thai II.1**. The intention is to build further on the previous work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. More elaborate material will be used. Students are expected to consolidate their understanding of Thai and further develop their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: **THAI2001. Thai II.1.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Third Year****THAI3001. Thai III.1 (6 credits)**

This course continues to build on the first and second years' work. The intention is to lead students towards an in-depth understanding of Thai through the study of various materials provided in class.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **THAI3001** without having previously completed **THAI2002. Thai II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**THAI3002. Thai III.2 (6 credits)**

The course is designed for students who have completed **Thai III.1**. Students are expected to be able to use the spoken and written language at an advanced level.

Prerequisites: **THAI3001. Thai III.1.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**THAI3118. Thai in Thailand (3 credits)**

This course is taught and organized by several Thai universities and teaching institutions during the summer between the 2nd and 3rd Year of the Thai B.A. programme. The course lasts about three to four weeks and is designed to build on and to reinforce the language competence acquired during the first two years of study. This course should also prepare the participants for more advanced work in the final year.

**Prerequisite:** Students must have completed **THAI2002. Thai II.2**. Students wishing to be admitted to **THAI3118** without having previously completed **THAI2002. Thai II.2** will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Head of the School of Modern Languages and Cultures that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework. In order to be granted credits for this course, participants will be requested to produce a statement with the mention of a grade from the host institution.

**MODERN CHINA STUDIES**

Modern China Studies is an interdisciplinary programme aimed at giving students a broad-based education on modern China—its language, culture, history, society, economy, governance, environment, and people. The programme combines the perspectives and curricular strengths of a variety of disciplines, including literature, linguistics, art history, history, philosophy, religion, anthropology, sociology, geography, politics, economics, journalism and communications. Graduates will be prepared to enter a wide range of careers in the public and private sectors in which a comprehensive and sophisticated understanding of China is essential to success.

Modern China Studies is ideal for students whose interest in China crosses over disciplinary divides, as well as for international students who would like to learn the Chinese language and pursue a major or minor in China studies. It is also an ideal second major for those pursuing degrees in law, medicine, education, business, journalism, and social work.

Prospective majors and minors in Modern China Studies must pass the prerequisite course **MCSP1001** in their first year. Prospective majors are also required to pass the language requirement in their first year, either by:

1. completing **CHIN1112** and/or **CHIN1113**, subject to their level of Chinese language proficiency; or
2. demonstrating the required level of Chinese language proficiency (by presenting evidence that they had graduated from a Chinese-medium secondary school, or studied Chinese language for a minimum of three years prior to matriculation, or passed Level 2 of the Chinese Language Proficiency Test (HSK).

**The Major**

A major in Modern China Studies consists of 54 credits taken in the second and third years of the programme, consisting of 18 credits of core courses (**MCSP2001**, **MCSP2002** and **MCSP2003**, and a further 36 credits of elective courses as listed below (including at least 18 credits from the Faculty of Arts and 12 credits from the Faculty of Social Sciences) with no more than 6 credits to be taken in Hong Kong-themed courses (marked with \*). Third year students taking a major or minor in Modern China Studies who fulfill the course enrolment requirements may choose to take an optional ‘capstone’ course, designed to allow students to advance their analytical thinking by permitting the application of disciplinary knowledge and principles learned in the first and second years.

**The Minor**

A minor in Modern China Studies consists of second and third-year courses totaling 30 credits, including 18 credits of core courses (**MCSP2001**, **MCSP2002** and **MCSP2003**) and a further 12 credits of elective courses as listed below, excluding Hong Kong-themed courses (marked with\*).

## Modern China Studies Courses

### First-year Course

#### **MCSP1001. China: the long twentieth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first and second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a topical course that adopts multi-disciplinary perspectives to examine significant and complex issues in China's modern century. It serves as a gateway course that introduces students to the interdisciplinary approach to China studies and showcases the best of contemporary international scholarship on China.

Topics include the symbolic sites of: Tiananmen Square, the Great Wall, Global China Towns, the Bund, The Yellow River, Chinese Gardens, Parades, and the Three Gorges Dam. We examine both fictional (including audiovisual) and scholarly materials that deal with the historical, political, social, and artistic aspects of these sites and phenomena in order to understand modern China at its politico-cultural core, in its relations with the outside world, its symbolic function in the new global order and its path to modernization.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### Second and Third-year Courses

#### **MCSP2001. China in the world: from sinology to China studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second or third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is required of all students intending to major or minor in Modern China Studies. It surveys the history of the international scholarship on China from the early European and Middle Eastern encounters, through missionary and sinological endeavors up to 1945. Emphasising methodological issues and disciplinary dialogues, the course encourages students to reflect on the historical and political conditions of knowledge production while training students in innovative and boundary-crossing modes of inquiry.

Prerequisite: **MCSP1001.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **MCSP2002. China in the world: critical paradigms (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second or third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is required of all students intending to major or minor in Modern China Studies. It surveys the history of the international scholarship on China from 1945 through to the present as it transformed around the major academic centres in North America, Europe, Australia, and Asia. We explore how these new paradigms have transformed China studies and brought the field into productive engagements with broader intellectual currents and debates.

Prerequisite: **MCSP1001.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**MCSP2003. Modern China Studies research project (6 credits)**

Students in this course pursue independent research and produce a research paper under the supervision of a teacher in Modern China Studies. This course is designed to provide students with the opportunity to explore in depth a topic of interest to them in relation to Modern China's development and position in the world. It can either adopt a single disciplinary methodology OR a multidisciplinary problem-oriented perspective. Students undertaking the course will negotiate the topic in conjunction with the program coordinator to determine its feasibility and ensure academic rigor.

Prerequisite: **MCSP2001 or MCSP2002.**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**First-year Prerequisites****Major in Modern China Studies**

Students intending to declare a major in Modern China Studies in their second and third years must complete the following course(s) in their first year of study:

MCSP1001. China: the long twentieth century (6 credits)

**Language Requirement:**

Students are also required to pass the language requirement in their first year, either by:

1. completing CHIN1112. Beginning Chinese as a foreign language, Part I (6 credits) and/or CHIN1113. Beginning Chinese as a foreign language, Part II (6 credits), subject to their level of Chinese language proficiency; or
2. demonstrating the required level of Chinese language proficiency (by presenting evidence that they had graduated from a Chinese-medium secondary school, or studied Chinese language for a minimum of three years prior to matriculation, or passed Level 2 of the Chinese Language Proficiency Test (HSK).

**Minor in Modern China Studies**

Students intending to declare a minor in Modern China Studies in their second and third years must complete the following course in their first year of study:

MCSP1001. China: the long twentieth century (6 credits)

**Second and Third Year****A. CORE COURSES**

The following core courses are compulsory for all students taking the major or the minor:

MCSP2001. China in the world: from sinology to China studies (6 credits)

AND

MCSP2002. China in the world: critical paradigms (6 credits)

AND

MCSP2003. Modern China Studies Research Project (6 credits)

## B. ELECTIVE COURSES

Majors must select courses totaling 36 credits from the following list of electives, ensuring that at least 18 credits to be taken in courses from the Faculty of Arts and 12 credits from the Faculty of Social Sciences. Students cannot count more than 6 credits from Hong Kong-themed courses (marked with \*) toward the major.

Minors must select courses totaling 12 credits from the following list of electives. Students cannot count any credits from Hong Kong-themed courses (marked with \*) toward the minor.

*{Note: Not all courses are offered in a given semester; students should check with individual units on course availability; students should also check on course prerequisites and other enrollment restrictions.}*

### I. Faculty of Arts

#### ***School of Chinese***

(All School of Chinese courses require advanced knowledge of Chinese)

##### *Language and literature*

- CHIN2129. Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) I (6 credits)
- CHIN2130. Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) II (6 credits)
- CHIN2131. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)
- CHIN2132. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)
- CHIN2133. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)
- CHIN2138. Chinese etymology (6 credits)
- CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)
- CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)
- CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)
- CHIN2501. Chinese as a Foreign Language II (Part I) (6 credits)
- CHIN2502. Chinese as a Foreign Language II (Part II) (6 credits)
- CHIN3501. Chinese as a Foreign Language III (Part I) (6 credits)
- CHIN3502. Chinese as a Foreign Language III (Part II) (6 credits)

##### *History and culture*

- CHIN2243. History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)

##### *Translation*

- CHIN2314. Translation in practice I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)
- CHIN2315. Translation in practice II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)
- CHIN2316. Translation theory (3 credits)
- CHIN2331. Choice of words in translation (6 credits)
- CHIN2332. Translation in Hong Kong society (6 credits)
- CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)
- CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (6 credits)
- CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)
- CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (6 credits)

#### ***School of English***

- CSIE2002. Topics in cross-cultural studies: disciplinarity, methodology and politics (6 credits)
- ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)
- ENGL2097. Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2119. English in Hong Kong: making it your own (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2123. Language and identity in Hong Kong (6 credits)\*

## ***School of Humanities***

### *African Studies*

AFRI2005. Africa-China relations (6 credits)

### *Comparative Literature*

- CLIT2037. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film (6 credits)
- CLIT2052. Chinese urban culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2064. Hong Kong culture: popular culture (6 credits)\*
- CLIT2065. Hong Kong culture: representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)\*
- CLIT2074. Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)
- CLIT2085. Hong Kong: community and cultural policy in the global context (6 credits)\*
- CLIT2087. Modern Chinese culture and society: rebellions and revolutions (6 credits)
- CLIT2090. Orientalism, China, and globalization (6 credits)
- CLIT2091. Gender, feminism and modern China (6 credits)

### *Fine Arts*

- FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan (6 credits)
- FINE2049. Art and gender in China (6 credits)
- FINE2051. Art, politics, and society in modern China (6 credits)
- FINE2055. Crossing cultures: China and the outside world (6 credits)
- FINE2061. Contemporary Chinese art (6 credits)
- FINE2062. Land and garden in Chinese art (6 credits)

### *History*

- HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, Part I: from revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)
- HIST2004. Twentieth-century China, Part II: from revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)
- HIST2005. History of Hong Kong, Part I (6 credits)\*
- HIST2006. History of Hong Kong, Part II (6 credits)\*
- HIST2018. The foreign relations of China since 1949 (6 credits)
- HIST2024. A century of business in Hong Kong, 1842-1949 (6 credits)\*
- HIST2025. British Hong Kong and China 1895-1945 (6 credits)\*
- HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)\*
- HIST2034. An introduction to the history of education in Hong Kong (6 credits)\*
- HIST2035. The bauhinia and the lotus: culture and history of the two SARS (6 credits)\*
- HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)
- HIST2068. The intellectual history of twentieth-century China (6 credits)
- HIST2090. The Great Famine (1959-61) (6 credits)
- HIST2096. The history of European business in China (6 credits)
- HIST2097. Mao (6 credits)
- HIST2098. A history of modern Taiwan (6 credits)
- HIST2110. China and the West (6 credits)
- HIST2114. China and the wider world since 1600 (6 credits)
- HIST2115. Sports and Chinese society (6 credits)
- HIST2117. Nanyang: The Chinese experience in Southeast Asia (6 credits)
- HIST2118. Chinese and Americans: A cultural and international history (6 credits)
- HIST3024. Writing Hong Kong history (6 credits)\*

### *Linguistics*

- LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)
- LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)

### *Music*

- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)
- MUSI2060. Red is the colour: music and politics in post-1949 China (6 credits)



*Philosophy*

- PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics (6 credits)  
 PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: ethics (6 credits)  
 PHIL2451. Philosophers' views of China in early-modern Europe (6 credits)  
 PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese (6 credits)  
 PHIL2480. Confucianism and the modern world (6 credits)

*School of Modern Languages and Cultures*

- JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)

## II. Faculty of Social Sciences

- GEOG2082. Economic development in rural China (6 credits)  
 GEOG3101. China's tourism resources and management (6 credits)  
 GEOG3102. China: environment and sustainable development (6 credits)  
 GEOG3103. Globalizing China II: economy, society, and regional development (6 credits)  
 GEOG3403. Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)\*  
 GEOG2101. Globalizing China I: resources, politics, and population (6 credits)  
 POLI0006. China and Hong Kong: the politics of transition (6 credits)\*  
 POLI0012. East Asian political economy (6 credits)  
 POLI0019. Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)\*  
 POLI0020. Hong Kong politics (6 credits)\*  
 POLI0022. Governing China (6 credits)  
 POLI0023. Issues in contemporary Chinese politics (6 credits)  
 POLI0031. Politics of economic reform in China (6 credits)  
 POLI0033. Problems of the Third World (6 credits)  
 POLI0034. Public administration in China (6 credits)  
 POLI0035. Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)\*  
 POLI0051. Issues in Chinese political philosophy (6 credits)  
 POLI0052. International relations of East Asia (6 credits)  
 POLI0059. China and the world (6 credits)  
 POLI0061. Hong Kong and south China: the political economy of regional development and cooperation (6 credits)\*  
 SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)  
 SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)\*  
 SOWK0050. Government and politics of social services in Hong Kong (6 credits)\*  
 SOCI0002. Class, wealth and poverty: inequality and injustice in Hong Kong (6 credits)\*  
 SOCI0003. Contemporary Chinese society (6 credits)  
 SOCI0013. Gender in Chinese societies (6 credits)  
 SOCI0015. Hong Kong popular culture (6 credits)\*  
 SOCI0016. Hong Kong society (6 credits)\*  
 SOCI0036. Social anthropology of Hong Kong and Guangdong (6 credits)\*  
 SOCI0052. Traditional Chinese society (6 credits)  
 SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)  
 SOCI0066. The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits)  
 SOCI0070. Chinese identities and global networks (6 credits)  
 SOCI0075. Hong Kong: community and cultural policy in the global context (6 credits)\*  
 SOCI0077. Media, culture and communication in contemporary China (6 credits)

### III. Faculty of Education and Faculty of Business and Economics

#### *Education*

EDUC1002. Hong Kong education: systemic features and social approaches (6 credits)\*

#### *Business and Economics*

ECON0601. Economic development in China (6 credits)

ECON0602. Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)

ECON0603. The Economic system of Hong Kong (6 credits)\*

ECON0605. Economic history of China (6 credits)

FINA0501. Asian financial institutions (6 credits)

## CENTRE OF BUDDHIST STUDIES

The Centre of Buddhist Studies offers undergraduate courses which focus on the elementary understanding and practical usage of Buddhist teachings. Each course carries six credits. All three courses are taught in English.

No major or minor in Buddhist Studies will be offered to arts students but candidates may select the following courses as elective courses:

### **First-year Course**

#### **BSTC1001. The essence of Buddhist teachings (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Buddhism, being a major world religion, is an important component within mankind's cultural heritage. Its teachings have not only influenced art and philosophy throughout history, but have also been a source of inspiration for those conducting research in the fields of psychotherapy, neuroscience and education. This course will introduce students to the essence of Buddhist teachings. Special emphasis will be placed on the core teachings of the Buddha, which include the Four Noble Truths, Dependent Origination, Prajna wisdom, Bodhisattva ideal, etc. and their practical applications in daily life.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

### **Second and Third-year Courses**

#### **BSTC2001. Making sense of Ch'an (Zen) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to stimulate students' interest in exploring the unique Zen engagement with life. Students will be given an overview of the history and teachings of Ch'an as a foundation. Critical inquiries will then be made into the concept of Non-duality and how the Koan approach can help to free us from cognitive confusion. Ch'an practice, as a way to experience human existential states, will be introduced. How the doctrine of "self - no self" can be applied to interpersonal, social and environmental issues will be discussed. Zen poetry as an appreciation of life in the form of art will be

demonstrated. The contribution of the Sixth Patriarch and the *Platform Sutra* will be highlighted to pave the way for further study.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **BSTC2002. Life and Buddhism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Buddhism is an ancient eastern religion that entirely focuses on the analysis of human life and offers unique ways to solve life's problems and achieve happiness. The Buddha taught two things: suffering and the cessation of suffering. In this course, we will examine the Buddhist analysis of and attitude towards life drawing upon the fundamental teachings of Buddhism, and investigate how this ancient wisdom offers us ways to solve problems in our daily life and achieve happiness.

Students are expected to obtain a basic understanding of Buddhist values and attitudes towards life and the Buddhist ways to achieve happiness in life.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **BSTC2003. Zen in East Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Zen (禪) is the cultural backbone of East Asia. In this course attention will be focused upon three broad areas of study: Zen thought, its practice, and its impact on the culture of East Asia. The course will begin with the introduction of Zen to China, followed by a description of its basic teachings and historical development in China, Korea and Japan. Zen practices will be examined through a survey of Zen monastic life. The cultural impact of Zen forms an integral component of this course and for this purpose, the following themes will be discussed: paintings, poetry (禪詩), and other forms of Zen art in China and Korea; Cha-no-yu (Tea Ceremony), 'Haiku' (俳句) poetry, Zen gardens, and swordsmanship in Japan. In this course students will gain a basic understanding of Zen Buddhism and the impact it has had upon the thought and culture of East Asia.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **BSTC2004. Chinese Buddhism and Ritual (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Throughout the history of Buddhism, Buddhist traditions have adopted indigenous rituals and practices, and devised a great variety of new rituals. This course provides an introduction to Buddhist ritual practice in Chinese Buddhism from the perspectives of their psychological, religious and spiritual significance.

We will begin by exploring several theories and research methods of ritual adopted in anthropology and religious studies. Having studied the theoretical basis of ritual studies, students will further study the doctrinal, mythic and other dimensions of Buddhist practice, examine the structural patterns of various rituals, survey the different categories of ceremonies, and analyze the most important groups of rituals.

The focus of study will be on the role of ritual experiences in individual enlightenment, and upon ritual as an expression of participants' understanding of Buddhist teaching. As a comparative approach to Buddhist rituals, the course will analyze related myths, texts, and video recordings of rituals.

Rituals including the recitation of sutras (scriptures) and mantras, funeral rituals, rituals for the liberation of living animals, and rituals to save sentient beings from water and land (shuilu fahui) are examined in some detail. Fieldwork studies will also be conducted. Students therefore can personally witness how Hong Kong Buddhists perform these kinds of rituals.

Assessment: 100% coursework.